REBUILDING AFTER CORONA

John Scales Avery

April 13, 2020

Contents

INTRODUCTION[1]

A better world is possible!

It is hard to predict how long the terrible COVID-19 pandemic will last, but at some time in the future it will end, and we will be faced with the problem of rebuilding the world after the enormous economic and human destruction which the disease left in its wake. The pandemic has thrown light onto the world's political and economic systems, and has shown them to be wanting. Most people today do not wish to return to the old normal. That "normal" was part of the problem. The post-pandemic world must be a new and changed world!

Is a better world possible? Of course it is! Our present world is filled with an almost unimaginable amount of injustice, greed and folly. Why is our present world so full of glaring faults? One reason can be found in the slow rate of change of genetic evolution, compared with the lightning-like rate of cultural evolution. We face the problems of the 21st century with an emotional nature that has not changed much since our ancestors lived in small tribes, competing for territory on the grasslands of Africa. Our emotional nature contains an element of tribalism to which militarists can all too easily appeal.

The human tendency towards tribalism evolved when our remote ancestors lived in small, genetically homogeneous tribes, competing for territory on the grasslands of Africa. Because marriage within a tribe was much more common than marriage outside it, genes were shared within the tribe. The tribe as a whole either survived or perished. The tribe, rather than the individual was the unit upon which the Darwinian forces of natural selection acted.

Although it was a survival trait 100,000 years ago, tribalism threatens our human civilization of today with thermonuclear annihilation. As Konrad Lorenz put it, "An impartial visitor from another planet, looking at man as he is today, in his hand the atom bomb, the product of his intelligence, in his heart the aggression drive, inherited from his anthropoid ancestors, which the same intelligence cannot control, such a visitor would not give mankind much chance of survival."

[1]This book makes some use of my previously published book chapters, but much new material has also been added.

Today, at the start of the 21st century, we live in nation-states to which we feel emotions of loyalty very similar to the tribal emotions of our ancestors. The enlargement of the fundamental political and social unit has been made necessary and possible by improved transportation and communication, and by changes in the techniques of warfare.

The tragedy of our present situation is that the same forces that made the nation-state replace the tribe as the fundamental political and social unit have continued to operate with constantly increasing intensity. For this reason, the totally sovereign nation-state has become a dangerous anachronism.

Although the world now functions as a single unit because of modern technology, its political structure is based on fragments, on absolutely sovereign nation-states . They are large compared to tribes, but too small for present-day technology, since they do not include all of mankind.

Here are some words from the Nobel Laureate biochemist Albert Szent-Györgyi:

"The story of man consists of two parts, divided by the appearance of modern science...In the first period, man lived in the world in which his species was born and to which his senses were adapted. In the second, man stepped into a new, cosmic world to which he was a complete stranger... The forces at man's disposal were no longer terrestrial forces, of human dimension, but were cosmic forces, the forces which shaped the universe. The few hundred Fahrenheit degrees of our flimsy terrestrial fires were exchanged for the ten million degrees of the atomic reactions which heat the sun.

"This is but a beginning, with endless possibilities in both directions; a building of a human life of undreamt of wealth and dignity, or a sudden end in utmost misery. Man lives in a new cosmic world for which he was not made. His survival depends on how well and how fast he can adapt himself to it, rebuilding all his ideas, all his social and political institutions.

"Modern science has abolished time and distance as factors separating nations. On our shrunken globe today, there is room for one group only: the family of man."

Within rapidly-moving cultural evolution, we can observe that technical change now moves with such astonishing rapidity that neither social institutions, nor political structures, nor education, nor public opinion can keep pace. The lightning-like pace of technical progress has made many of our ideas and institutions obsolete. For example, the absolutely sovereign nation-state and the institution of war have both become dangerous anachronisms in an era of instantaneous communication, global interdependence and all-destroying weapons.

In many respects, human cultural evolution can be regarded as an enormous success. However, at the start of the 21st century, most thoughtful observers agree that civilization is entering a period of crisis. As all curves move exponentially upward, population, production, consumption, rates of scientific discovery, and so on, one can observe signs of increasing environmental stress, while the continued existence and spread of nuclear weapons threaten civilization with destruction. Thus, while the explosive growth of knowledge has brought many benefits, the problem of achieving a stable, peaceful and sustainable world remains serious, challenging and unsolved.

The achievements of modern society are achievements of cooperation. We can fly, but no one builds an airplane alone. We can cure diseases, but only through the cooperative efforts of researchers, doctors and medicinal firms. We can photograph and understand distant galaxies, but the ability to do so is built on the efforts of many cooperating individuals.

Looking at human nature, both from the standpoint of evolution and from that of everyday experience, we see the two faces of Janus: one face shines radiantly; the other is dark and menacing. Two souls occupy the human breast, one warm and friendly, the other, murderous. Humans have developed a genius for cooperation, the basis for culture and civilization; but they are also capable of genocide; they were capable of massacres during the Crusades, capable of genocidal wars against the Amerinds, capable of the Holocaust, of Hiroshima, of the killing-fields of Cambodia, of Rwanda, and of Darfur.

This being so, there are strong reasons to enlist the help of education and religion to make the bright side of human nature win over the dark side. Today, the mass media are an important component of education, and thus the mass media have a great responsibility for encouraging the cooperative and constructive side of human nature rather than the dark and destructive side. Our almost miraculous means of communication, if properly used, offer us the possibility of welding humanity into a single cooperative society.

We see clearly what is near to us

There is a remarkable contrast in the way that governments around the world have responded to the COVID-19 pandemic and the way that they have responded to the climate emergency. The pandemic, which indeed represents an extremely grave danger to humanity, has produced a massive global response. Borders have been closed, airlines have become virtually inoperative, industries, restaurants and entertainments have been closed, sporting events have been cancelled or postponed, people have been asked to stay at home and practice social distancing, and the everyday life of citizens around the world has been drastically changed.

By contrast, let us consider the threat that if immediate action is not taken to halt the extraction and use of fossil fuels, irreversible feedback loops will be initiated which will make catastrophic climate change inevitable despite human any human efforts to prevent it. This threat is even more serious than the COVID-19 pandemic. Climate change could make much of the earth to hot for human life. It could produce a famine involving billions of people, rather than millions. My own belief is that catastrophic climate change would not lead do the extinction of the human species; but I think that because much of the world would become uninhabitable, the global population of humans would be very much reduced

How have governments responded to the climate emergency? A minority, for example the Scandinavian countries, have taken appropriate action. Most governments pay lip service to the emergency, but do not take effective action; and a few countries, such as the United States under Donald Trump, Bolsonaro's Brazil, and Saudi Arabia, deny that there is a climate emergency and actively sabotage action. The world's net response has been totally inadequate. The Keeling curve, which measures CO_2 concentrations in the atmosphere, continues to rise, and the rate of rise is even increasing.

What is the reason for this remarkable contrast in our response to two serious emergencies? We see clearly and respond to what is close to us, and are relatively indifferent to what is far away. We hear of people dying every day from the COVID-19 pandemic, and there is a danger that as many as 100 million people could die before it is over. By contrast, although immediate climate action is needed today to avoid disaster, the worst consequences of climate change lie in the long-term future. Old people, like me, will not live to see massive deaths from starvation and overheating. However, we have a responsibility to our children and grandchildren, and to all future generations. A large-scale global famine could occur by the middle of the present century, and children who are alive today could experience it.

Recovery offers climate action opportunities

When the COVID-19 pandemic is over, governments will be faced by the task of repairing the enormous economic damage that it has caused. The situation will be similar to the crisis that faced US President Franklin D. Roosevelt when he took office during the Great Depression of the 1930's. Roosevelt, encouraged by John Maynard Keynes, used federal funds to build much-needed infrastructure around the United States. His programs, the New Deal, ended the Great Depression in his country.

Today, the similar concept of a Green New Deal is being put forward globally. This concept visualizes government-sponsored programs aimed at simultaneously creating both jobs and urgently-needed renewable energy infrastructure. The Green New Deal programs could be administered in such a way as to correct social injustices.

A sustainable economic system

Economists, with a few notable exceptions, have a cynical tendency to confine their discussions to the short-term future. With self-imposed myopia, they refuse to look more than a few decades into the future. This allows them to worship growth, and to advocate perpetual growth. Our present financial system is unsustainable, and it works for the interests of a few very rich people. For the sake of the long-term future, we must build a sustainable, steady-state economic system, an economic system which reduces inequality, and which serves the broad public interest.

We can learn from the pandemic

Terrible as it is, the COVID-19 pandemic may be able to teach us something. Humanity must work together to solve our common problems. We must abandon the folly of war, and use the vast sums of money now wasted (or worse than wasted) on armaments for constructive purposes, for example public health programs. We must work together to rebuild the world after the pandemic. The new world that we build, must be sustainable, and it must have both an environmental conscience and a social conscience.

Chapter 1

THE COVID-19 PANDEMIC

1.1 History of the pandemic

Starting in December, 2019, and accelerating rapidly during the spring of 2020, our world has been hit by a new and extremely serious pandemic. It is caused by a caronavirus closely related to bat coronaviruses, and the disease, designated COVID-19 has a high death rate compared with seasonal influenza, as is shown below in Table 1. As of April 1, 2020, more than 859,000 cases of COVID-19 have been reported in over 200 countries and territories, resulting in approximately 42,000 deaths. Of course the death rate is actually lower that would be calculated from the ratio 42/859=0.049, since the actual number of infected people is very much larger than the number of confirmed cases. Older people, and people with previously existing health problems are especially at risk.

The first cases of COVID-19 were noticed in the city of Wuhan, in the Hubei province of China. A cluster of cases centered on the Hunan Seafood Wholesale Market, and the outbreak is thought to have been a case where a virus has been transmitted from an animal host to humans.

The World Health Organization recognized the outbreak as being a Public Health Emergency of International Concern on January 30, 2020. Later, on March 11, 2020, WHO declared it to be a pandemic.

Governments around the world have reacted to the pandemic by closing borders, closing schools, universities, restaurants, barber shops, bars, sports events, and nonessential economic activities of all sorts, also requiring people to stay at home, and requesting them to practice "social distancing", i.e. staying at least 2 meters from all others, even family members. Different countries have reacted with different rates of speed and different degrees of stringency. But the daily life of people around the world has been severely disrupted by the pandemic, and the economic consequences, already severe, will probably become worse.

A pandemic of this kind was not unexpected. Public health experts have been predicting that our world would soon be hit by a severe pandemic because air travel can take infected people almost instantly across vast distances, making local disease outbreaks global before

Table 1.1: **Confirmed cases and deaths as of 31 March, 2020**

Country	**cases**	**deaths**
United States	186,633	3,833
Italy	105,792	12,428
Spain	95,923	8,464
China	81,518	3,305
Germany	71,690	775
France	51,487	3,516
Iran	44,606	2,898
United Kingdom	25,150	1,808
Switzerland	16,597	432
Turkey	13,531	214
Belgium	12,775	705
Netherlands	12,595	1,039
Austria	10,088	128
South Korea	9,786	162
Canada	8,591	100
Portugal	7,443	160
Brazil	5,717	201

effective limiting action can be taken.

We do not yet know how or when the COVID-19 pandemic will end. At present, there is no effective vaccine or treatment for the disease. My own belief is that monoclonal antibody techniques will be helpful in quickly developing antibodies for the treatment of the disease. For inexpensive mass-production of these antibodies, gene-splicing techniques may be helpful. These techniques are discussed in Chapter 3 and Chapter 4.

The COVID-19 pandemic has exposed many of the faults of the "status quo", to which corporate oligarchs wish us to return after the epidemic has run its course. We must try to use the disaster as a way to return to something better than we had before. For example, the climate emergency must be adequately addressed. Our economic systems must also be reformed, so that they will work for the broad public good, rather than for the benefit of a small number of very wealthy people.

Table 1.2: **Confirmed cases and deaths as of 13 April, 2020**

Country	**cases**	**deaths**
United States	561,103	22,106
Spain	166,831	17,209
Italy	156,363	19,899
Germany	127,854	3,022
France	95,403	14,393
United Kingdom	84,279	10,612
China	82,160	3,341
Iran	71,686	4,474
Turkey	56,956	1,198
Belgium	29,647	3,600
Netherlands	25,587	2,737
Switzerland	25,398	1,103
Canada	24,366	718
Brazil	22,318	1,230
Portugal	16,585	504
Russia	15,770	130
Austria	13,945	350

Table 1.3: **Some pandemics of the past**

name	**time period**	**type**	**deaths**
Antonine Plague	165-180	smallpox or measles	5,000,000
Japanese Smallpox	735-737	Variola major virus	1,000,000
Plague of Justinian	541-542	Yersinia pestis bacteria	c.40,000,000
Black Death	1347-1351	Yersinia pestis bacteria	200,000,000
New World Smallpox	1320-	Variola major virus	56,000,000
Plague of London	1665	Yersinia pestis bacteria	100,000
Italian plague	1629-1631	Yersinia pestis bacteria	1,000,000
Cholera Pandemics	1817-1923	V. cholerae bacteria	1,000,000+
Third Plague	1885	Yersinia pestis bacteria	12,000,000
Yellow Fever	Late 1800s	Yellow Fever virus	c.125,000
Russian Flu	1889-1890	Believed to be H2N2	1,000,000
Spanish Flu	1918-1919	H1N1 virus	c.45,000,000
Asian Flu	1957-1958	H2N2 virus	1,100,000
Hong Kong Flu	1968-1970	H3N2 virus	1,000,000
HIV/AIDS	1981-	HIV/AIDS virus	c.30,000,000
Swine Flu	2009-2010	H1N1 virus	200,000

We need solidarity, not sanctions

According to the United Nations Charter, only the Security Council may impose sanctions. No individual nation may do so. Nevertheless, the United States currently imposes economic sanctions on Iran, North Korea, Sudan, Cuba, Venezuela, Belarus, Burundi, Central African Republic, China, Comoros, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Equitorial Guinea, Eritria, Iraq, Lebanon, Libya, Mauritania, Myanmar, Nicaragua, Papua New Guinea, Russia, Somalia, South Sudan, Turkmenistan, Ukraine, Venezuela, Yemen and Zimbabwe.

Besides violating the United Nations Charter, these unilaterally imposed sanctions also violate the Fourth Geneva Convention, under which collective punishment is a war crime. Article 33 states that "No protected person may be punished for an offense that he or she did not personally commit".

The sanctions that are currently being imposed on Iran are also an example of collective punishment. They are damaging the health of ordinary Iranian citizens, who can in no way be blamed fro the policies of their government. According to Wikipedia: "Pharmaceuticals and medical equipment do not fall under the international sanctions, but the country is facing shortages of drugs for the treatment of 30 illnesses, including cancer, heart and breathing problems, thalassemia and multiple sclerosis, because Iran is not allowed to use International payment systems.... In addition, there are 40,000 haemophiliacs who can't get anti-clotting medicines... An estimated 23,000 Iranians with HIV/Aids have had their access to the drugs they need to keep alive severely restricted."

During the present COVID-19 pandemic, economic sanctions are particularly cruel and inhuman. They deprive the affected nations of desperately-needed face masks, respirators and medicines. During this terrible emergency, humanity must unite. We need solidarity, not sanctions!

Gestures of solidarity during the pandemic

Here are a few stories of solidarity during the COVID-19 crisis:

According to an article by Shannon Llao, published by CNN Business on March 14, 2020, "Chinese billionaire and Alibaba co-founder Jack Ma said he will donate 500,000 coronavirus testing kits and one million face masks to the United States... Ma has donated one million masks to Japan as of March 2 and had been attempting to ship one million masks to Iran as of March 6, according to his Weibo posts. In a March 11 post, he wrote that 1.8 million masks and 100,000 testing kits would go to Europe, with the first batch arriving in Belgium this week. He shared plans to donate to Italy and Spain, two other countries hard-hit by the virus, as well."

Cuba has sent medical doctors and nurses to combat the COVID-19 pandemic in Italy. Cuba has also deployed doctors to Venezuela, Nicaragua, Jamaica, Suriname and Grenada.

On 3 April, 2020, the World Health Organization and UNESCO "announced an agreement to work together on COVID-19 response, through the historic COVID-19 Solidarity Response Fund powered by the United Nations Foundation and Swiss Philanthropy Foundation. The COVID-19 Solidarity Response Fund has been set up to facilitate an unprecedented global response by supporting the WHO Strategic Preparedness and Response Plan. As part of the agreement, an initial portion of the money from the Fund - which currently stands at more than $127 million - will flow to UNICEF for its work with vulnerable children and communities all over the world."

Antonio Guterres proposes a global ceasefire

On 23 March, 2020, he United Nations Secretary General Antonio Guterres said:

"Our world faces a common enemy: COVID-19. The virus does not care about nationality or ethnicity, faction or faith. It attacks all, relentlessly. Meanwhile, armed conflict rages on around the world. The most vulnerable - women and children, people with disabilities, the marginalized and the displaced - pay the highest price. They are also at the highest risk of suffering devastating losses from COVID-19. Let's not forget that in war-ravaged countries, health systems have collapsed. Health professionals, already few in number, have often been targeted. Refugees and others displaced by violent conflict are doubly vulnerable. The fury of the virus illustrates the folly of war. That is why today, I am calling for an immediate global ceasefire in all corners of the world. It is time to put armed conflict on lockdown and focus together on the true fight of our lives."

We can learn from the pandemic

Terrible as it is, the COVID-19 pandemic may be able to teach us something. Humanity must work together to solve our common problems. We must abandon the folly of war, and use the vast sums of money now wasted (or worse than wasted) on armaments for constructive purposes, for example public health programs. We must work together to rebuild the world after the pandemic. The new world that we build, must be sustainable, and it must have both an environmental conscience and a social conscience

1.2 China

Wikipedia states that "The 2019-20 coronavirus pandemic first manifested as a cluster of mysterious, suspected pneumonia cases in Wuhan, the capital of Hubei, China. A Wuhan hospital notified the local center for disease control and prevention (CDC) and health commissions on 27 December 2019. On 31 December Wuhan CDC admitted that there was a cluster of unknown pneumonia cases related to Hunan Seafood Market after the unverified documents appeared on the Internet. The potential disease outbreak soon drew nationwide attention including that of the National Health Commission (NHC) in Beijing who sent experts to Wuhan on the following day. On 8 January, a new coronavirus was identified as the cause of the pneumonia.[7] The sequence of the virus was soon published on an open-access database... WHO declared the outbreak a "Public Health Emergency of International Concern" on 31 January[12] for fear that the virus spread beyond China to where there is no robust healthcare system despite its confidence that China was 'doing all that it can'."

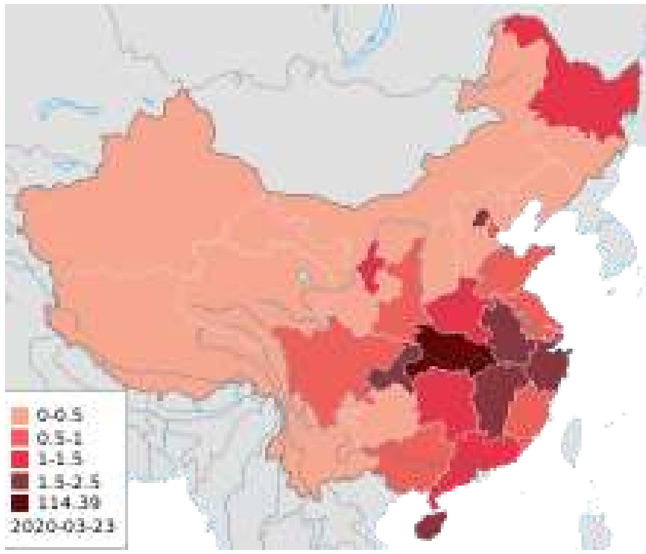


Figure 1.1: **A map of China showing the number of cases per 100,000 people**

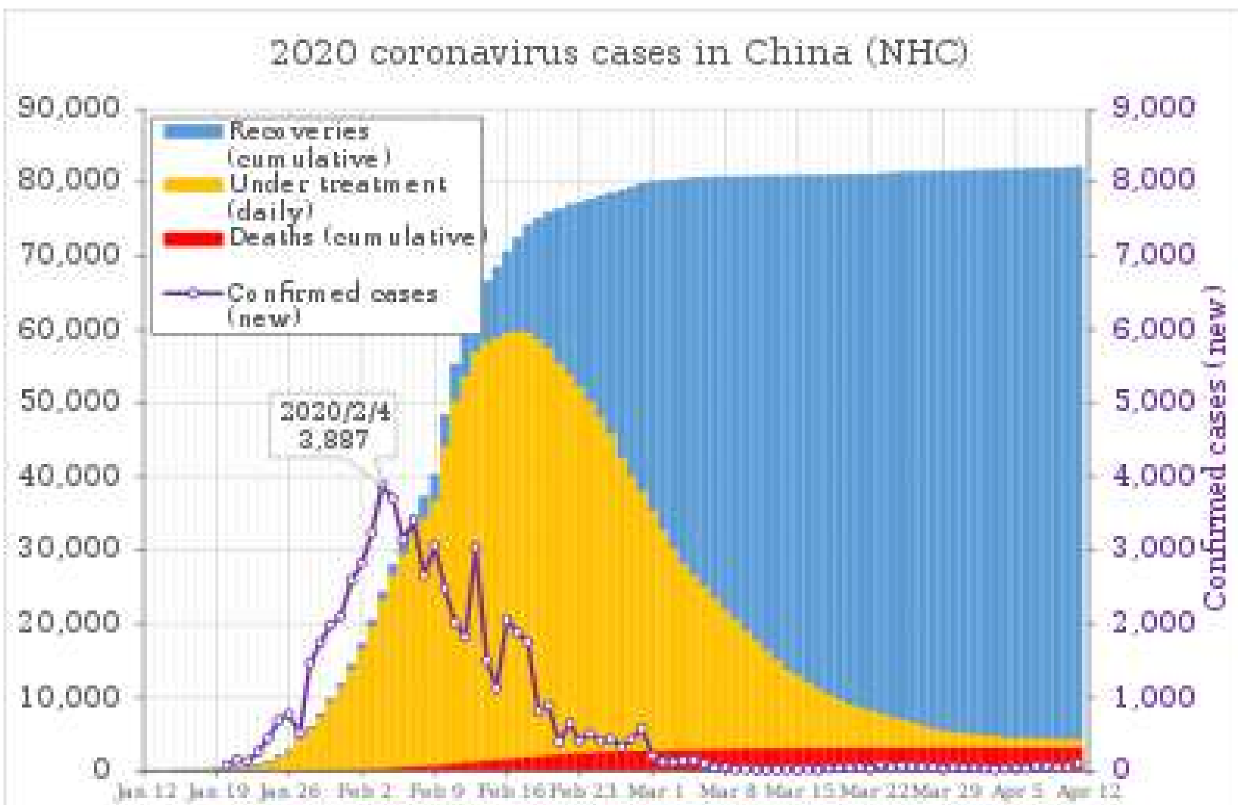


Figure 1.2: **Because of the very strong actions of the Chinese government, the number of new cases of COVID-19 in the country has fallen almost to zero, as of April, 2020. However, opening the Chinese economy could lead to a new wave of infections.**

1.3 Europe

The reaction of countries in Europe to the COVID-19 pandemic was initially much too slow, and thus the disease gained a firm foothold, especially in Italy, Spain, Germany, France and the United Kingdom. After this initial period of delay, drastic action was taken by most countries in Europe. Borders were closed, (except to very essential transport of goods), schools and universities were closed, restaurants, bars, hairdressers and churches were closed, public meetings were forbidden, and people were confined to their homes. By the time that these drastic actions were taken, however, it was two late to stop massive infection rates and deaths. In both Spain and Italy, the health services were completely overwhelmed by patients in need of intensive care, and burial services could not keep up with the load, so that corpses had to be kept in refrigerated trucks.

In the United Kingdom, Prime Minister Boris Johnson, who had initially belittled the severity of the situation, himself became severely ill with COVID-19, and spent a week in an intensive care unit receiving oxygen. Prince Charles, heir to the British throne, also became ill with COVID-19, but luckily his case was a light one. He opened a new emergency hospital in London via a television link. Meanwhile, Queen Elizabeth, speaking to her nation on television, likened the situation to the dark days of World War II, and urged people to be brave.

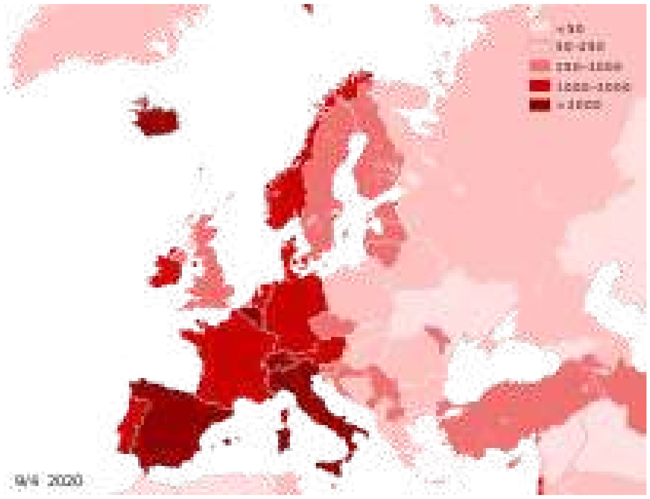


Figure 1.3: **Confirmed cases of SARS-CoV-2 infected people in relation to the population of the country (cases per million inhabitants). The numbers are not comparable, as the testing strategy differs between countries and time periods.**

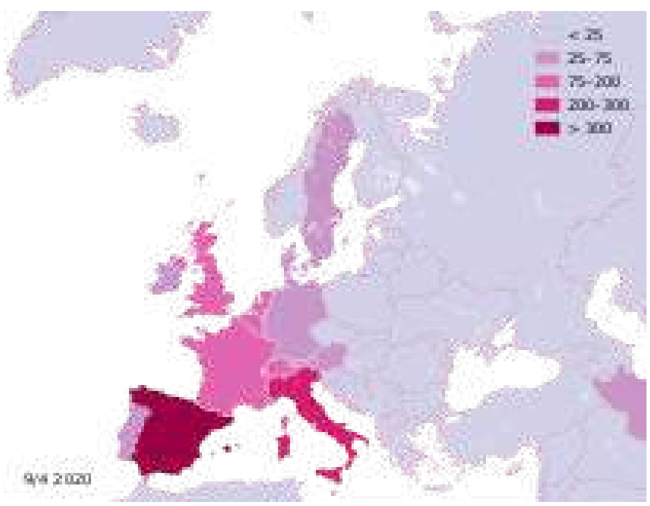


Figure 1.4: **Cumulative number of deaths per million inhabitants from COVID-19 in Europe.**

1.4 The United States

Here are some quotations from an article entitled *The US Is A Failed State, And COVID-19 Proves It* by Danny Haiphong, published on April 8, 2020:

"For two months, China heroically employed mass quarantines, built emergency temporary hospitals in record time, and redirected much of its economic and political infrastructure toward containing COVID-19. The U.S. exploited the disease to demonize China only to find itself unprepared for the blowback. President Trump declined testing kit assistance from the World Health Organization (WHO), allowing the virus to spread virtually undetected. Exorbitant healthcare costs and the lack of medical leave have deterred workers from taking the necessary precautions outlined by the WHO and the CDC. With no planned, nationalized response to the outbreak on U.S. shores, local governments have facilitated haphazard curfews and recommendations for more 'social distancing' in attempt to stem the tide.

"Forty years-plus of neoliberal shock therapy has turned the United States into the very failed state that the political class constantly complains about in reference to other nations. The U.S. cannot provide free healthcare to the masses because shareholders in the pharmaceutical and insurance industries are more committed to their profits. The U.S. cannot provide homes to the homeless because capitalists in finance, insurance, and real estate industries (FIRE) view public housing as an impediment toward their widening share of the market. The U.S. cannot possibly provide the conditions necessary for a rapid and effective response to a pandemic because private profits remain in command of society.

"Private profits have indeed been prioritized throughout the COVID-19 crisis. The Federal Reserve didn't hesitate to pump 1.5 trillion dollars into the plunging stock market. Not a cent of a trillion dollars was invested in student and other debt relief, a moratorium on evictions and foreclosures, or toward the development of medical infrastructure to make up for a massive shortfall in masks, ICU beds, and ventilators. What the masses in the United States did receive was a Congressional bill for COVID-19 relief that House leader Pelosi proudly endorsed. The bill possessed a corporate friendly loophole that left nearly eighty percent of workers out of a 14-day federally mandated and funded medical leave benefit...

"The U.S. is a failed state because it has nothing to offer the world but death, destruction, and destitution. Iranians continue to die of treatable diseases and COVID-19 due to U.S. sanctions. The United States continues to deploy its trillion-dollar military albatross to murder, starve, and pollute the vast majority of the world's people. No calls have been made to halt operations in the U.S.' eight hundred military bases or to rollback AFRICOM amid the spread of COVID-19."

Here are some quotations from an article entitled *The Billionaires That Want You to Get Back to Work No Matter the Cost to Your Health*, by Dan Loeb, Kevin Griffin, Paul Tudor Jones, and Stephen Schwarzman:

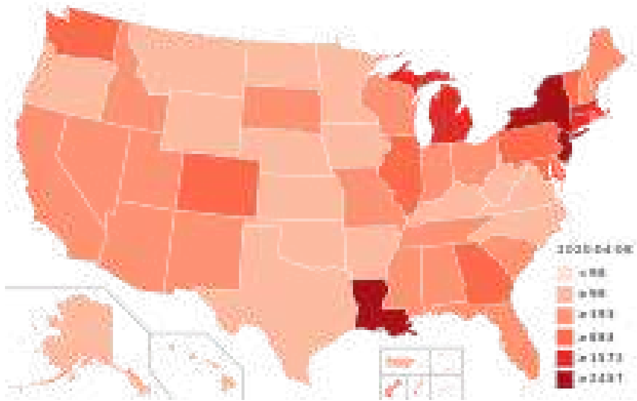


Figure 1.5: **Confirmed cases per million residents by state.**

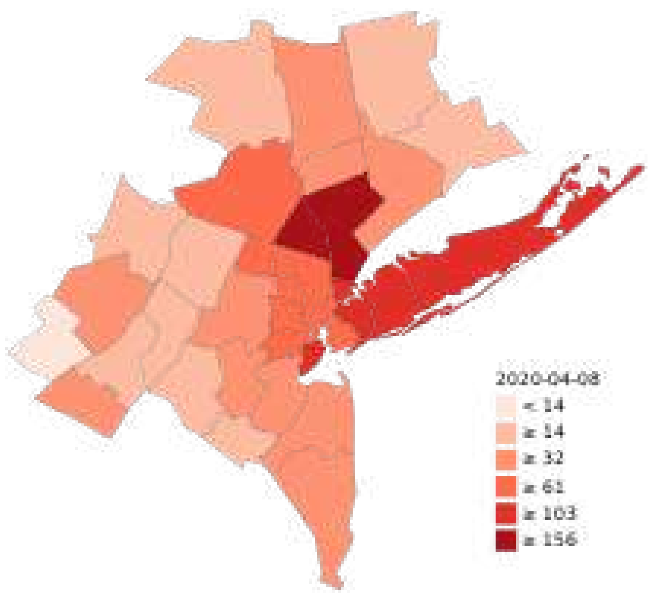


Figure 1.6: **Confirmed cases per 10,000 residents near New York City. With around 200,000 as of April 8, the New York metropolitan area contains about half the nation's confirmed cases.**

"On March 24th the Trump administration held a call with some of the wealthiest investors on Wall Street to discuss how COVID-19 and state-by-state restrictions on public gathering and businesses were affecting stock market performance, financial markets, and the broader economy. The call reportedly included heavy hitters such as private equity giant Stephen Schwarzman from Blackstone (net worth $17.1 billion) and hedge fund managers Ken Griffin (net worth $12.4 billion) from Citadel, Dan Loeb (net worth $2.8 billion) from Third Point, and Paul Tudor Jones (net worth $5.1 billion) among others. The group urged the administration to set a specific date to ease public health restrictions in order to reassure markets.

"Just hours after the call with the Wall Street elite, Trump went on air for a virtual town hall on Fox News and declared that he would like to see the economy 'opened up and just raring to go' by April 12th. The arbitrary deadline set by Trump at the behest of these investors was much earlier than what health experts predicted would be necessary to mitigate the spread of the virus. A few days later - after Congress passed a stimulus bill that created a $500 billion slush fund to bail out big business - Trump walked back his commitment to having the economy 'opened up' by Easter. However, the power dynamic had already become crystal clear - Trump's billionaire backers are pushing him to prioritize financial markets over public health and the creation of a fair safety net for workers impacted by the coronavirus shutdown."

1.5 India

Although India currently has relatively few confirmed cases of COVID-19 and deaths from the disease. one fears for the future. A large fraction of India's 1.3 billion people are poor, and live in crowded conditions, often without adequate supplies of clean water. Under such conditions, the social distancing and frequent hand-washing needed to prevent the spread of the disease are impossible. The economic impact of the pandemic will also hit India's poor very hard. Those without jobs will face starvation. Finally, as the number of cases of COVID-19 rises, the country's hospital system, inadequate even in normal times, will be completely overwhelmed.

According to an article by Akash Bisht, "India has 0.7 hospital beds for every 100,000 people, far fewer than countries like South Korea (six per 100,000) that have been able to successfully contain the virus.

"Ventilators are also in short supply. India has nearly 100,000 ventilators but most are owned by private hospitals and are already being used by existing patients with critical illnesses.

"Sundaraman from the People's Health Movement highlighted how the stress of lockdown appeared to be overtaking the stress of the disease. 'What is really worrying is the huge migration that has started across the country. You just can't stop public transport like that. The lockdown should have been done in a phased way. People shouldn't be stranded without income, without work. Even in an authoritarian state, they would know that this is something the state has to do,' said Sundaraman."

Figure 1.7: **With only a few hours warning, India's Prime Minister Modi imposed a 21 day lockdown on the country. The lockdown left many millions of migrant workers trapped in cities with no income, and no means of returning to their native villages except walking. Many chose to walk hundreds of kilometers to reach their homes.**

Figure 1.8: **Many of India's estimated 139 million internal migrant workers are trapped in cities far from home after being laid off due to government measures to curb the spread of the coronavirus, leading aid agencies to warn of a looming crisis. The photo shown migrants trying to board one of the last available buses.**

1.6 Africa

At present (12 April, 2020) there are relatively few cases of COVID-19 in Africa. However, this situation many very easily change for the worse. In most African countries, hospital beds are in short supply. Also, many poor people live in crowded conditions, without a good supply of safe water for the frequent hand-washing that is recommended as an important measure to prevent the spread of COVID-19. Thus, one worries about the future.

The economic impact of the pandemic is already severe. In many African countries, tourism is an important source of income, and this, of course, has disappeared.

Chapter 2

HUMANITY'S FIGHT AGAINST INFECTIOUS DISEASE

2.1 Discovering the connection between cholera and sanitation

Cholera is a serious gastrointestinal disease caused by drinking water contaminated with cholera bacilli. If untreated, the death rate can be as high as 60%. Although in most developed countries, cholera is no longer a threat, it remains prevelant in many less-developed regions.

Wikipedia states that "Since it became widespread in the 19th century, cholera has killed tens of millions of people. In Russia alone, between 1847 and 1851, more than one million people perished of the disease. It killed 150,000 Americans during the second pandemic. Between 1900 and 1920, perhaps eight million people died of cholera in India.[Cholera became the first reportable disease in the United States due to the significant effects it had on health. John Snow, in England, was the first to identify the importance of contaminated water as its cause in 1854. Cholera is now no longer considered a pressing health threat in Europe and North America due to filtering and chlorination of water supplies, but still heavily affects populations in developing countries..."

Dr. John Snow and the Soho pumphandle

Dr. John Snow (1813-1858) made several important contributions to medicine. He was a leader in the development of anesthesia, and medical hygene, and because if his work on the Soho cholera epidemic, he is considered to be one of the fathers of modern epidemiology. His work led to changes in public health practices throughout the world.

Born into a poor family in York, Snow exhibited an early aptitude for mathematics and science. At the age of only 14, he was apprenticed to a physician, and had the opportunity to observe the victims of a cholera epidemic. Snow later graduated from the University of London, and was admitted to the Royal College of Physicians in 1850.

Snow was a pioneer of anesthesiology, calculating the optimal dosages for the use of both chloroform and ether. He used these anesthetics in his practice of obstetrics. This created opposition from the Church of England, since it was believed the women were "meant to suffer in childbirth". However, in 1853 Queen Victoria asked Snow to administer chloroform during the birth of her eighth child. She repeated the request for her next birth, three years later.

John Snow lived before the establishment of the germ theory of disease by Louis Pasteur, Robert Koch and others. At the time when Snow lived, it was believed that diseases were caused by "miasma" or "bad air". Even before the Soho cholera epidemic, Snow's observations on the relationship between disease and sanitation had caused him to be skeptical of the "bad air" theory. In 1849 he published an essay entitled *On the Mode of Communication of Cholera*. However, it was the Soho cholera epidemic of 1854 that provided him with the hard evidence that he needed.

Describing his actions in the Soho epidemic, Snow later wrote in a letter to the editor of the Medical Times and Gazette, "On proceeding to the spot, I found that nearly all the deaths had taken place within a short distance of the [Broad Street] pump. There were only ten deaths in houses situated decidedly nearer to another street-pump. In five of these cases the families of the deceased persons informed me that they always sent to the pump in Broad Street, as they preferred the water to that of the pumps which were nearer. In three other cases, the deceased were children who went to school near the pump in Broad Street...

"The result of the inquiry, then, is, that there has been no particular outbreak or prevalence of cholera in this part of London except among the persons who were in the habit of drinking the water of the above-mentioned pump well.

"I had an interview with the Board of Guardians of St James's parish, on the evening of the 7th inst [7 September], and represented the above circumstances to them. In consequence of what I said, the handle of the pump was removed on the following day."

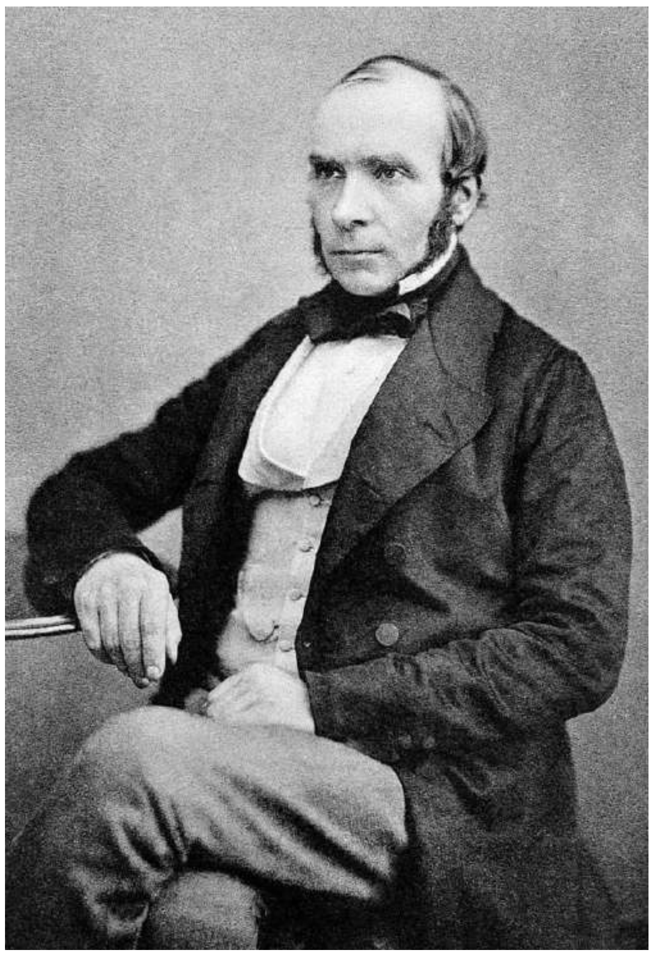


Figure 2.1: **John Snow in 1852.**

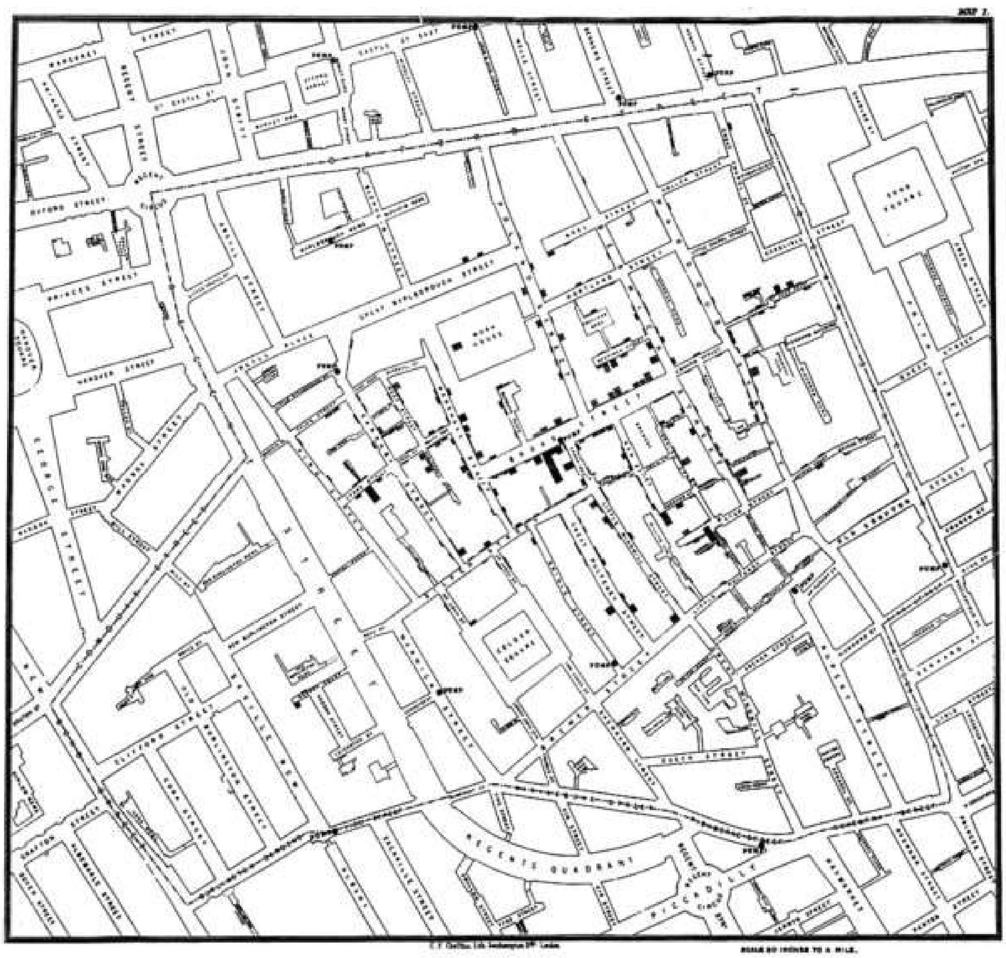


Figure 2.2: **John Snow's map, showing that all of the cases of cholera in the Soho outbreak occurred near to a particular pump.**

Figure 2.3: **The John Snow memorial and public house.**

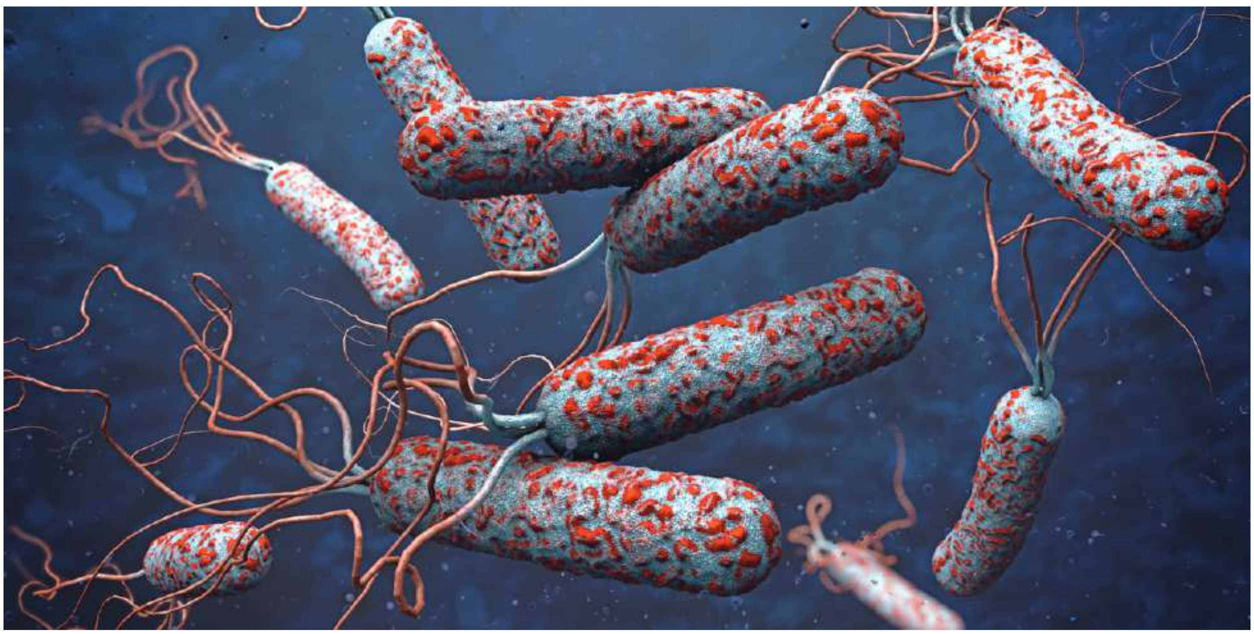


Figure 2.4: **Cholera bacteria. In 1883, the German physician, Robert Koch, isolated the bacterium Vibrio cholerae, finally discovering the cause of the disease. He determined that cholera is spread through unsanitary water or food supply sources, supporting Snow's theory from 20 years earlier. However, John Snow did not live to see his theories vindicated. At the time of Koch's discoveries, he had died of a stroke in 1858, at the age of only 45.**

2.2 Smallpox

Smallpox a frightful disease from which 300 million people died during the 20th century alone. Approximately one third of the people infected with smallpox die from it, and those who survive are often severely disfigured.

Smallpox inadvertently became a biological weapon aiding the Spanish conquistadors in Central and South America. Much of their military success was due to the fact that they brought smallpox and measles with them, diseases to which the Indians had never been exposed. Since they had no immunity, the majority of the Indians died of these diseases whenever they contracted them in epidemics brought by the Spanish.

In North America, smallpox was deliberately used as a weapon by the British. In 1763, during the Pontiac Rebellion, Sir Jeffrey Amherst, the Commander in Chief of British forces in North America, wrote to Col. Henry Bouquet, "Could it not be contrived to send smallpox among these disaffected tribes of Indians? We must use every stratagem within our power to reduce them." Bouquet replied: "I will try to inoculate [them] with some blankets that may fall into their hands, and take care not to get the disease myself." As in South America, the disease was horrifyingly effective as a weapon, since the Indians had no immunity.

Thus smallpox played an early role in the history of biological warfare, a dark chapter in human history. But as we shall see, it also played a role in the some of the greatest successes of modern medicine. Smallpox is the first disease against which vaccination proved to be possible.

In 18th century Europe, smallpox was so common that people scarcely hoped to avoid it entirely, they hoped instead to have a mild case. It had been noticed that anyone who survived an attack of smallpox could never be attacked again. In Turkey and China, people sometimes inoculated themselves with pus taken from the blisters of patients sick with smallpox in a mild form. The Turkish and Chinese custom of inoculation was introduced into Europe in the 18th century by Lady Mary Montague, the widow of a diplomat who had spent some time in Turkey. Diderot, the editor of the Encyclopedia, did much to make this practice popular. However, this type of inoculation was dangerous: It gave protection against future attacks, but often the inoculated person became severely ill or died. In addition, the person inoculated was an active source of contagion for some time.

Figure 2.5: **Blisters produced by smallpox. Even when victems of the disease survived, they were often disfigured for life.**

Figure 2.6: **Lady Mary Wortley Montague (1689-1762), was the wife of the British Ambassador to Turkey. She witnessed the practice of inoculation in Turkey, brought back to England and popularized it. Despite the dangers of inoculation, the fear of smallpox was so great that it was widely adopted.**

2.3 Edward Jenner and the milkmaid

The story of safe immunization against smallpox began when an English physician named Edward Jenner (1749-1823) treated a dairymaid. He suspected that she might have smallpox; but when he told her this, she replied: "I cannot take the smallpox sir, because I have had the cowpox". She told him that it was common knowledge among the people of her district that anyone who had been ill with cowpox (a mild disease of cattle which sometimes affected farmers and dairymaids), would never be attacked by smallpox.

Jenner realized that if her story were true, it might offer humanity a safe method of immunization against one of its most feared diseases. On May 14, 1796, he found a dairymaid with active cowpox, and taking a little fluid from a blister on her hand, he scratched it into the skin of a boy. The boy became ill with cowpox but he recovered quickly, because the disease is always mild.

Jenner then took the dangerous step of inoculating the boy with smallpox. If the boy had died, Jenner would have been a criminal - but he was immune! It took Jenner two years to find the courage and the opportunity to try the experiment again; but when he repeated it in 1798 with the same result, he decided to publish his findings.

So great was the terror of smallpox, that Jenner was immediately besieged with requests for immunization by inoculation with cowpox (which he called "vaccination" after *vacca*, the Latin word for "cow"). The practice quickly became accepted: The English Royal Family was vaccinated, and Parliament voted Jenner rewards totaling thirty thousand pounds - in those days an enormous sum.

In 1807 Bavaria made vaccination compulsory[1], and celebrated Jenner's birthday as a holiday. Russia also enthusiastically adopted vaccination. The first child in Russia to be vaccinated was given the name "Vaccinov", and was educated at the expense of the state.

In France, the great chemist and bacteriologist Louis Pasteur (1822-1895) and his coworkers were able to apply Jenner's discovery to other diseases. Working first with chicken cholera, and later with anthrax[2], they discovered methods for producing a safe vaccines by weakening cultures of bacteria, so that they no longer produced the disease but still conferred immunity. Pasteur and his coworkers even discovered how to make a vaccine against rabies, which is a virus disease. Thus smallpox played a special role in the history of modern medicine.

---

[1] This was the initiative of Benjamin Thompson, Count Rumford, the American physicist-soldier-politician.

[2] Anthrax is an often-fatal disease of animals and humans. The anthrax bacilli can form spores that which are able to live in the ground for years. These bacilli have been cultured and stockpiled as a biological weapon by several countries, including the United States and the former Soviet Union.

Figure 2.7: **Edward Jenner (1749-1823). Although he was not the first person to propose vaccination with cowpox as a method for preventing smallpox, it was Jenner's scientific studies of the method that first made it widely accepted.**

Figure 2.8: **Jenner performing his first vaccination on 8-year-old James Phipps, his gardener's son.**

Figure 2.9: **A painting showing Jenner advising a farmer to inoculate his family.**

2.4 Some other discoveries of Edward Jenner

Edward Jenner grew up with a strong interest in science. As the son of a clergyman, he was given a good education. In 1770, at the age of 21, he became apprenticed in surgery and anatomy under John Hunter at St. George's Hospital in London. In 1773 he returned to his native Glostershire, where he became a successful medical practitioner.

Strongly interested in scientific problems of all kinds, Jenner published a study of the previously misunderstood habits of the cuckoo. In this careful study, which was based on observations, experiment and dissection, he showed that the offspring of the cuckoo pushed its host's eggs and fledgling chicks out of the nest (contrary to existing belief that the adult cuckoo did it). In an article published in Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society in 1788, he wrote: "The singularity of its shape is well adapted to these purposes; for, different from other newly hatched birds, its back from the scapula downwards is very broad, with a considerable depression in the middle. This depression seems formed by nature for the design of giving a more secure lodgement to the egg of the Hedge-sparrow, or its young one, when the young Cuckoo is employed in removing either of them from the nest. When it is about twelve days old, this cavity is quite filled up, and then the back assumes the shape of nestling birds in general." This study won Jenner election to the Royal Society.

In addition, Jenner made a number of medical discoveries and observations, for example in relation to angina.

2.5 The complete eradication of smallpox

After his discovery of safe vaccination against smallpox, Edward Jenner had written, "It now becomes too manifest to admit of controversy, that the annihilation of the Small Pox, the most dreadful scourge of the human species, must be the final result of this practice." In 1959, Jenner's prophecy began to move towards fulfillment when the World Health Assembly passed a resolution initiating a program for the global eradication of smallpox.

A World Health Organization team led by D.A. Henderson devised a strategy in which cases of smallpox were isolated and all their contacts vaccinated, so that the disease had no way of reaching new victims. Descriptions of the disease were circulated, and rewards offered for reporting cases. The strategy proved to be successful, and finally, in 1977, the last natural case of smallpox was isolated in Somalia. After a two-year waiting period, during which no new cases were reported, WHO announced in 1979 that smallpox, one of the most frightful diseases of humankind, had been totally eliminated from the world. This was the first instance of the complete eradication of a disease, and it was a demonstration of what could be achieved by the enlightened use of science combined with international cooperation. The eradication of smallpox was a milestone in human history.

But our species is not really completely wise and rational; we do not really deserve to be called "Homo sapiens". Stone-age emotions and stone-age politics are alas still with us. Samples of smallpox virus were taken to "carefully controlled" laboratories in the United

States and the Soviet Union. Why? Probably because these two Cold War opponents did not trust each other, although both had signed the Biological Weapons Convention. Each feared that the other side might intend to use smallpox as a biological weapon. There were also rumors that unofficial samples of the virus had been saved by a number of other countries, including North Korea, Iraq, China, Cuba, India, Iran, Israel, Pakistan and Yugoslavia.

In 1989 Vladimir Pasechnik, a senior Soviet scientist, defected to the UK. According to Pasechnik, the civilian pharmaceutical firm Biopreparat was in fact a front for a massive Soviet bio-weapons program. His testimony was echoed by Dr. Kanatjan Alibekov, who had been Chief Scientist at Biopreparat between 1987 and 1992, but who defected to the United States in 1992. Alibekov said that a particularly virulent strain of smallpox virus was being cultivated at Biopreparat and that it was being developed as an offensive weapon. In November, 2001, the United States announced that it will not destroy its stocks of smallpox virus, and that it intends to keep them.

To make the discouraging story of smallpox complete, the financial section of a European newspaper ("Metroxpress") recently published a photograph of two very satisfied-looking businessmen. The accompanying article explained the reason for their satisfaction: It was considered likely that smallpox might be used by terrorists. Hence a massive vaccination program would undoubtedly soon take place in Europe, and the company of these two businessmen would make large profits by manufacturing the vaccine. One despairs for the human race!

There is another idea of the biological weapons community that equally repellent, if not more so - racially selective bio-weapons. Basically the idea is this: The Human Genome Project has revealed the sequences of junk DNA (i.e., sequences that do not code for useful proteins) are racially specific. Thus the various races of humankind can be identified by looking at their junk DNA sequences. This being so, it should in principle be possible to construct a virus or toxin that will selectively attack people of a particular race. This idea is particularly abhorrent because it simultaneously violates two important principles of human solidarity. The first principle is that, since disease is the common enemy of mankind, all humans must to work together for its eradication. The second is that all humans must regard each other as members of a single large family. This is absolutely necessary if we are to survive on our small planet.

2.6 Semmelweis

In 1800, when vaccination began to be used against smallpox, no one understood why it worked. No one, in fact, understood what caused infectious diseases. It had been more than a century since Anton van Leeuwenhoek had studied bacteria with his home-made microscopes and described them in long letters to the Royal Society. However, the great Swedish naturalist, Carolus Linnaeus, left microscopic organisms out of his classification of all living things on the grounds that they were too insignificant and chaotic to be mentioned.

Etiology, Concept and Prophylaxis of Childbed Fever

Puerperal fever, or "childbed fever", was common in mid-19th-century hospitals and often fatal. The Hungarian physician Ignaz Semmelweis, working in the maternity division of the Vienna General Hospital began to require that the doctors working under him should wash their hands in chlorinated lime solution between visits to patients. He found that this practice reduced mortality from childbed fever to less than 1%. In 1861, he published a book describing his results entitled *Etiology, Concept and Prophylaxis of Childbed Fever*. However, despite this and other publications, his results were not only rejected by the medical establishment of the time, but Semmelweis was also vilified, ridiculed and treacherously assigned to an insane asylum, where he was beaten to death by guard. He was before his time. His discoveries came before the germ theory of disease. Today, Semmelweis is recognized as a great pioneer of antiseptic practice in medicine.

Figure 2.10: **Dr. Ignaz Semmelweis, (1818-1865). He discovered that if physicians at the Vienna General Hospital's Obstetrical Clinic washed their hands in chlorinated lime solution between visits to patients, the mortality was drastically reduced. Tragically, since this discovery was made prior to the germ theory of disease, it was rejected by the medical establishment of his time. Semmelweis was sent to an insane asylum, where he died after being beaten by guards.**

Figure 2.11: **Semmelweis statue at the University of Tehran.**

Figure 2.12: **2008 Austrian commemorative coin picturing Semmelweis.**

2.7 Pasteur: artist or chemist?

This was the situation when Louis Pasteur was born in 1822, in the Jura region of France, near the Swiss border. His father was a tanner in the small town of Arbois. Pasteur's parents were not at all rich, but they were very sincere and idealistic, and they hoped that their son would one day become a teacher.

As a boy, Louis Pasteur was considered to be a rather slow student, but he was artistically gifted. Between the ages of 13 and 19, he made many realistic and forceful portraits of the people of his town. His ambition was to become a professor of the fine arts; and with this idea he studied to qualify for the entrance examination of the famous École Normale of Paris, supporting himself with a part-time teaching job, and sometimes enduring semi-starvation when the money sent by his father ran out.

The earnest, industrious and artistically gifted boy would certainly have succeeded in becoming an excellent professor of the fine arts if he had not suddenly changed his mind and started on another path. This new path was destined to win Louis Pasteur a place among the greatest benefactors of humanity.

The change came when Pasteur attended some lectures by the famous chemist Jean Baptiste Dumas. Professor Dumas was not only a distinguished researcher; he was also a spellbinding speaker, whose lectures were always attended by six or seven hundred excited students. "I have to go early to get a place", Pasteur wrote to his parents, "just as in the theatre". Inspired by these lectures, Pasteur decided to become a chemist. He put away his brushes, and never painted again.

While he was still a student, Pasteur attracted the attention of Antoine Jerome Balard, the discoverer of the element bromine. Instead of being sent to teach at a high-school in the provinces after his graduation, Pasteur became an assistant in the laboratory of Balard, where he had a chance to work on a doctor's degree, and where he could talk with the best chemists in Paris. Almost every Thursday, he was invited to the home of Professor Dumas, where the conversation was always about science.

Pasteur's first important discovery came when he was 25. He had been studying the tartarates - a group of salts derived from tartaric acid. There was a mystery connected with these salts because, when polarized light was passed through them, they rotated the direction of polarization. On the other hand, paratartaric acid (now called racemic acid), did not exhibit this effect at all, nor did its salts. This was a mystery, because there seemed to be no chemical difference between tartaric acid and racemic acid.

Studying tiny crystals of paratartaric acid under his microscope, Pasteur noticed that there were two kinds, which seemed to be mirror images of one another. His vivid imagination leaped to the conclusion that the two types of crystals were composed of different forms of tartaric acid, the molecules of one form being mirror images of the other. Therefore the crystals too were mirror images, since, as Pasteur guessed, the shapes of the crystals resulted from the shapes of the molecules.

By painstakingly separating the tiny right-handed crystals from the left-handed ones, Pasteur obtained a pure solution of right-handed molecules, and this solution rotated polarized light. The left-handed crystals, when dissolved, produced the opposite rotation!

Pasteur ran from the laboratory, embraced the first person that he met in the hall, and exclaimed: “I have just made a great discovery! I am so happy that I am shaking all over, and I am unable to set my eyes again to the polarimeter.”

Jean Baptiste Biot, the founder of the field of polarimetry, was sceptical when he heard of Pasteur’s results; and he asked the young man to repeat the experiments so that he could see the results with his own eyes. Under Biot’s careful supervision, Pasteur separated the two types of crystals of racemic acid, and put a solution of the left-handed crystals into the polarimeter.

“At the first sight of the color tints presented by the two halves of the field”, Pasteur wrote, “and without having to make a reading, Biot recognized that there was a strong rotation to the left. Then the illustrious old man, who was visibly moved, seized me by the hand and said: ‘My dear son, all my life I have loved science so deeply that this stirs my heart!’”

As he continued his work with right- and left-handed molecules, Pasteur felt that he was coming close to an understanding of the mysteries of life itself, since, as Biot had shown, the molecules which rotate polarized light are almost exclusively molecules produced by living organisms. He soon discovered that he could make an optically active solution of tartaric acid in another way: When he let the mould *penicillium glaucum* grow in a solution of racemic acid, the left-handed form disappeared, and only the right-handed form remained. In this way, Pasteur became interested in the metabolism of microscopic organisms.

Pasteur’s work on crystallography and optical activity had made him famous among chemists, and he was appointed Professor of Chemistry at the University of Strasbourg. He soon fell in love with and married the daughter of the Rector of the university, Marie Laurent. This marriage was very fortunate for Pasteur. In the words of Pasteur’s assistant, Emil Roux, “Madame Pasteur loved her husband to the extent of understanding his studies... She was more than an incomparable companion for her husband: She was his best collaborator”. She helped him in every way that she could - protecting him from everyday worries, taking dictation, copying his scientific papers in her beautiful handwriting, discussing his experiments and asking intelligent questions which helped him to clarify his thoughts.

2.8 Saving the French wine industry

After a few years at Strasbourg, Pasteur was appointed Dean of the Faculty of Sciences at the University of Lille. In appointing him, the French government explained to Pasteur that they expected him to place the Faculty of Sciences of the university at the service of the industry and agriculture of the district.

Pasteur took this commission seriously, and he soon put his studies of microorganisms to good use in the service of a local industry which produced alcohol from beet juice. He was able to show that whenever the vats of juice contained bacteria, they spoiled; and he showed the local manufacturers how eliminate harmful bacteria from their vats. As a result of this work, the industry was saved.

PASTEUR en 1857

Figure 2.13: **Louis Pasteur in his laboratory, as painted by A. Edelfeldt.**

His work on fermentation put Pasteur into conflict with the opinions of the most famous chemists of his time. He believed that it was the action of the living yeast cells which turned sugar into alcohol, since he had observed that the yeasts were alive and that the amount of alcohol produced was directly proportional to the number of yeasts present. On the other hand, the Swedish chemist, Jöns Jakob Berzelius (1779-1848), had considered fermentation to be an example of catalysis, while Justus von Liebig (1805-1875) thought that the yeasts were decaying during fermentation, and that the breakdown of the yeast cells somehow assisted the conversion of sugar to alcohol. (Both Pasteur and Berzelius were right! Although the fermentation observed by Pasteur was an example of the action of living yeasts, it is possible to extract an enzyme from the yeasts which can convert sugar to alcohol without the presence of living cells.)

Pasteur studied other fermentation processes, such as the conversion of sugar into lactic acid by the bacilli which are found in sour milk, and the fermentation which produces butyric acid in rancid butter. He discovered that each species of microorganism produces its own specific type of fermentation; and he learned to grow pure cultures of each species.

At the suggestion of Napoleon III, Pasteur turned his attention to the French wine industry, which was in serious difficulties. He began to look for ways to get rid of the harmful bacteria which were causing spoilage of the wine. After trying antiseptics, and finding them unsatisfactory, Pasteur finally found a method for killing the bacteria, without affecting the taste of the wine, by heating it for several minutes to a temperature between 50 and 60 degrees centigrade. This process ("Pasteurization") came to be applied, not only to wine, but also to milk, cheese, butter, beer and many other kinds of food.

Pasteur developed special machines for heat-treating large volumes of liquids. He patented these, to keep anyone else from patenting them, but he made all his patents available to the general public, and refused to make any money from his invention of the Pasteurization process. He followed the same procedure in patenting an improved process for making vinegar, but refusing to accept money for it.

Pasteur was now famous, not only in the world of chemists and biologists, but also in the larger world. He was elected to membership by the French Academy of Sciences, and he was awarded a prize by the Academy for his research refuting the doctrine of spontaneous generation.

2.9 The germ theory of disease

In 1873, Louis Pasteur was elected to membership by the French Academy of Medicine. Many conservative physicians felt that he had no right to be there, since he was really a chemist, and had no medical "union card". However, some of the younger doctors recognized Pasteur as the leader of the most important revolution in medical history; and a young physician, Emil Roux, became one of Pasteur's devoted assistants.

When he entered the Academy of Medicine, Pasteur found himself in the middle of a heated debate over the germ theory of disease. According to Pasteur, every contagious disease is caused by a specific type of microorganism. To each specific disease there corresponds a specific germ.

Pasteur was not alone in advocating the germ theory, nor was he the first person to propose it. For example, Varro (117 B.C. - 26 B.C.), believed that diseases are caused by tiny animals, too small to be seen, which are carried by the air, and which enter the body through the mouth and nose.

In 1840, Jacob Henle, a distinguished Bavarian anatomist, had pointed out in an especially clear way what one has to do in order to prove that a particular kind of germ causes a particular disease: The microorganism must be found consistently in the diseased tissue; it must be isolated from the tissue and cultured; and it must then be able to induce the disease consistently. Finally, the newly-diseased animal or human must yield microorganisms of the same type as those found originally.

Henle's student, Robert Koch (1843-1910), brilliantly carried out his teacher's suggestion. In 1872, Koch used Henle's method to prove that anthrax is due to rodlike bacilli

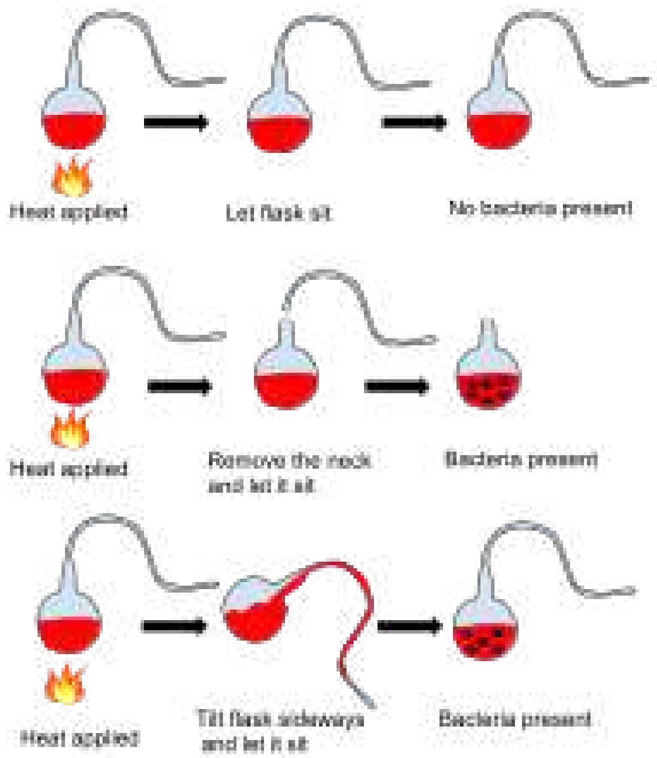


Figure 2.14: **One of Louis Pasteur's experiment illustrates the fact that the spoilage of liquid is caused by particles in the air rather than the air itself. These experiments were important evidence supporting the germ theory of disease..**

in the blood of the infected animal. Koch's pioneering contributions to microbiology and medicine were almost as great as those of Pasteur. Besides being the first person to prove beyond doubt that a specific disease was caused by a specific microorganism, Koch introduced a number of brilliant technical improvements which paved the way for rapid progress in bacteriology and medicine.

Instead of using liquids as culture media,Koch and his assistant, Petri, pioneered the use of solid media. Koch developed a type of gel made from agar-agar (a substance derived from seaweed). On the surface of this gel, bacteria grew in tiny spots. Since the bacteria could not move about on the solid surface, each spot represented a pure colony of a single species, derived from a single parent. Koch also pioneered techniques for staining bacteria, and he introduced the use of photography in bacteriology. He was later to isolate the bacillus which causes tuberculosis, and also the germ which causes cholera.

When Koch's work was attacked in the French Academy of Medicine, Pasteur rushed to his defense. In order to demonstrate that it was living bacilli in the blood of a sheep with anthrax which transmitted the disease, and not something else in the blood, Pasteur took a drop of infected blood and added it to a large flask full of culture medium. He let this stand until the bacteria had multiplied; and then he took a tiny drop from the flask and transferred it to a second flask of nutrient broth. He did this a hundred times, so that there was no possibility that anything whatever remained from the original drop of sheep's blood. Nevertheless, a tiny amount of liquid from the hundredth flask was just as lethal as fresh blood drawn from a sheep with anthrax.

Figure 2.15: **Robert Koch (1843-1910) was one of the important founders of modern bacteriology. He received the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine in 1905.**

2.10 Vaccines

Pasteur read and reread the papers of Jenner on immunization against smallpox. He searched continually for something analogous to smallpox vaccination which could be applied to other diseases. Finally, the answer came by chance.

Pasteur and his assistants had been studying chicken cholera, an invariably fatal disease of chickens. Roux and Chamberland were carrying out a series of experiments where they made a fresh culture of chicken cholera bacteria every day. When they injected a bit of liquid from any of these cultures into a chicken, the chicken always died.

It was summer, and the young men went off for two weeks of vacation. When they came back, they took their two-week-old culture of chicken cholera out of the cupboard and injected it into a hen; but the hen didn't die. They decided that while they had been on vacation, the culture must have lost its strength; and after some effort, they obtained a new specimen of active chicken cholera bacteria, which they injected into their hens. All the hens died except one. The hen which had previously been inoculated with two-week-old culture didn't even get sick!

When Pasteur returned to his laboratory, the two young men hesitated to tell him about this strange result because they were afraid that he might be angry with them for going off on a holiday and breaking off the series of experiments. However, they finally confessed what had happened, and added the strange detail about the chicken which had not died. In the middle of their apologies, Pasteur raised his hand. "Please be quiet for a moment", he said, "I want to think". After a few moments of silence, Pasteur looked at Roux and Chamberland and said, "That's it! The hen that didn't die was *vaccinated* by the old culture!"

This was the big breakthrough - a turning point in medical history. Pasteur, Roux and Chamberland had discovered by chance a method of weakening a culture of bacteria so that it would not produce the fatal disease with which it was usually associated; but on the other hand, it was still able to alert the body's defense mechanisms, so that the inoculated animal became immune. This great discovery was made by chance, but, as Pasteur was fond of saying, "In research, chance favors the prepared mind".

Pasteur, Roux and Chamberland dropped everything else and began a series of experiments to find the best way of weakening their cultures of chicken cholera. They found that the critical factor was the proper amount of exposure to air. (Probably the culture contained a few mutant bacteria, able to grow well in air, but not able to produce chicken cholera; and during the exposure of a culture, these mutants multiplied rapidly, until the entire population was composed of mutants.)

Pasteur now began research on a vaccine against anthrax - a disease which was causing serious economic loss to farmers, and which could affect humans as well as animals. With anthrax, the problem was to keep the bacilli from forming spores. After much experimentation, the group found that if they held their anthrax cultures at a temperature between 42 C and 43 C, the bacilli would still grow, but they did not form spores.

Pasteur and his coworkers allowed their cultures to grow at 42 C in shallow dishes, where there was good contact with the air. They found that after two weeks, the cultures

Figure 2.16: **Louis Pasteur at work in his laboratory.**

were weakened to the point where they would make a sheep sick, but not kill it. They developed a method for inoculating animals in two stages - first with a very much weakened culture, and later with a stronger one. After the second inoculation, the animals could stand an injection of even the most virulent anthrax bacilli without becoming ill.

When Pasteur published these results, there was much sarcasm among veterinarians. The editor of the *Veterinary Press*, a surgeon named Rossignol, wrote: "Monsieur Pasteur's discovery, *if it were genuine*, should not be kept in the laboratory". Rossignol proposed a public trial of the anthrax vaccine, and he started a campaign to collect money for the purchase of experimental animals.

Pasteur's friends warned him against accepting the risk of a public trial at such an early stage. He had not tested his vaccine sufficiently, and a failure would make him the laughing stock of Europe. However, Pasteur saw the trial as a chance to focus public attention on microorganisms and vaccines. Like Galileo, Pasteur had a flair for dramatic gestures and public debate; and the impact of his career was greatly enhanced by his ability to attract widespread attention.

A farm near Melun called Poully le Fort was chosen as the site for the experiment; and sixty sheep, together with several cows, were put at Pasteur's disposal. Thousands of people made the journey from Paris to Melun to watch the first injections, which were made on May 5, 1881. Twelve days later, the same sheep were inoculated with a stronger vaccine. Then, on May 31, the big test was made - both the vaccinated and unvaccinated animals were inoculated with a highly lethal culture of anthrax. Pasteur went back to Paris. There was nothing to do but wait.

The next afternoon, a telegram from Rossignol shattered Pasteur's confidence: It said that one of the vaccinated sheep was dying. Pasteur spent a sleepless night. The following morning, however, at nine o'clock, another telegram arrived from Rossignol: All the vaccinated sheep were well, even the one which had seemed to be dying; and all the unvaccinated sheep were either dying or already dead! Rossignol, who had been Pasteur's enemy, was completely converted; and his telegram ended with the words, "Stunning success!" When the aging Pasteur limped onto the field at Poully le Fort that afternoon, a great cheer went up from the thousands of people present.

Rabies

The next disease which Pasteur attempted to conquer was rabies, the terrifying and invariably fatal disease which often follows the bite of a mad dog. The rabies virus travels slowly through the body from the wounds to the spinal cord, where, after one or two months, it attacks the nervous system. If a victim is offered water and attempts to swallow, his head jerks back in terrible spasms, which make rabies extremely frightening, both for the victim and for the onlooker. For this reason, the disease is sometimes called hydrophobia - fear of water.

Pasteur and his coworkers soon discovered that even with their best microscopes, they were unable to see the organism which causes rabies. In fact, the disease is caused by a

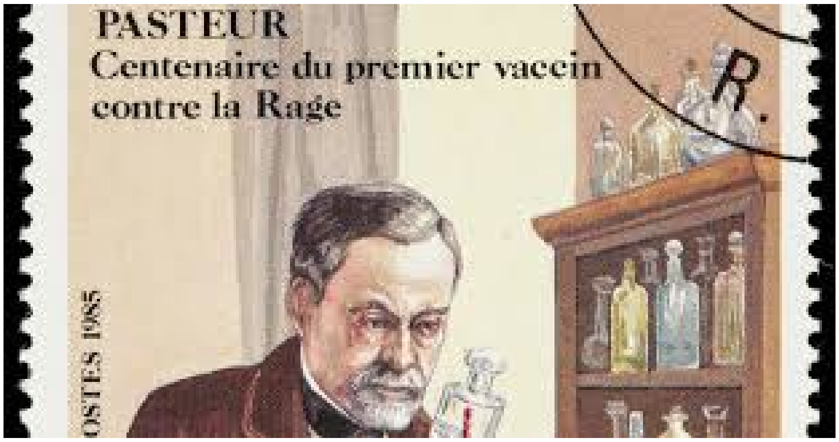


Figure 2.17: **A French stamp commemorating Pasteur's fight against rabes.**

virus, much too small to be seen with an optical microscope. Thus the aging Pasteur was confronted with an entirely new technical problem, never before encountered in microbiology.

He soon found that it was impossible to culture the rabies virus in a flask or dish, as he was in the habit of doing with bacteria. Absorbed in his research, he forgot his wedding anniversary. Marie Pasteur, however, remembered; and she wrote in a letter to her daughter:

"Your father is absorbed in his thoughts. He talks little, sleeps little, rises at dawn, and in a word, continues the life which which I began with him this day thirty-five years ago."

Besides being technically difficult, the work on rabies was also dangerous. When Pasteur, Roux and Chamberland took samples of saliva from the foaming jaws of mad dogs, they risked being bitten by accident and condemned to an agonizing death from the convulsions of rabies. Since they could not culture the rabies virus in a dish or a flask of nutrient fluid, they were forced to grow it inside the nervous systems of experimental animals. After four years of difficult and hazardous work, they finally succeeded in developing a vaccine against rabies.

In the method which finally proved successful, they took a section of spinal cord from a rabbit with rabies and exposed it to air inside a germproof bottle. If the section of spinal cord remained in the bottle for a long time, the culture was very much weakened or "attenuated", while when it was exposed to air for a shorter time, it was less attenuated. As in the case of anthrax, Pasteur built up immunity by a series of injections, beginning with a very much attenuated culture, and progressing to more and more virulent cultures.

At last, Pasteur had a method which he believed could be used to save the lives of the victims of mad dogs and wolves; and he found himself faced with a moral dilemma: Everyone who developed rabies died of it; but not everyone who was bitten by a mad dog developed rabies. Therefore if Pasteur gave his vaccine to a human victim of a mad dog, he might harm someone who would have recovered without treatment.

He had published the results of his research, and he was inundated with requests for treatment, but still he hesitated. If he treated someone, and the person afterward died, he might be accused of murder; and all the work which he had done to build up public support for the new movement in medicine might be ruined.

Finally, on July 6, 1885, Pasteur's indecision was ended by the sight of a man and woman who had come to him with their frightened nine-year-old son. The boy, whose name was Joseph Meitner, had been severely bitten by a mad dog. It was one thing to write letters refusing requests for treatment, and another thing to look at a doomed and frightened child and turn him away.

Pasteur felt that he had to help the boy. He consulted Alfred Vulpian, a specialist in rabies, and Vulpian assured him that Joseph Meitner had been bitten so severely that without treatment, he would certainly develop rabies and die. Pasteur also consulted Dr. Granchier, a young physician who had joined his staff, and together the three men agreed that there was no time to lose - they would have to begin inoculations immediately if they were to save the boy's life. They decided to go ahead. To Pasteur's great joy, Joseph Meitner remained completely well.

The second rabies victim to be treated by Pasteur was a fourteen-year-old shepard named Jupille. He had seen a mad dog about to attack a group of small children, and he had bravely fought with the maddened animal so that the children could escape. Finally he had managed to tie its jaws together, but his hands were so badly bitten that without treatment, he was certain to die. Like Joseph Meitner, Jupille was saved by the Pasteur treatment. A statue of Jupille in front of the Pasteur Institute commemorates his bravery.

Pasteur had now grown so old, and was so worn out by his labors that he could do no more. The task of winning a final victory over infectious diseases was not finished - it was barely begun; but at least the feet of researchers had been placed on the right road; and there were younger men and women enthusiastically taking up the task which Pasteur laid down.

On December 27, 1892, physicians and scientists from many countries assembled in Paris to celebrate Pasteur's seventieth birthday. The old man was so weak that he was unable to reply in his own words to the address of Sir Joseph Lister and to the cheers of the crowd; but his words were read by his son. Pasteur spoke to the young men and women who would take his place in the fight against disease:

"Do not let yourselves be discouraged by the sadness of certain hours which pass over nations. Live in the serene peace of your laboratories and libraries. Say to yourselves first, 'What have I done for my instruction?', and as you gradually advance, 'What have I done for my country?', until the time comes when you may have the intense happiness of thinking that you have contributed in some way to the progress and good of humanity."

Figure 2.18: **Institut Pasteur de Lille.**

Suggestions for further reading

1. Lakhani S. *Early clinical pathologists: Edward Jenner (1749-1823)* J Clin Pathol. 1992;45:756-758.
2. Hopkins DR. Chicago: University of Chicago Press; 1983. *Princes and Peasants: Smallpox in History.*
3. Barquet N, Domingo P. *Smallpox: the triumph over the most terrible of the ministers of death.* Ann Intern Med. 1997;127(8 Pt 1):635-642.
4. Lyons AS, Petrucelli RJ., II . New York: Abradale Press, Harry N Abrams Inc; 1987. *Medicine - An Illustrated History.*
5. Littman RJ, Littman ML. *Galen and the Antonine plague.* Am J Philol. 1973;94:243-255.
6. Christopher GW, Cieslak TJ, Pavlin JA, Eitzen EM., Jr *Biological warfare. A historical perspective.* JAMA. 1997;278:412-417.
7. Moore JC. *The History of the Smallpox.* London: Longman; 1815.
8. Gross CP, Sepkowitz KA. *The myth of the medical breakthrough: smallpox, vaccination, and Jenner reconsidered.* Int J Infect Dis. 1998;3:54-60.
9. Willis NJ. *Edward Jenner and the eradication of smallpox.* Scott Med J. 1997;42:118-121.
10. Stearns RP. *Remarks upon the introduction of inoculation for smallpox in England.* Bull Hist Med. 1950;24:103-122.
11. Beall OT, Shryock RH. *Cotton Mather: First Significant Figure in American Medicine.* Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press; 1954.
12. Bardell D. *Smallpox during the American war of independence.* ASM News. 1976;42:526-530.
13. Stark RB. *Immunization saves Washington's army.* Surg Gynecol Obstet. 1977;144:425-431.
14. Thursfield H. *Smallpox in the American war of independence.* Ann Med Hist. 1940;2:312-318.
15. Parish HJ. *Victory with Vaccines: The Story of Immunization.* Edinburgh: E & S Livingstone; 1968.
16. Mullin D. *Prometheus in Gloucestershire: Edward Jenner, 1749-1823.* J Allergy Clin Immunol. 2003;112:810-814.
17. Winkelstein W., Jr *Not just a country doctor: Edward Jenner, scientist.* Epidemiol Rev. 1992;14:1-15.
18. Scott EL. *Edward Jenner FRS and the cuckoo.* Notes and Records of the Royal Society. 1974;28(2):235-240.
19. Underwood EA. *Edward Jenner, Benjamin Waterhouse and the introduction of vaccination into the United States.* Nature. 1949;163:823-828.
20. Pead PJ. *Benjamin Jesty: new light in the dawn of vaccination.* Lancet. 2003;362:2104-2109.

21. World Health Organization. *The Global Eradication of Smallpox: Final Report of the Global Commission for the Certification of Smallpox Eradication.* Geneva: World Health Organization; 1980. Global Commission for Certification of Smallpox Eradication.
22. Clifford Dobell (editor), *Antony van Leeuwenhoek and his Little Animals*, Dover, New York (1960).
23. Paul de Kruif, *Microbe Hunters*, Pocket Books Inc., New York (1959).
24. René Dubos, *Pasteur and Modern Science*, Heinemann, London (1960).
25. A.P. Waterson and Lise Wilkinson, *An Introduction to the History of Virology*, Cambridge University Press (1978).
26. P.E. Baldry, *The Battle Against Bacteria*, Cambridge University Press (1965).
27. L. Wilkinson, *Animals and Disease; An Introduction to the History of Comparative Medicine*, Cambridge University Press, (1992).
28. Arthur Rook (editor), *The Origins and Growth of Biology*, Penguin Books Ltd. (1964).
29. Debré, P.; E. Forster (1998). *Louis Pasteur.* Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press.
30. Duclaux, E. Translated by Erwin F. Smith and Florence Hedges (1920). *Louis Pasteur: The History of a Mind.* Philadelphia, Pennsylvania: W.B. Saunders Company.
31. Geison, Gerald L. (1995). *The Private Science of Louis Pasteur.* Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
32. Latour, Bruno (1988). *The Pasteurization of France.* Boston: Harvard University Press.
33. Reynolds, Moira Davison. *How Pasteur Changed History: The Story of Louis Pasteur and the Pasteur Institute* (1994)
34. Williams, Roger L. (1957). *Gaslight and Shadow: The World of Napoleon III, 1851-1870.* New York: Macmillan Company.

Chapter 3

HOW OUR IMMUNE SYSTEMS WORK

3.1 The language of molecular complementarity

In living (and even non-living) systems, signals can be written and read at the molecular level. The language of molecular signals is a language of complementarity. The first scientist to call attention to complementarity and pattern recognition at the molecular level was Paul Ehrlich, who was born in 1854 in Upper Silesia (now a part of Poland). Ehrlich was not an especially good student, but his originality attracted the attention of his teacher, Professor Waldeyer, under whom he studied chemistry at the University of Strasbourg. Waldeyer encouraged him to do independent experiments with the newly-discovered aniline dyes; and on his own initiative, Ehrlich began to use these dyes to stain bacteria. He was still staining cells with aniline dyes a few years later (by this time he had become a medical student at the University of Breslau) when the great bacteriologist Robert Koch visited the laboratory. "This is young Ehrlich, who is very good at staining, but will never pass his examinations", Koch was told. Nevertheless, Ehrlich did pass his examinations, and he went on to become a doctor of medicine at the University of Leipzig at the age of 24. His doctoral thesis dealt with the specificity of the aniline dyes: Each dye stained a special class of cell and left all other cells unstained.

Paul Ehrlich had discovered what might be called "the language of molecular complementarity": He had noticed that each of his aniline dyes stained only a particular type of tissue or a particular species of bacteria. For example, when he injected one of his blue dyes into the ear of a rabbit, he found to his astonishment that the dye molecules attached themselves selectively to the nerve endings. Similarly, each of the three types of phagocytes could be stained with its own particular dye, which left the other two kinds unstained[1].

[1] The specificity which Ehrlich observed in his staining studies made him hope that it might be possible to find chemicals which would attach themselves selectively to pathogenic bacteria in the blood stream and kill the bacteria without harming normal body cells. He later discovered safe cures for both sleeping sickness and syphilis, thus becoming the father of chemotherapy in medicine. He had already received the Nobel Prize for his studies of the mechanism of immunity, but after his discovery of a cure for syphilis, a

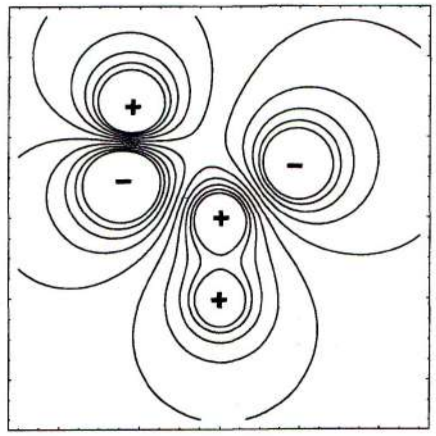


Figure 3.1: **This figure shows the excess charges and the resulting electrostatic potential on a molecule of formic acid, HCOOH. The two oxygens in the carboxyl group are negatively charged, while the carbon and the two hydrogens have positive excess charges. Molecular recognition involves not only steric complementarity, but also complementarity of charge patterns.**

Ehrlich believed that this specificity came about because the side chains on his dye molecules contained groupings of atoms which were complementary to groups of atoms on the surfaces of the cells or bacteria which they selectively stained. In other words, he believed that biological specificity results from a sort of lock and key mechanism: He visualized a dye molecule as moving about in solution until it finds a binding site which exactly fits the pattern of atoms in one of its side chains. Modern research has completely confirmed this picture, with the added insight that we now know that the complementarity of the "lock" and "key" is electrostatic as well as spatial.

Two molecules in a biological system may fit together because the contours of one are complementary to the contours of the other. This is how Paul Ehrlich visualized the fit - a spatial (steric) complementarity, like that of a lock and key. However, we now know that for maximum affinity, the patterns of excess charges on the surfaces of the two molecules must also be complementary. Regions of positive excess charge on the surface of one molecule must fit closely with regions of negative excess charge on the other if the two are to bind maximally. Thus the language of molecules is not only a language of contours, but also a language of charge distributions.

3.2 Paul Ehrlich, the father of chemotherapy

The first real understanding of the mechanism of the immune system was due to the work of Paul Ehrlich and Ilya Mechnikov, and in 1908 they shared a Nobel Prize for this work. Paul

street in Frankfurt was named after him!

Ehrlich can be said to be the discoverer of biological specificity. As a young medical student at the University of Strasbourg, he was fortunate to work under the distinguished chemist Heinrich von Waldeyer, who took a great interest in Ehrlich. Stimulated by Waldeyer, Ehrlich began to do experiments in which he prepared thin slices of various tissues for microscopic examination by staining them with the newly discovered aniline dyes. During the last half of the 19th century, there was a great deal of interest in histological staining. It was during this period that Walther Flemming in Germany discovered chromosomes by staining them with special dyes, and Christian Gram in Denmark showed that bacteria can be classified into two types by staining methods. (We now call these two types “gram positive” and “gram negative”). During this same period, and while he was still a student, Paul Ehrlich made the important discovery that mammalian blood contains three different types of white cells which can be distinguished by staining.

Ehrlich’s early work on staining made him famous, and it also gave him a set of theories which led him to his great discoveries in immunology and chemotherapy. According to Ehrlich’s ideas, the color of the aniline dyes is due to the aniline ring. However, dyes used commercially must also adhere to fabrics, and this adherence, according to Ehrlich, is due to the specific structure of the side chains. If the pattern of atoms on a side chain is complementary to the pattern of atoms on the binding site, the dye will adhere, but otherwise not. Thus there is a “lock and key” mechanism, and for this reason dyes with specific side chains stain specific types of tissue.

In one of his experiments, Paul Ehrlich injected methylene blue into the ear of a living rabbit, and found that it stained only the nerve endings of the rabbit. Since the rabbit seemed to be unharmed by the treatment, the experiment suggested to Ehrlich that it might be possible to find antibacterial substances which could be safely injected into the bloodstream of a patient suffering from an infectious disease. Ehrlich hoped to find substances which would adhere selectively to the bacteria, while leaving the tissues of the patient untouched.

With the help of a large laboratory especially constructed for him in Frankfurt, the center of the German dye industry, Ehrlich began to screen thousands of modified dyes and other compounds. In this way he discovered trypan red, a chemical treatment for sleeping sickness, and arsphenamine, a drug which would cure syphilis. Ehrlich thus became the father of modern chemotherapy. His success pointed the way to Gerhard Domagk, who discovered the sulphonamide drugs in the 1930s, and to Fleming, Waksman, Dubos and others, who discovered the antibiotics.

Ehrlich believed that in the operation of the immune system, the body produces molecules which have a pattern of atoms complementary to patterns (antigens) on invading bacteria, and that these molecules (antibodies) in the blood stream kill the bacteria by adhering to them.

Figure 3.2: **Paul Ehrlich (1854-1915). By the time that he developed a drug that could cure syphilis, he had already received the Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine, but to further honor Ehrlich, a street in Frankfurt was named after him**

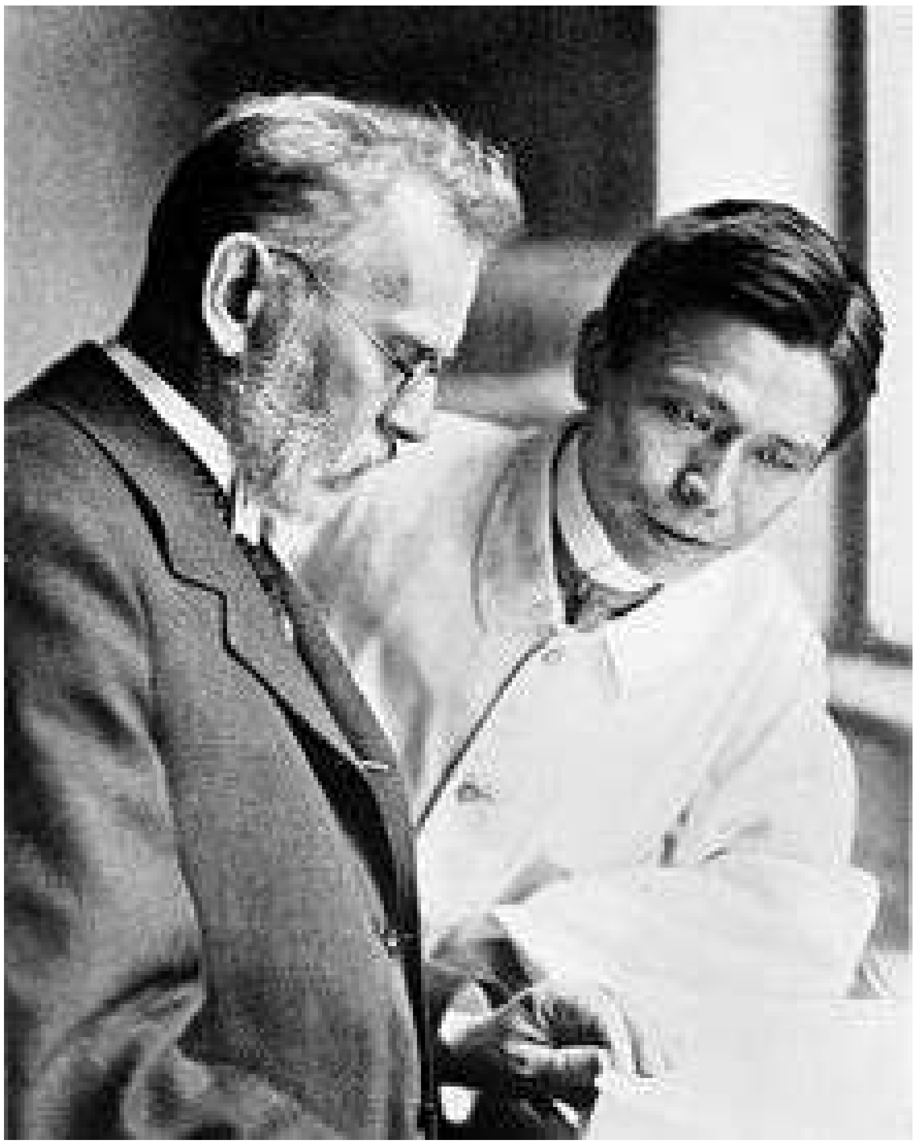


Figure 3.3: **Dr. Paul Ehrlich and his assistant Dr. Sahachiro Hata. They worked together to find cures for many diseases.**

Figure 3.4: **A West German postage stamp (1954) commemorating Paul Ehrlich and Emil von Behring, who worked together at Robert Koch's suggestion, producing a drug that could cure diptheria.**

3.3 Mechnikov

Meanwhile, the Russian naturalist Ilya Mechnikov discovered another mechanism by which the immune system operates. While on vacation in Sicily, Mechnikov was studying the digestive process in starfish larvae. In order to do this, he introduced some particles of carmine into the larvae. The starfish larvae were completely transparent, and thus Mechnikov could look through his microscope and see what happened to the particles. He saw that they were enveloped and apparently digested by wandering amoebalike cells inside the starfish larvae. As he watched this process, it suddenly occurred to Mechnikov that our white cells might similarly envelop and digest bacteria, thus protecting us from infection. Describing this discovery, Mechnikov wrote in his diary: "I suddenly became a pathologist! Feeling that there was in this idea something of surpassing interest, I became so excited that I began striding up and down the room, and even went to the seashore to collect my thoughts."

Mechnikov later named the white cells "phagocytes" (which means "eating cells"). He was able to show experimentally that phagocytosis (i.e., the envelop- ment and digestion of bacteria by phagocytes) is an important mechanism in immunity.

Metchnikov's ideas were not immediately accepted. Wikipedia states that "His theory, that certain white blood cells could engulf and destroy harmful bodies such as bacteria, met with scepticism from leading specialists including Louis Pasteur, Behring and others. At the time, most bacteriologists believed that white blood cells ingested pathogens and then spread them further through the body. His major supporter was Rudolf Virchow, who published his research in his *Archiv für pathologische Anatomie und Physiologie und für klinische Medizin* (now called the Virchows Archiv). His discovery of these phagocytes ultimately won him the Nobel Prize in 1908."

For a number of years, there were bitter arguments between those who thought that the immune system operates through phagocytosis, and those who thought that it operates through antibodies. Finally it was found that both mechanisms play a role. In phagocytosis, the bacterium will not be ingested by the phagocyte unless it is first studded with antibodies. Thus both Mechnikov and Ehrlich were proved to be right.

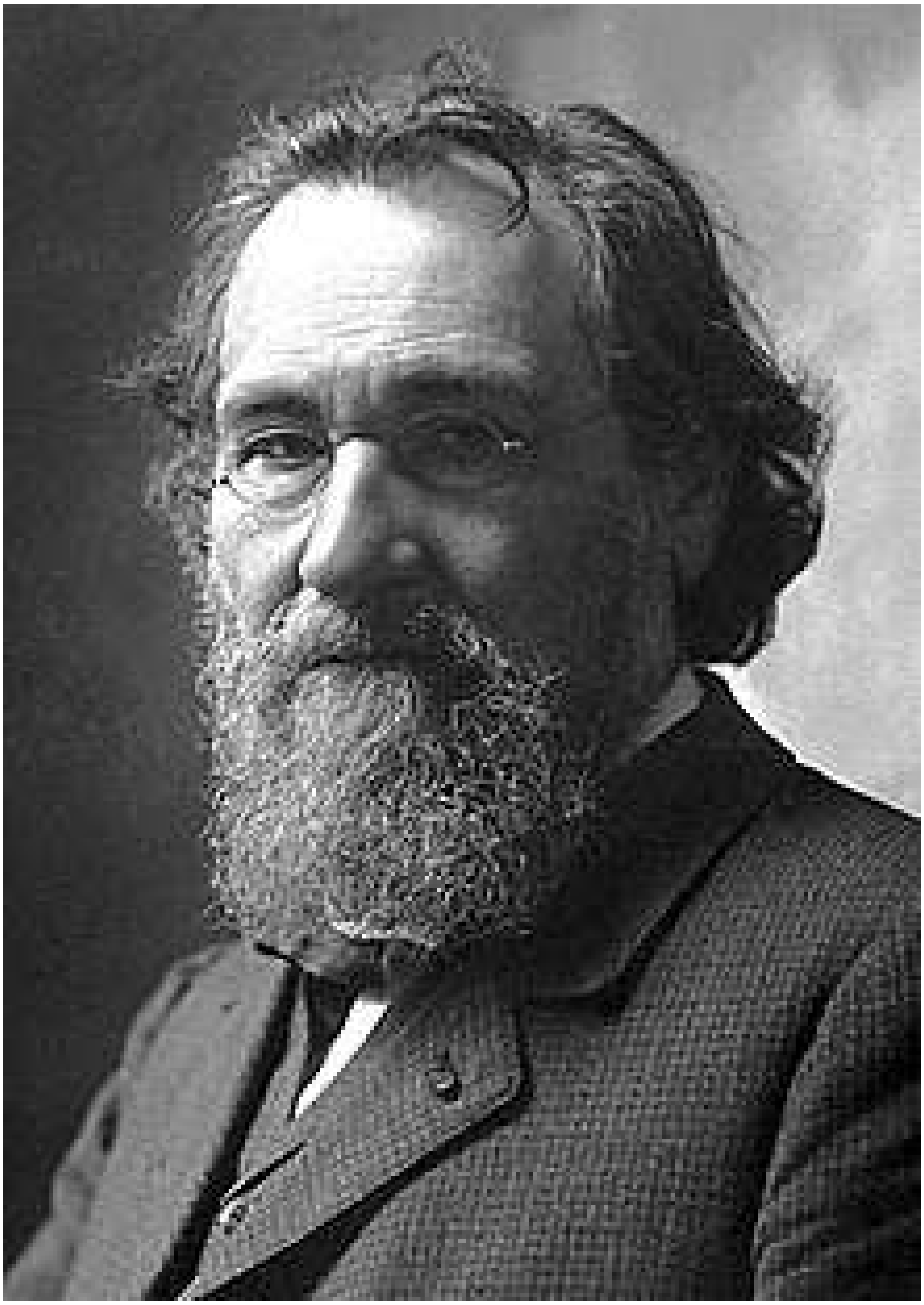


Figure 3.5: **Ilya Mechnikov (1845-1916), sometimes spelled Élie Metchnikoff. He shared the 1908 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine with Paul Ehrlich. Mechnikov has been called "the father of immunology" because of his discovery of phagocytosis.**

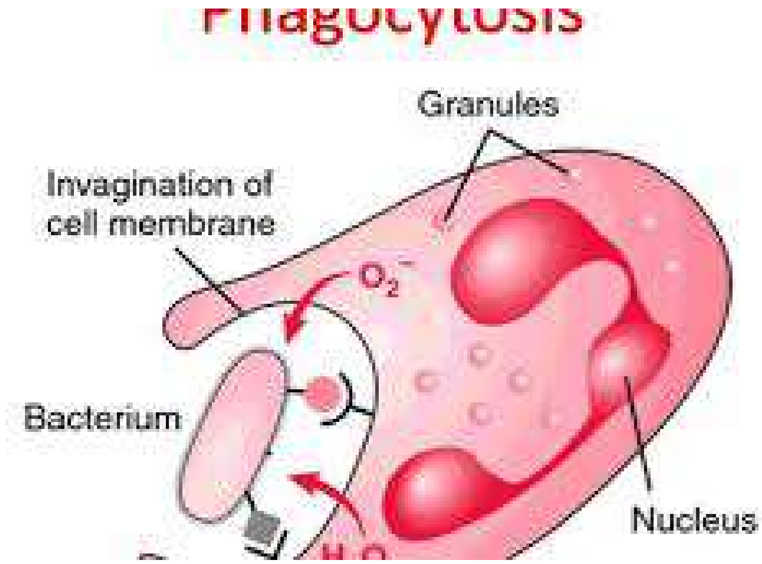


Figure 3.6: **Phagocytosis: A lymphocyte "eats" a bacterium, but only if it is coated with the right antigens.**

3.4 Burnet, Jerne and the clonal theory of immunity

As everyone knows, recovery from an infectious disease involves a response of our immune systems. Recovery occurs after the immune system has had some time to respond, and a recovered patient generally has some immunity to the disease.

During the 20th century, there were conflicting ideas about how and why this process occurs. One of these theories was proposed by Linus Pauling, who thought that an antigen on the surface of a bacteria or virus provides a template, and that the immune system uses this template to produce the specific antibodies needed to combat the disease. However, experimental evidence accumulated showing Pauling's template theory to be wrong and supporting the clonal theory of immunity proposed by Sir Frank Macfarlane Burnet and Niels Kai Jerne.

According to the clonal theory of immunity, there are extremely many strains of lymphocytes, each of which produces a specific single antibody. Populations of all these many strains are always present in small numbers. When a patient becomes ill with an infection, the antigens of the ingesting bacteria or virus stimulate one specific strain of lymphocyte to reproduce itself in large numbers, i.e. to become a clone. This large population produces exactly the right antibodies needed to combat the disease, and the large population remains after recovery, conferring continued immunity.

In order for the immune system not to attack the cells of our own bodies, a learning process must take place, early in our lives, in which the difference between self and non-self is established, and the lymphocyte strains that attack self are suppressed. Jerne postulated (correctly) that this learnubg process takes place in the thymus gland, which is very large in infants, and much smaller in adults.

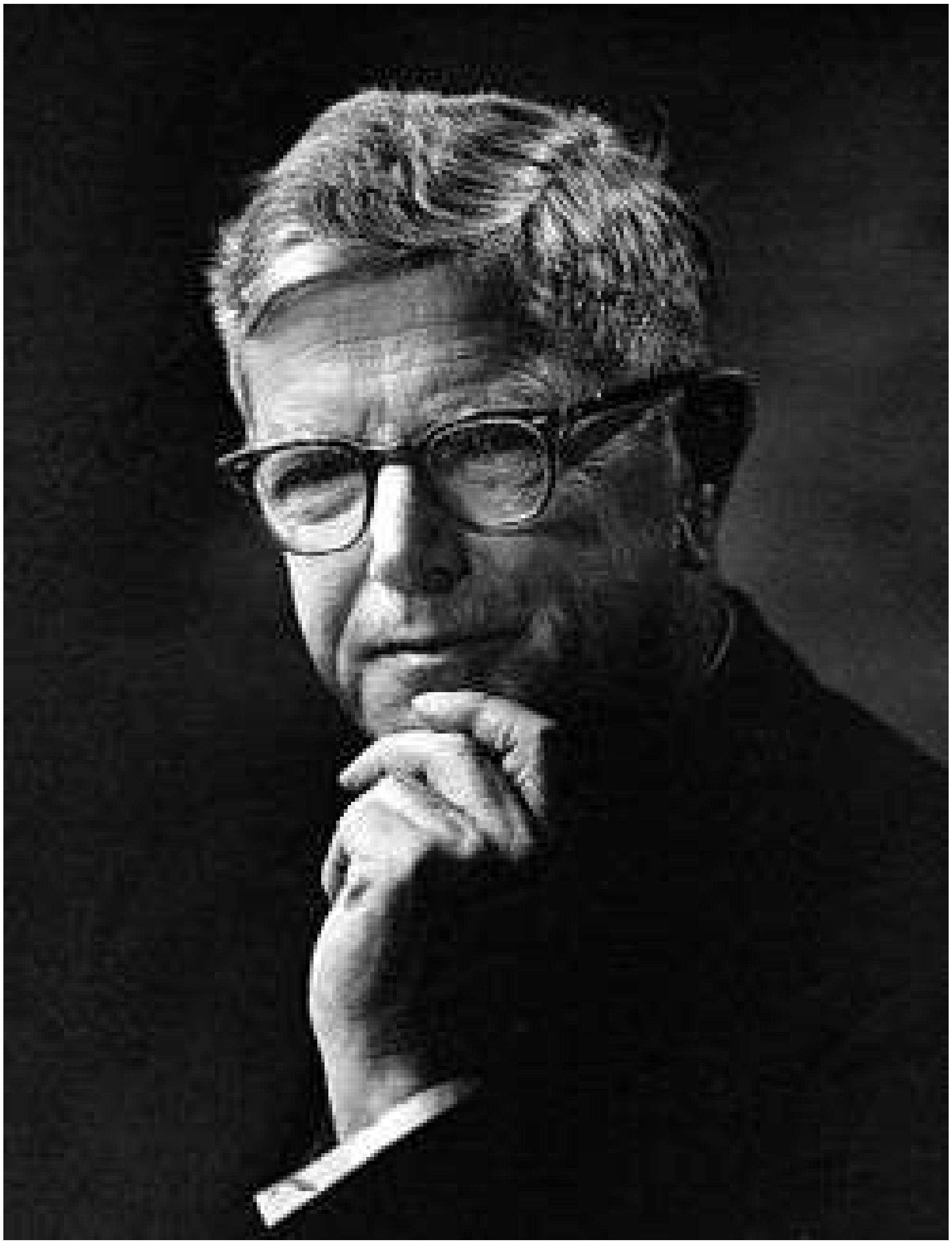


Figure 3.7: **Sir Frank Macfarlane Burnet (1899-1995). Both he and Niels Kai Jerne proposed the clonal theory of immunity.**

Figure 3.8: **The Danish immunologist Niels Kai Jerne (1911-1994). He shared the 1984 Nobel Prize for Physiology or Medicine with Georges Köhler and César Milstein "for theories concerning the specificity in development and control of the immune system and the discovery of the principle for production of monoclonal antibodies".**

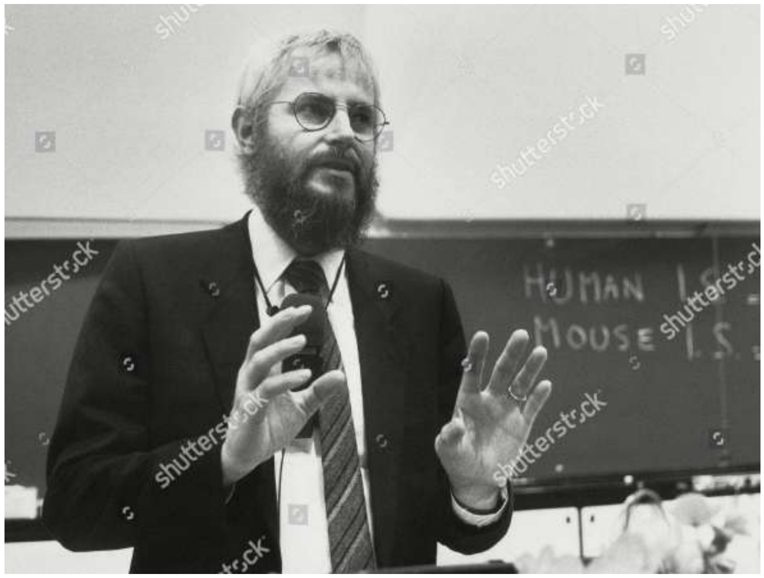


Figure 3.9: **Georges Köhler (1046-1995).**

Figure 3.10: **César Milstein (1927-2002).**

3.5 Köhler, Milstein and monoclonal antibodies

Once the clonal theory of immunity became established, the way seemed open to clone in vitro B lymphocytes of a predetermined specificity. However, such clone cannot be made to live forever because like all other cells, except cancer cells, they are subject to "programed cell death". To overcome this difficulty, Georges Köhler and César Milstein found a way to give the desired lymphocytes immortality by fusing them with myoloma cells, thus producing clones that could be cultured indefinitely.

The Wikipedia article on Monoclonal Antibodies states that "In the 1970s, the B-cell cancer multiple myoloma was known. It was understood that these cancerous B-cells all produce a single type of antibody (a paraprotein). This was used to study the structure of antibodies, but it was not yet possible to produce identical antibodies specific to a given antigen.

"In 1975, Georges Köhler and César Milstein succeeded in making fusions of myeloma cell lines with B cells to create hybridomas that could produce antibodies, specific to known antigens and that were immortalized. They and Niels Kaj Jerne shared the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine in 1984 for the discovery.

"In 1988, Greg Winter and his team pioneered the techniques to humanize monoclonal antibodies, eliminating the reactions that many monoclonal antibodies caused in some patients.

"In 2018, James P. Allison and Tasuku Honjo received the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine for their discovery of cancer therapy by inhibition of negative immune regulation, using monoclonal antibodies that prevent inhibitory linkages."

3.6 Searching for a vaccine against the COVID-19 virus

Here are some reports oc preclinical work from around the world:

- **Around 24 January 2020 in Australia, the University of Queensland announced that it is investigating the potential of a molecular clamp vaccine that would genetically modify viral proteins in order to stimulate an immune reaction.**

- **Around 24 January 2020, the International Vaccine Centre (VIDO-InterVac) at the University of Saskatchewan announced the commencement of work on a vaccine, aiming to start human testing in 2021.**

- **Vaccine development efforts were announced at the Chinese Center for Disease Control and Prevention,[45] and the University of Hong Kong.**

- **Around 29 January 2020, Janssen Pharmaceutical Companies, led by Hanneke Schuitemaker, announced that it had begun work on developing a**

vaccine. Janssen is co-developing an oral vaccine with its biotechnology partner, Vaxart. On 18 March 2020, Emergent BioSolutions announced a manufacturing partnership with Vaxart to develop the vaccine.[49]

- **On 8 February 2020, the laboratory OncoGen in Romania published a paper on the design of an vaccine-design with a similar technology like the one used for cancer neoantigen vaccination therapy" against COVID-19. On 25 March the head of the research institute announced that they finalized the synthesis of the vaccine and that they were beginning the tests.**

- **On 27 February 2020, a Generex subsidiary company, NuGenerex Immuno-Oncology announces they were beginning a vaccine project to create an Ii-Key peptide vaccine against COVID-19. They wanted to produce a vaccine candidate that could be tested in humans "within 90 days."**

- **Washington University in St. Louis announced its efforts to develop a vaccine on 5 March 2020.**

- **On 5 March 2020, the United States Army Medical Research and Materiel Command at Fort Detrick and the Walter Reed Army Institute of Research in Silver Spring, both in western Maryland, announced they were working on a vaccine.**

- **Emergent Biosolutions announced that it had teamed with Novavax Inc. in the development and manufacture of a vaccine. The partners further announced plans for preclinical testing and a Phase I clinical trial by July 2020.**

- **On 12 March 2020, India's Health Ministry announced they are working with 11 isolates and that even on a fast track it would take at least around one-and-a-half to two years to develop a vaccine.**

- **On 12 March 2020, Medicago, a biotechnology company in Quebec City, Quebec, reported development of a coronavirus virus-like particle under partial funding from the Canadian Institutes for Health Research. The vaccine candidate is in laboratory research, with human testing planned for July or August 2020.**

- **On 16 March 2020, the European Commission offered an 80 million Euro investment in CureVac, a German biotechnology company, to develop a mRNA vaccine. Earlier that week, The Guardian had reported the US President Donald Trump offered CureVac "large sums of money" for exclusive access to a Covid-19 vaccine", with the German government contesting this effort.**

- **On 17 March 2020, American pharmaceutical company Pfizer announced a partnership with German company BioNTech to jointly develop a mRNA-based vaccine. mRNA-based vaccine candidate BNT162, currently in pre-clinical testing with clinical trials expected to begin in April 2020.**

- **In Italy on 17 March 2020, Takis Biotech, an Italian biotech company announced they will have pre-clnical testing results in April 2020 and their final vaccine candidate could begin human testing by fall.**

- **In France on 19 March 2020, the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI) announced a US$4.9 million investment in a COVID-19 vaccine research consortium involving the Institut Pasteur, Themis Bioscience (Vienna, Austria), and the University of Pittsburgh, bringing CEPI's total investment in COVID-19 vaccine development to US$29 million. CEPI's other investment partners for COVID-19 vaccine development are Moderna, Curevac, Inovio, Novavax, the University of Hong Kong, the University of Oxford, and the University of Queensland.**

- **On 20 March 2020, Russian health officials announced that scientists have began animal testing of six different vaccine candidates.**

- **Imperial College London researchers announced on 20 March 2020 that they are developing a self-amplifying RNA vaccine for COVID-19. The vaccine candidate was developed within 14 days of receiving the sequence from China.**

- **In late March, the Canadian government announced C$275 million in funding for 96 research projects on medical countermeasures against COVID-19, including numerous vaccine candidates at Canadian companies and universities, such as the Medicago and University of Saskatchewan initiatives. Around the same time, the Canadian government announced C$192 million specifically for developing a COVID-19 vaccine, with plans to establish a national "vaccine bank" of several new vaccines that could be used if another coronavirus outbreak occurs.**

3.7 Balancing dangers in an emergency

We know with certainty certain that unless a vaccine against the COVID-19 virus is developed quickly and distributed widely, enormous numbers of people will die. Therefore, balancing dangers against each other, and choosing the path most likely to result in a minimum of fatalities, it seems logical to remove some of the hinderences that normally block the rapid development of vaccines.

1. **The profit motive must be kept out of the picture. Public funds must be used for research. Considering the enormous economic impact of the pandemic, involving a substantial percentage of the global GDP, the public funds used to develop a vaccine should be proportionately large.**

2. **Prohibitions against testing on humans must be temporarily lifted. Testing on human volunteers should be allowed.**

3. **The requirement of years of testing before widespread distribution of the vaccine must be temporarily lifted.**

4. **Government funds must be used to make the COVID-19 vaccine free for everyone,**

Suggestions for further reading

1. Breathnach, C S (September 1984). *Biographical sketches-No. 44. Metchnikoff.* Irish Medical Journal. Ireland. 77 (9).
2. de Kruif, Paul (1996). *Microbe Hunters.* San Diego: A Harvest Book.
3. Deutsch, Ronald M. (1977). *The new nuts among the berries.* Palo Alto, CA: Bull Pub. Co.
4. Fokin, Sergei I. (2008). *Russian scientists at the Naples zoological station, 1874 - 1934.* Napoli: Giannini.
5. Gourko, Helena; Williamson, Donald I.; Tauber, Alfred I. (2000). *The Evolutionary Biology Papers of Elie Metchnikoff.* Dordrecht: Springer Netherlands.
6. Karnovsky, M L (May 1981). *Metchnikoff in Messina: a century of studies on phagocytosis.* N. Engl. J. Med. United States. 304 (19): 1178-80.
7. Lavrova, L N (September 1970). *I. I. Mechnikov and the significance of his legacy for the development of Soviet science (on the 125th anniversary of his birth).* Zh. Mikrobiol. Epidemiol. Immunobiol. USSR. 47 (9): 3-5.
8. Metchnikoff, Olga (2014) [1921]. *Life of Elie Metchnikoff 1845-1916.* The Floating Press.
9. Schmalstieg Frank C, Goldman Armond S (2008). *Ilya Ilich Metchnikoff (1845-1915) and Paul Ehrlich (1854-1915) The centennial of the 1908 Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine.* Journal of Medical Biography. 16 (2): 96-103.
10. Tauber AI (2003). *Metchnikoff and the phagocytosis theory.* Nature Reviews Molecular Cell Biology. 4 (11): 897-901.
11. Tauber, Alfred I.; Chernyak, Leon (1991). *Metchnikoff and the Origins of Immunology: From Metaphor to Theory.* New York: Oxford University Press.
12. Zalkind, Semyon (2001) [1957]. *Ilya Mechnikov: His Life and Work.* The Minerva Group, Inc.
13. Jerne, N. K. (1955). *The Natural-Selection Theory of Antibody Formation* (PDF). Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America. 41 (11): 849-857.

14. Jerne, N. K. (1974). *Towards a network theory of the immune system.* Annales d'immunologie. 125C (1-2): 373-389.
15. Jerne, N.K. (1984), *Nobel lecture: The Generative Grammar of the Immune System* (PDF), Nobelprize.org, retrieved 8 July 2019.
16. Hoffmann, G.W. (1994), *Niels Jerne, Immunologist 1911-1994*, Vaccine Research, Mary Ann Liebert, Inc., 3: 173-174, archived from the original on 6 October 2014.
17. Dubiski, S. (2004). *Science as Autobiography: The Troubled Life of Niels Jerne.* JAMA: the Journal of the American Medical Association. 291 (10): 1267.
18. Podolsky, Alfred I. Tauber; Scott H. (1997). *The Generation of Diversity : Clonal Selection Theory and the Rise of Molecular Immunology* (1st paperback ed.). Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard Univ. Press.
19. *Biology in Context - The Spectrum of Life* Authors, Peter Aubusson, Eileen Kennedy.
20. Forsdyke D.R. (1995). *The Origins of the Clonal Selection Theory of Immunity.* FASEB Journal. 9: 164-66.
21. G. Köhler and C. Milstein (1975). *Continuous cultures of fused cells secreting antibody of predefined specificity.* Nature. 256 (5517): 495-7.
22. István Hargittai (2006). *K̈hler's Invention.* Journal Structural Chemistry. 17 (1)
23. Melchers, F (1995). *Georges Köhler (1946-95).* Nature. 374 (6522) (published Apr 6, 1995). p. 498.
24. Danon, Y L (1996). *Monoclonal antibodies: George Kohler.* Harefuah. 130 (2) (published Jan 15, 1996). pp. 108-9.
25. Armstrong, Dorsey (2016). *The Black Death: The World's Most Devastating Plague.* The Great Courses.
26. Benedictow, Ole Jørgen (2004). *Black Death 1346-1353: The Complete History.*
27. Byrne, J. P. (2004). *The Black Death. London.* Greenwood Publishing Group.
28. Cantor, Norman F. (2001). *In the Wake of the Plague: The Black Death and the World It Made*, New York, Free Press.
29. Cohn, Samuel K. Jr., (2002). *The Black Death Transformed: Disease and Culture in Early Renaissance Europe*, London: Arnold.
30. Gasquet, Francis Aidan (1893). *The Great Pestilence AD 1348 to 1349: Now Commonly Known As the Black Death.*
31. Hecker, J.F.C. (1859). B.G. Babington (trans) (ed.). *Epidemics of the Middle Ages.* London: TrÃ$\frac{1}{4}$bner.
32. Herlihy, D., (1997). *The Black Death and the Transformation of the West*, Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press.
33. McNeill, William H. (1976). *Plagues and Peoples.* Anchor/Doubleday.
34. Scott, S., and Duncan, C. J., (2001). *Biology of Plagues: Evidence from Historical Populations*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
35. Shrewsbury, J. F. D., (1970). *A History of Bubonic Plague in the British Isles*, London: Cambridge University Press.
36. Twigg, G., (1984). *The Black Death: A Biological Reappraisal*, London: Batsford.
37. Ziegler, Philip (1998). *The Black Death.* Penguin Books. 1st editions 1969.

38. H. Lodish, A. Berk, S.L. Zipursky, P. Matsudaira, D. Baltimore, and J. Darnell, *Molecular Cell Biology, 4th Edition*, W.H. Freeman, New York, (2000).
39. Lily Kay, *Who Wrote the Book of Life? A History of the Genetic Code*, Stanford University Press, Stanford CA, (2000).
40. Sahotra Sarkar (editor), *The Philosophy and History of Molecular Bi- ology*, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston, (1996).
41. James D. Watson et al. *Molecular Biology of the Gene, 4th Edition*, Benjamin-Cummings, (1988).
42. J.S. Fruton, *Proteins, Enzymes, and Genes*, Yale University Press, New Haven, (1999).
43. S.E. Lauria, *Life, the Unfinished Experiment*, Charles Scribner's Sons, New York (1973).
44. A. Lwoff, *Biological Order*, MIT Press, Cambridge MA, (1962).
45. James D. Watson, *The Double Helix*, Athenium, New York (1968).
46. F. Crick, *The genetic code*, Scientific American, **202**, 66-74 (1962).
47. F. Crick, *Central dogma of molecular biology*, Nature, **227**, 561-563 (1970).
48. David Freifelder (editor), *Recombinant DNA, Readings from the Scientific American*, W.H. Freeman and Co. (1978).
49. James D. Watson, John Tooze and David T. Kurtz, *Recombinant DNA, A Short Course*, W.H. Freeman, New York (1983).
50. Richard Hutton, *Biorevolution, DNA and the Ethics of Man-Made Life*, The New American Library, New York (1968).
51. Martin Ebon, *The Cloning of Man*, The New American Library, New York (1978).
52. Sheldon Krimsky, *Genetic Alchemy: The Social History of the Recombinant DNA Controversy*, MIT Press, Cambridge Mass (1983).
53. M. Lappe, *Germs That Won't Die*, Anchor/Doubleday, Garden City N.Y. (1982).
54. M. Lappe,*Broken Code*, Sierra Club Books, San Francisco (1984).
55. President's Commission for the Study of Ethical Problems in Medicine and Biomedical and Behavioral Research, *Splicing Life: The Social and Ethical Issues of Genetic Engineering with Human Beings*, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C. (1982).
56. U.S. Congress, Office of Technology Assessment, *Impacts of Applied Genetics - Microorganisms, Plants and Animals*, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C. (1981).
57. W.T. Reich (editor), *Encyclopedia of Bioethics*, The Free Press, New York (1978).
58. Martin Brown (editor), *The Social Responsibility of the Scientist*, The Free Press, New York (1970).
59. B. Zimmerman, *Biofuture*, Plenum Press, New York (1984).
60. John Lear, *Recombinant DNA, The Untold Story*, Crown, New York (1978).
61. B. Alberts, D. Bray, J. Lewis, M. Raff, K. Roberts and J.D. Watson, *Molecular Biology of the Cell*, Garland, New York (1983).
62. C. Woese, *The Genetic Code; The Molecular Basis for Genetic Expression*, Harper and Row, New York, (1967).

63. F.H.C. Crick, *The Origin of the Genetic Code*, J. Mol. Biol. **38**, 367-379 (1968).
64. M.W. Niernberg, *The genetic code: II*, Scientific American, **208**, 80-94 (1962).
65. L.E. Orgel, *Evolution of the Genetic Apparatus*, J. Mol. Biol. **38**, 381-393 (1968).
66. Melvin Calvin, *Chemical Evolution Towards the Origin of Life, on Earth and Elsewhere*, Oxford University Press (1969).
67. R. Shapiro, *Origins: A Skeptic's Guide to the Origin of Life*, Summit Books, New York, (1986).
68. J. William Schopf, *Earth's earliest biosphere: its origin and evolution*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., (1983).
69. J. William Schopf (editor), *Major Events in the History of Life*, Jones and Bartlet, Boston, (1992).
70. Robert Rosen, *Life itself: a comprehensive inquiry into the nature, origin and fabrication of life*, Colombia University Press, (1991).
71. R.F. Gesteland, T.R Cech, and J.F. Atkins (editors), *The RNA World, 2nd Edition*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, (1999).
72. C. de Duve, Blueprint of a Cell, Niel Patterson Publishers, Burlington N.C., (1991).
73. C. de Duve, *Vital Dust; Life as a Cosmic Imperative*, Basic Books, New York, (1995).
74. F. Dyson, *Origins of Life*, Cambridge University Press, (1985).
75. S.A. Kaufman, *Antichaos and adaption*, Scientific American, 265, 78-84, (1991).
76. S.A. Kauffman, *The Origins of Order*, Oxford University Press, (1993).
77. F.J. Varela and J.-P. Dupuy, *Understanding Origins: Contemporary Views on the Origin of Life, Mind and Society*, Kluwer, Dordrecht, (1992).
78. Stefan Bengtson (editor) *Early Life on Earth; Nobel Symposium No. 84*, Colombia University Press, New York, (1994).
79. Herrick Baltscheffsky, *Origin and Evolution of Biological Energy Con- version*, VCH Publishers, New York, (1996).
80. J. Chilea-Flores, T. Owen and F. Raulin (editors), *First Steps in the Origin of Life in the Universe*, Kluwer, Dordrecht, (2001).
81. R.E. Dickerson, Nature **283**, 210-212 (1980).
82. R.E. Dickerson, Scientific American **242**, 136-153 (1980).
83. C.R. Woese, *Archaebacteria*, Scientific American **244**, 98-122 (1981).
84. N. Iwabe, K. Kuma, M. Hasegawa, S. Osawa and T. Miyata, *Evolutionary relationships of archaebacteria, eubacteria, and eukaryotes inferred phylogenetic trees of duplicated genes*, Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA **86**, 9355-9359 (1989).
85. C.R. Woese, O. Kundler, and M.L. Wheelis, *Towards a Natural System of Organisms: Proposal for the Domains Archaea, Bacteria and Eucaria*, Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA **87**, 4576-4579 (1990).
86. W. Ford Doolittle, Phylogenetic Classification and the Universal Tree, Science, **284**, (1999).
87. G. Wächterhäuser, *Pyrite formation, the first energy source for life: A hypothesis*, Systematic and Applied Microbiology **10**, 207-210 (1988).
88. G. Wächterhäuser, *Before enzymes and templates: Theory of surface metabolism*, Microbiological Reviews, **52**, 452-484 (1988).

89. G. Wächterhäuser, Evolution of the first metabolic cycles, Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA **87**, 200-204 (1990).
90. G. Wächterhäuser, *Groundworks for an evolutionary biochemistry the iron-sulfur world*, Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology **58**, 85-210 (1992).
91. M.J. Russell and A.J. Hall, *The emergence of life from iron monosulphide bubbles at a submarine hydrothermal redox and pH front* J. Geol. Soc. Lond. **154**, 377-402, (1997).
92. L.H. Caporale (editor), *Molecular Strategies in Biological Evolution*, Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci., May 18, (1999).
93. W. Martin and M.J. Russell, *On the origins of cells: a hypothesis for the evolutionary transitions from abiotic geochemistry to chemoautotrophic prokaryotes, and from prokaryotes to nucleated cells*, Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B Biol. Sci., **358**, 59-85, (2003).
94. Werner Arber, *Elements in Microbal Evolution*, J. Mol. Evol. **33, 4** (1991).
95. Michael Gray, *The Bacterial Ancestry of Plastids and Mitochondria*, BioScience, **33**, 693-699 (1983).
96. Michael Grey, *The Endosymbiont Hypothesis Revisited*, International Review of Cytology, **141**, 233-257 (1992).
97. Lynn Margulis and Dorian Sagan, *Microcosmos: Four Billion Years of Evolution from Our Microbal Ancestors*, Allan and Unwin, London, (1987).
98. Lynn Margulis and Rene Fester, eds., *Symbiosis as as Source of Evolutionary Innovation: Speciation and Morphogenesis*, MIT Press, (1991).
99. Charles Mann, *Lynn Margulis: Science's Unruly Earth Mother*, Science, **252**, 19 April, (1991).
100. Jan Sapp, *Evolution by Association; A History of Symbiosis*, Oxford University Press, (1994).
101. J.A. Shapiro, *Natural genetic engineering in evolution*, Genetics, **86**, 99-111 (1992).
102. E.M. De Robertis et al., *Homeobox genes and the vertebrate body plan*, Scientific American, July, (1990).
103. J.S. Schrum, T.F. Zhu and J.W. Szostak, *The origins of cellular life*, Cold Spring Harb. Perspect. Biol., May 19 (2010).
104. I. Budin and J.W. Szostak, *Expanding Roles for Diverse Physical Phenomena During the Origin of Life*, Annu. Rev. Biophys., **39**, 245-263, (2010).

Chapter 4

MOLECULAR BIOLOGY AND GENE-SPLICING

4.1 Molecular biology and genetic engineering

Classical genetics

Charles Darwin postulated that natural selection acts on small inheritable variations in the individual members of a species. His opponents objected that these slight variations would be averaged away by interbreeding. Darwin groped after an answer to this objection, but he did not have one. However, unknown to Darwin, the answer had been uncovered several years earlier by an obscure Augustinian monk, Gregor Mendel, who was born in Silesia in 1822, and who died in Bohemia in 1884.

Mendel loved both botany and mathematics, and he combined these two interests in his hobby of breeding peas in the monastery garden. Mendel carefully self-pollinated his pea plants, and then wrapped the flowers to prevent pollination by insects. He kept records of the characteristics of the plants and their offspring, and he found that dwarf peas always breed true - they invariably produce other dwarf plants. The tall variety of pea plants, pollinated with themselves, did not always breed true, but Mendel succeeded in isolating a strain of true-breeding tall plants which he inbred over many generations.

Next he crossed his true-breeding tall plants with the dwarf variety and produced a generation of hybrids. All of the hybrids produced in this way were tall. Finally Mendel self-pollinated the hybrids and recorded the characteristics of the next generation. Roughly one quarter of the plants in this new generation were true-breeding tall plants, one quarter were true-breeding dwarfs, and one half were tall but not true-breeding.

Gregor Mendel had in fact discovered the existence of dominant and recessive genes. In peas, dwarfism is a recessive characteristic, while tallness is dominant. Each plant has two sets of genes, one from each parent. Whenever the gene for tallness is present, the plant is tall, regardless of whether it also has a gene for dwarfism. When Mendel crossed the pure-breeding dwarf plants with pure-breeding tall ones, the hybrids received one type of gene from each parent. Each hybrid had a tall gene and a dwarf gene; but the tall gene was dominant, and therefore all the hybrids were tall. When the hybrids were self-pollinated or crossed with each other, a genetic lottery took place. In the next generation, through the laws of chance, a quarter of the plants had two dwarf genes, a quarter had two tall genes, and half had one of each kind.

Mendel published his results in the *Transactions of the Brünn Natural History Society* in 1865, and no one noticed his paper[1]. At that time, Austria was being overrun by the Prussians, and people had other things to think about. Mendel was elected Abbot of his monastery; he grew too old and fat to bend over and cultivate his pea plants; his work on heredity was completely forgotten, and he died never knowing that he would one day be considered to be the founder of modern genetics.

In 1900 the Dutch botanist named Hugo de Vries, working on evening primroses, independently rediscovered Mendel's laws. Before publishing, he looked through the literature to see whether anyone else had worked on the subject, and to his amazement he found that Mendel had anticipated his great discovery by 35 years. De Vries could easily have published his own work without mentioning Mendel, but his honesty was such that he gave Mendel full credit and mentioned his own work only as a confirmation of Mendel's laws. Astonishingly, the same story was twice repeated elsewhere in Europe during the same year. In 1900, two other botanists (Correns in Berlin and Tschermak in Vienna) independently rediscovered Mendel's laws, looked through the literature, found Mendel's 1865 paper, and gave him full credit for the discovery.

Besides rediscovering the Mendelian laws for the inheritance of dominant and recessive characteristics, de Vries made another very important discovery: He discovered genetic mutations - sudden unexplained changes of form which can be inherited by subsequent generations. In growing evening primroses, de Vries found that sometimes, but very rarely, a completely new variety would suddenly appear, and he found that the variation could be propagated to the following generations. Actually, mutations had been observed before the time of de Vries. For example, a short-legged mutant sheep had suddenly appeared during the 18th century; and stock-breeders had taken advantage of this mutation to breed sheep that could not jump over walls. However, de Vries was the first scientist to study and describe mutations. He noticed that most mutations are harmful, but that a very few are beneficial, and those few tend in nature to be propagated to future generations.

After the rediscovery of Mendel's work by de Vries, many scientists began to suspect that chromosomes might be the carriers of genetic information. The word "chromosome" had been invented by the German physiologist, Walther Flemming, to describe the long, threadlike bodies which could be seen when cells were stained and examined through, the microscope during the process of division. It had been found that when an ordinary cell divides, the chromosomes also divide, so that each daughter cell has a full set of chromosomes.

The Belgian cytologist, Edouard van Benedin, had shown that in the formation of sperm and egg cells, the sperm and egg receive only half of the full number of chromosomes. It

[1] Mendel sent a copy of his paper to Darwin; but Darwin, whose German was weak, seems not to have read it.

had been found that when the sperm of the father combines with the egg of the mother in sexual reproduction, the fertilized egg again has a full set of chromosomes, half coming from the mother and half from the father. This was so consistent with the genetic lottery studied by Mendel, de Vries and others, that it seemed almost certain that chromosomes were the carriers of genetic information.

The number of chromosomes was observed to be small (for example, each normal cell of a human has 46 chromosomes); and this made it obvious that each chromosome must contain thousands of genes. It seemed likely that all of the genes on a particular chromosome would stay together as they passed through the genetic lottery; and therefore certain characteristics should always be inherited together.

This problem had been taken up by Thomas Hunt Morgan, a professor of experimental zoology working at Colombia University. He found it convenient to work with fruit flies, since they breed with lightning-like speed and since they have only four pairs of chromosomes.

Morgan found that he could raise enormous numbers of these tiny insects with almost no effort by keeping them in gauze-covered glass milk bottles, in the bottom of which he placed mashed bananas. In 1910, Morgan found a mutant white-eyed male fly in one of his milk-bottle incubators. He bred this fly with a normal red-eyed female, and produced hundreds of red-eyed hybrids. When he crossed the red-eyed hybrids with each other, half of the next generation were red-eyed females, a quarter were red-eyed males, and a quarter were white-eyed males. There was not one single white-eyed female! This indicated that the mutant gene for white eyes was on the same chromosome as the gene for the male sex.

As Morgan continued his studies of genetic linkages, however, it became clear that the linkages were not absolute. There was a tendency for all the genes on the same chromosome to be inherited together; but on rare occasions there were "crosses", where apparently a pair of chromosomes broke at some point and exchanged segments. By studying these crosses statistically, Morgan and his "fly squad" were able to find the relative positions of genes on the chromosomes. They reasoned that the probability for a cross to separate two genes should be proportional to the distance between the two genes on the chromosome. In this way, after 17 years of work and millions of fruit flies, Thomas Hunt Morgan and his coworkers were able to make maps of the fruit fly chromosomes showing the positions of the genes.

This work had been taken a step further by Hermann J. Muller, a member of Morgan's "fly squad", who exposed hundreds of fruit flies to X-rays. The result was a spectacular outbreak of man-made mutations in the next generation.

"They were a motley throng", recalled Muller. Some of the mutant flies had almost no wings, others bulging eyes, and still others brown, yellow or purple eyes; some had no bristles, and others curly bristles. Muller's experiments indicated that mutations can be produced by radiation-induced physical damage; and he guessed that such damage alters the chemical structure of genes.

In spite of the brilliant work by Morgan and his collaborators, no one had any idea of what a gene really was.

The structure of DNA

Until 1944, most scientists had guessed that the genetic message was carried by the proteins of the chromosome. In 1944, however, O.T. Avery and his co-workers at the laboratory of the Rockefeller Institute in New York performed a critical experiment, which proved that the material which carries genetic information is not protein, but deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) - a giant chainlike molecule which had been isolated from cell nuclei by the Swiss chemist, Friedrich Miescher.

Avery had been studying two different strains of pneumococci, the bacteria which cause pneumonia. One of these strains, the S-type, had a smooth coat, while the other strain, the R-type, lacked an enzyme needed for the manufacture of a smooth carbohydrate coat. Hence, R-type pneumococci had a rough appearance under the microscope. Avery and his co-workers were able to show that an extract from heat-killed S-type pneumococci could convert the living R-type species permanently into S-type; and they also showed that this extract consisted of pure DNA.

In 1947, the Austrian-American biochemist, Erwin Chargaff, began to study the long, chainlike DNA molecules. It had already been shown by Levine and Todd that chains of DNA are built up of four bases: adenine (A), thymine (T), guanine (G) and cytosine (C), held together by a sugar-phosphate backbone. Chargaff discovered that in DNA from the nuclei of living cells, the amount of A always equals the amount of T; and the amount of G always equals the amount of C.

When Chargaff made this discovery, neither he nor anyone else understood its meaning. However, in 1953, the mystery was completely solved by Rosalind Franklin and Maurice Wilkins at Kings College, London, together with James Watson and Francis Crick at Cambridge University. By means of X-ray diffraction techniques, Wilkins and Franklin obtained crystallographic information about the structure of DNA. Using this information, together with Linus Pauling's model-building methods, Crick and Watson proposed a detailed structure for the giant DNA molecule.

The discovery of the molecular structure of DNA was an event of enormous importance for genetics, and for biology in general. The structure was a revelation! The giant, helical DNA molecule was like a twisted ladder: Two long, twisted sugar-phosphate backbones formed the outside of the ladder, while the rungs were formed by the base pairs, A, T, G and C. The base adenine (A) could only be paired with thymine (T), while guanine (G) fit only with cytosine (C). Each base pair was weakly joined in the center by hydrogen bonds - in other words, there was a weak point in the center of each rung of the ladder - but the bases were strongly attached to the sugar-phosphate backbone. In their 1953 paper, Crick and Watson wrote:

"It has not escaped our notice that the specific pairing we have postulated suggests a possible copying mechanism for genetic material". Indeed, a sudden blaze of understanding illuminated the inner workings of heredity, and of life itself.

If the weak hydrogen bonds in the center of each rung were broken, the ladderlike DNA macromolecule could split down the center and divide into two single strands. Each single strand would then become a template for the formation of a new double-stranded molecule.

Because of the specific pairing of the bases in the Watson-Crick model of DNA, the two strands had to be complementary. T had to be paired with A, and G with C. Therefore, if the sequence of bases on one strand was (for example) TTTGCTAAAGGTGAACCA... , then the other strand necessarily had to have the sequence AAACGATTTCCACTTGGT... The Watson-Crick model of DNA made it seem certain that all the genetic information needed for producing a new individual is coded into the long, thin, double-stranded DNA molecule of the cell nucleus, written in a four-letter language whose letters are the bases, adenine, thymine, guanine and cytosine.

The solution of the DNA structure in 1953 initiated a new kind of biology - molecular biology. This new discipline made use of recently-discovered physical techniques - X-ray diffraction, electron microscopy, electrophoresis, chromatography, ultracentrifugation, radioactive tracer techniques, autoradiography, electron spin resonance, nuclear magnetic resonance and ultraviolet spectroscopy. In the 1960's and 1970's, molecular biology became the most exciting and rapidly-growing branch of science.

Protein structure

In England, J.D. Bernal and Dorothy Crowfoot Hodgkin pioneered the application of X-ray diffraction methods to the study of complex biological molecules. In 1949, Hodgkin determined the structure of penicillin; and in 1955, she followed this with the structure of vitamin B12. In 1960, Max Perutz and John C. Kendrew obtained the structures of the blood proteins myoglobin and hemoglobin. This was an impressive achievement for the Cambridge crystallographers, since the hemoglobin molecule contains roughly 12,000 atoms.

The structure obtained by Perutz and Kendrew showed that hemoglobin is a long chain of amino acids, folded into a globular shape, like a small, crumpled ball of yarn. They found that the amino acids with an affinity for water were on the outside of the globular molecule; while the amino acids for which contact with water was energetically unfavorable were hidden on the inside. Perutz and Kendrew deduced that the conformation of the protein - the way in which the chain of amino acids folded into a 3-dimensional structure - was determined by the sequence of amino acids in the chain.

In 1966, D.C. Phillips and his co-workers at the Royal Institution in London found the crystallographic structure of the enzyme lysozyme (an egg-white protein which breaks down the cell walls of certain bacteria). Again, the structure showed a long chain of amino acids, folded into a roughly globular shape. The amino acids with hydrophilic groups were on the outside, in contact with water, while those with hydrophobic groups were on the inside. The structure of lysozyme exhibited clearly an active site, where sugar molecules of bacterial cell walls were drawn into a mouth-like opening and stressed by electrostatic forces, so that bonds between the sugars could easily be broken.

Meanwhile, at Cambridge University, Frederick Sanger developed methods for finding the exact sequence of amino acids in a protein chain. In 1945, he discovered a compound (2,4-dinitrofluorobenzene) which attaches itself preferentially to one end of a chain of amino acids. Sanger then broke down the chain into individual amino acids, and determined which of them was connected to his reagent. By applying this procedure many times to fragments of larger chains, Sanger was able to deduce the sequence of amino acids in complex proteins. In 1953, he published the sequence of insulin. This led, in 1964, to the synthesis of insulin.

The biological role and structure of proteins which began to emerge was as follows: A mammalian cell produces roughly 10,000 different proteins. All enzymes are proteins; and the majority of proteins are enzymes - that is, they catalyze reactions involving other biological molecules. All proteins are built from chainlike polymers, whose monomeric sub-units are the following twenty amino acids: glycine, aniline, valine, isoleucine, leucine, serine, threonine, proline, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, lysine, arginine, asparagine, glutamine, cysteine, methionine, tryptophan, phenylalanine, tyrosine and histidine. These individual amino acid monomers may be connected together into a polymer (called a polypeptide) in any order - hence the great number of possibilities. In such a polypeptide, the backbone is a chain of carbon and nitrogen atoms showing the pattern ...-C-C-N-C-C-N-C-C-N-...and so on. The -C-C-N- repeating unit is common to all amino acids. Their individuality is derived from differences in the side groups which are attached to the universal -C-C-N- group.

Some proteins, like hemoglobin, contain metal atoms, which may be oxidized or reduced as the protein performs its biological function. Other proteins, like lysozyme, contain no metal atoms, but instead owe their biological activity to an active site on the surface of the protein molecule. In 1909, the English physician, Archibald Garrod, had proposed a one-gene-one-protein hypothesis. He believed that hereditary diseases are due to the absence of specific enzymes. According to Garrod's hypothesis, damage suffered by a gene results in the faulty synthesis of the corresponding enzyme, and loss of the enzyme ultimately results in the symptoms of the hereditary disease.

In the 1940's, Garrod's hypothesis was confirmed by experiments on the mold, Neurospora, performed at Stanford University by George Beadle and Edward Tatum. They demonstrated that mutant strains of the mold would grow normally, provided that specific extra nutrients were added to their diets. The need for these dietary supplements could in every case be traced to the lack of a specific enzyme in the mutant strains. Linus Pauling later extended these ideas to human genetics by showing that the hereditary disease, sickle-cell anemia, is due to a defect in the biosynthesis of hemoglobin.

RNA and ribosomes

Since DNA was known to carry the genetic message, coded into the sequence of the four nucleotide bases, A, T, G and C, and since proteins were known to be composed of specific sequences of the twenty amino acids, it was logical to suppose that the amino acid sequence in a protein was determined by the base sequence of DNA. The information somehow had to be read from the DNA and used in the biosynthesis of the protein.

It was known that, in addition to DNA, cells also contain a similar, but not quite identical, polynucleotide called ribonucleic acid (RNA). The sugar-phosphate backbone of RNA was known to differ slightly from that of DNA; and in RNA, the nucleotide thymine

(T) was replaced by a chemically similar nucleotide, uracil (U). Furthermore, while DNA was found only in cell nuclei, RNA was found both in cell nuclei and in the cytoplasm of cells, where protein synthesis takes place. Evidence accumulated indicating that genetic information is first transcribed from DNA to RNA, and afterwards translated from RNA into the amino acid sequence of proteins.

At first, it was thought that RNA might act as a direct template, to which successive amino acids were attached. However, the appropriate chemical complementarity could not be found; and therefore, in 1955, Francis Crick proposed that amino acids are first bound to an adaptor molecule, which is afterward bound to RNA.

In 1956, George Emil Palade of the Rockefeller Institute used electron microscopy to study subcellular particles rich in RNA (ribosomes). Ribosomes were found to consist of two subunits - a smaller subunit, with a molecular weight one million times the weight of a hydrogen atom, and a larger subunit with twice this weight.

It was shown by means of radioactive tracers that a newly synthesized protein molecule is attached temporarily to a ribosome, but neither of the two subunits of the ribosome seemed to act as a template for protein synthesis. Instead, Palade and his coworkers found that genetic information is carried from DNA to the ribosome by a messenger RNA molecule (mRNA). Electron microscopy revealed that mRNA passes through the ribosome like a punched computer tape passing through a tape-reader. It was found that the adapter molecules, whose existence Crick had postulated, were smaller molecules of RNA; and these were given the name "transfer RNA" (tRNA). It was shown that, as an mRNA molecule passes through a ribosome, amino acids attached to complementary tRNA adaptor molecules are added to the growing protein chain.

The relationship between DNA, RNA, the proteins and the smaller molecules of a cell was thus seen to be hierarchical: The cell's DNA controlled its proteins (through the agency of RNA); and the proteins controlled the synthesis and metabolism of the smaller molecules.

The genetic code

In 1955, Severo Ochoa, at New York University, isolated a bacterial enzyme (RNA polymerase) which was able join the nucleotides A, G, U and C so that they became an RNA strand. One year later, this feat was repeated for DNA by Arthur Kornberg.

With the help of Ochoa's enzyme, it was possible to make synthetic RNA molecules containing only a single nucleotide - for example, one could join uracil molecules into the ribonucleic acid chain, ...U-U-U-U-U-U-... In 1961, Marshall Nirenberg and Heinrich Matthaei used synthetic poly-U as messenger RNA in protein synthesis; and they found that only polyphenylalanine was synthesized. In the same year, Sydney Brenner and Francis Crick reported a series of experiments on mutant strains of the bacteriophage, T4. The experiments of Brenner and Crick showed that whenever a mutation added or deleted either one or two base pairs, the proteins produced by the mutants were highly abnormal and non-functional. However, when the mutation added or subtracted three base pairs, the proteins often were functional. Brenner and Crick concluded that the genetic language

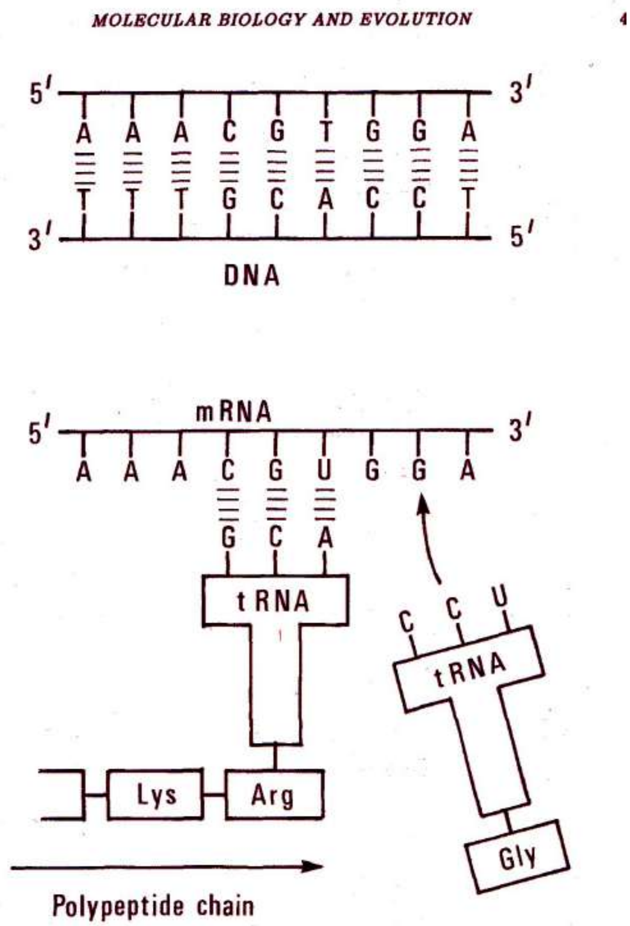


Figure 4.1: Information coded on DNA molecules in the cell nucleus is transcribed to mRNA molecules. The messenger-RNA molecules in turn provide information for the amino acid sequence in protein synthesis. In this figure, tRNA stands for transfer-RNA, while mRNA stands for messenger-RNA. Lys, Arg and Gly are amino acids.

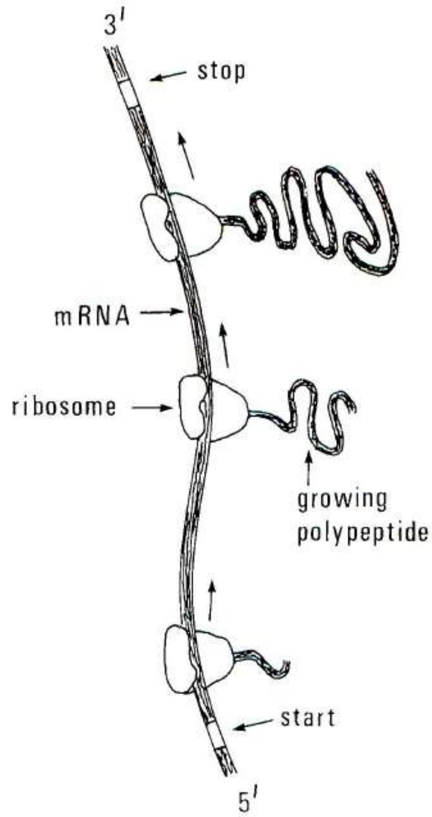


Figure 4.2: mRNA passes through the ribosome like a punched computer tape passing through a tape-reader.

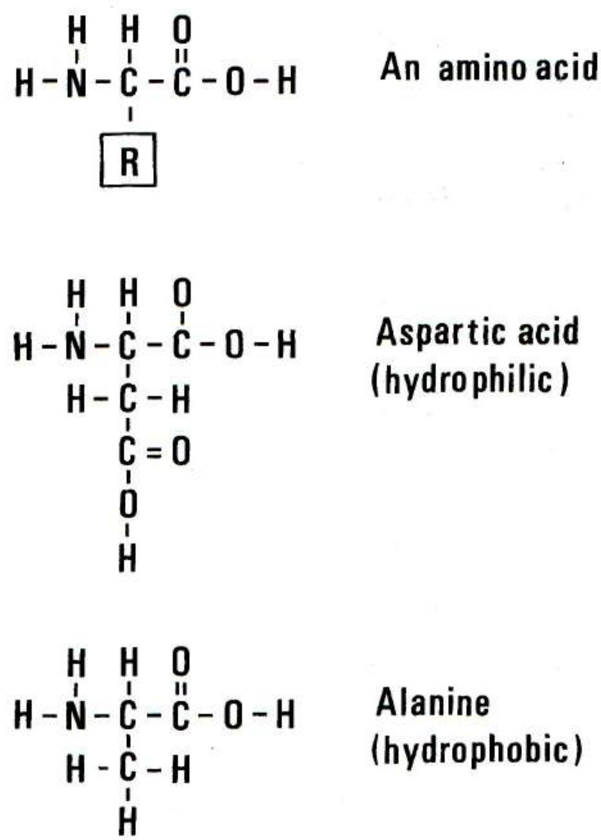


Figure 4.3: This figure shows aspartic acid, whose residue (R) is hydrophilic, contrasted with alanine, whose residue is hydrophobic.

Table 4.1: **The genetic code**

TTT=Phe	TCT=Ser	TAT=Tyr	TGT=Cys
TTC=Phe	TCC=Ser	TAC=Tyr	TGC=Cys
TTA=Leu	TCA=Ser	TAA=Ter	TGA=Ter
TTG=Leu	TGC=Ser	TAG=Ter	TGG=Trp
CTT=Leu	CCT=Pro	CAT=His	CGT=Arg
CTC=Leu	CCC=Pro	CAC=His	CGC=Arg
CTA=Leu	CCA=Pro	CAA=Gln	CGA=Arg
CTG=Leu	CGC=Pro	CAG=Gln	CGG=Arg
ATT=Ile	ACT=Thr	AAT=Asn	AGT=Ser
ATC=Ile	ACC=Thr	AAC=Asn	AGC=Ser
ATA=Ile	ACA=Thr	AAA=Lys	AGA=Arg
ATG=Met	AGC=Thr	AAG=Lys	AGG=Arg
GTT=Val	GCT=Ala	GAT=Asp	GGT=Gly
GTC=Val	GCC=Ala	GAC=Asp	GGC=Gly
GTA=Val	GCA=Ala	GAA=Glu	GGA=Gly
GTG=Val	GGC=Ala	GAG=Glu	GGG=Gly

has three-letter words (codons). With four different "letters", A, T, G and C, this gives sixty-four possible codons - more than enough to specify the twenty different amino acids.

In the light of the phage experiments of Brenner and Crick, Nirenberg and Matthaei concluded that the genetic code for phenylalanine is UUU in RNA and TTT in DNA. The remaining words in the genetic code were worked out by H. Gobind Khorana of the University of Wisconsin, who used other mRNA sequences (such as GUGUGU..., AAGAA-GAAG... and GUUGUUGUU...) in protein synthesis. By 1966, the complete genetic code, specifying amino acids in terms of three-base sequences, was known. The code was found to be the same for all species studied, no matter how widely separated they were in form; and this showed that all life on earth belongs to the same family, as postulated by Darwin.

Genetic engineering

In 1970, Hamilton Smith of Johns Hopkins University observed that when the bacterium Haemophilus influenzae is attacked by a bacteriophage (a virus parasitic on bacteria), it can defend itself by breaking down the DNA of the phage. Following up this observation, he introduced DNA from the bacterium E. coli into H. influenzae. Again the foreign DNA was broken down.

Smith had, in fact, discovered the first of a class of bacterial enzymes which came to be called "restriction enzymes" or "restriction nucleases". Almost a hundred other restriction enzymes were subsequently discovered, and each was found to cut DNA at a specific base sequence. Smith's colleague, Daniel Nathans, used the restriction enzymes Hin dll and Hin dill to produce the first "restriction map" of the DNA in a virus.

In 1971 and 1972, Paul Berg, and his co-workers Peter Lobban, Dale Kaiser and David Jackson at Stanford University, developed methods for adding cohesive ends to DNA fragments. Berg and his group used the calf thymus enzyme, terminal transferase, to add short, single-stranded polynucleotide segments to DNA fragments. For example, if they added the single-stranded segment AAAA to one fragment, and TTTT to another, then the two ends joined spontaneously when the fragments were incubated together. In this way Paul Berg and his group made the first recombinant DNA molecules.

The restriction enzyme Eco RI, isolated from the bacterium E. coli, was found to recognize the pattern, GAATTC, in one strand of a DNA molecule, and the complementary pattern, CTTAAG, in the other strand. Instead of cutting both strands in the middle of the six-base sequence, Eco RI was observed to cut both strands between G and A. Thus, each side of the cut was left with a "sticky end" - a five-base single-stranded segment, attached to the remainder of the double-stranded DNA molecule.

In 1972, Janet Mertz and Ron Davis, working at Stanford University, demonstrated that DNA strands cut with Eco RI could be rejoined by means of another enzyme - a DNA ligase. More importantly, when DNA strands from two different sources were cut with Eco RI, the sticky end of one fragment could form a spontaneous temporary bond with the sticky end of the other fragment. The bond could be made permanent by the addition of DNA ligase, even when the fragments came from different sources. Thus, DNA fragments from different organisms could be joined together.

Bacteria belong to a class of organisms (prokaryotes) whose cells do not have a nucleus. Instead, the DNA of the bacterial chromosome is arranged in a large loop. In the early 1950's, Joshua Lederberg had discovered that bacteria can exchange genetic information. He found that a frequently-exchanged gene, the F-factor (which conferred fertility), was not linked to other bacterial genes; and he deduced that the DNA of the F-factor was not physically a part of the main bacterial chromosome. In 1952, Lederberg coined the word "plasmid" to denote any extrachromosomal genetic system. In 1959, it was discovered in Japan that genes for resistance to antibiotics can be exchanged between bacteria; and the name "R-factors" was given to these genes. Like the F-factors, the R-factors did not seem to be part of the main loop of bacterial DNA.

Because of the medical implications of this discovery, much attention was focused on the R-factors. It was found that they are plasmids, small loops of DNA existing inside the bacterial cell but not attached to the bacterial chromosome. Further study showed that, in general, between one percent and three percent of bacterial genetic information is carried by plasmids, which can be exchanged freely even between different species of bacteria.

In the words of the microbiologist, Richard Novick, "Appreciation of the role of plasmids has produced a rather dramatic shift in biologists' thinking about genetics. The traditional view was that the genetic makeup of a species was about the same from one cell to another, and was constant over long periods of time. Now a significant proportion of genetic traits are known to be variable (present in some individual cells or strains, absent in others), labile (subject to frequent loss or gain) and mobile - all because those traits are associated with plasmids or other atypical genetic systems."

In 1973, Herbert Boyer, Stanley Cohen and their co-workers at Stanford University and the University of California carried out experiments in which they inserted foreign DNA segments, cut with Eco RI, into plasmids (also cut with Eco RI). They then resealed the plasmid loops with DNA ligase. Finally, bacteria were infected with the gene-spliced plasmids. The result was a new strain of bacteria, capable of producing an additional protein coded by the foreign DNA segment which had been spliced into the plasmids.

Cohen and Boyer used plasmids containing a gene for resistance to an antibiotic, so that a few gene-spliced bacteria could be selected from a large population by treating the culture with the antibiotic. The selected bacteria, containing both the antibiotic-resistance marker and the foreign DNA, could then be cloned on a large scale; and in this way a foreign gene could be "cloned". The gene-spliced bacteria were chimeras, containing genes from two different species.

The new recombinant DNA techniques of Berg, Cohen and Boyer had revolutionary implications: It became possible to produce many copies of a given DNA segment, so that its base sequence could be determined. With the help of direct DNA-sequencing methods developed by Frederick Sanger and Walter Gilbert, the new cloning techniques could be used for mapping and sequencing genes.

Since new bacterial strains could be created, containing genes from other species, it became possible to produce any protein by cloning the corresponding gene. Proteins of medical importance could be produced on a large scale. Thus, the way was open for the production of human insulin, interferon, serum albumin, clotting factors, vaccines, and protein hormones such as ACTH, human growth factor and leuteinizing hormone.

It also became possible to produce enzymes of industrial and agricultural importance by cloning gene-spliced bacteria. Since enzymes catalyze reactions involving smaller molecules, the production of these substrate molecules through gene-splicing also became possible.

It was soon discovered that the possibility of producing new, transgenic organisms was not limited to bacteria. Gene-splicing was also carried out on higher plants and animals as well as on fungi. It was found that the bacterium Agrobacterium tumefaciens contains a tumor-inducing (Ti) plasmid capable of entering plant cells and producing a crown gall. Genes spliced into the Ti plasmid quite frequently became incorporated in the plant chromosome, and afterwards were inherited in a stable, Mendelian fashion.

Transgenic animals were produced by introducing foreign DNA into embryo-derived stem cells (ES cells). The gene-spliced ES cells were then selected, cultured and introduced into a blastocyst, which afterwards was implanted in a foster-mother. The resulting chimeric animals were bred, and stable transgenic lines selected.

Thus, for the first time, humans had achieved direct control over the process of evolution. Selective breeding to produce new plant and animal varieties was not new - it is one of the oldest techniques of civilization. However, the degree, precision, and speed of intervention which recombinant DNA made possible was entirely new. In the 1970's it became possible to mix the genetic repertoires of different species: The genes of mice and men could be spliced together into new, man-made forms of life!

The Polymerase Chain Reaction

One day in the early 1980's, an American molecular biologist, Kary Mullis, was driving to his mountain cabin with his girl friend. The journey was a long one, and to pass the time, Kary Mullis turned over and over in his mind a problem which had been bothering him: He worked for a California biotechnology firm, and like many other molecular biologists he had been struggling to analyze very small quantities of DNA. Mullis realized that it would be desirable have a highly sensitive way of replicating a given DNA segment - a method much more sensitive than cloning. As he drove through the California mountains, he considered many ways of doing this, rejecting one method after the other as impracticable. Finally a solution came to him; and it seemed so simple that he could hardly believe that he was the first to think of it. He was so excited that he immediately pulled over to the side of the road and woke his sleeping girlfriend to tell her about his idea. Although his girlfriend was not entirely enthusiastic about being wakened from a comfortable sleep to be presented with a lecture on biochemistry, Kary Mullis had in fact invented a technique which was destined to revolutionize DNA technology: the Polymerase Chain Reaction (PCR)[2].

The technique was as follows: Begin with a small sample of the genomic DNA to be analyzed. (The sample may be extremely small - only a few molecules.) Heat the sample to 95 °C to separate the double-stranded DNA molecule into single strands. Suppose that on the long DNA molecule there is a target segment which one wishes to amplify. If the target segment begins with a known sequence of bases on one strand, and ends with a known sequence on the complementary strand, then synthetic "primer" oligonucleotides[3] with these known beginning ending sequences are added in excess. The temperature is then lowered to 50-60 °C, and at the lowered temperature, the "start" primer attaches itself to one DNA strand at the beginning of the target segment, while the "stop" primer becomes attached to the complementary strand at the other end of the target segment. Polymerase (an enzyme which aids the formation of double-stranded DNA) is then added, together with a supply of nucleotides. On each of the original pieces of single-stranded DNA, a new complementary strand is generated with the help of the polymerase. Then the temperature is again raised to 95 °C, so that the double-stranded DNA separates into single strands, and the cycle is repeated.

In the early versions of the PCR technique, the polymerase was destroyed by the high temperature, and new polymerase had to be added for each cycle. However, it was discovered that polymerase from the bacterium Thermus aquaticus would withstand the high temperature. (Thermus aquaticus lives in hot springs.) This discovery greatly simplified the PCR technique. The temperature could merely be cycled between the high and low temperatures, and with each cycle, the population of the target segment doubled, concentrations of primers, deoxynucleotides and polymerase being continuously present.

After a few cycles of the PCR reaction, copies of copies begin to predominate over copies of the original genomic DNA. These copies of copies have a standard length, al-

[2] The flash of insight didn't take long, but at least six months of hard work were needed before Mullis and his colleagues could convert the idea to reality.

[3] Short segments of single-stranded DNA.

ways beginning on one strand with the start primer, and ending on that strand with the complement of the stop primer.

Two main variants of the PCR technique are possible, depending on the length of the oligonucleotide primers: If, for example, trinucleotides are used as start and stop primers, they can be expected to match the genomic DNA at many points. In that case, after a number of PCR cycles, populations of many different segments will develop. Within each population, however, the length of the replicated segment will be standardized because of the predominance of copies of copies. When the resulting solution is placed on a damp piece of paper or a gel and subjected to the effects of an electric current (electrophoresis), the populations of different molecular weights become separated, each population appearing as a band. The bands are profiles of the original genomic DNA; and this variant of the PCR technique can be used in evolutionary studies to determine the degree of similarity of the genomic DNA of two species.

On the other hand, if the oligonucleotide primers contain as many as 20 nucleotides, they will be highly specific and will bind only to a particular target sequence of the genomic DNA. The result of the PCR reaction will then be a single population, containing only the chosen target segment. The PCR reaction can be thought of as autocatalytic, and as we shall see in the next section, autocatylitic systems play an important role in modern theories of the origin of life.

4.2 A monoclonal antibody against COVID-19?

The monoclonal antobody technique of Köhler and Milstein has already been used to produce vaccines against a number of viral diseases. Here are some excerpts from and article by Janice M. Richert, entitled *Trends in the Development and Approval of Monoclonal Antibodies for Viral Infections*[4]:

Abstract

Monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) developed for either the prevention or treatment of viral diseases represent a small, but valuable, class of products. Since 1985, commercial firms have initiated clinical studies involving a total of 28 mAbs. To date, one product (palivizumab) has been approved and eight candidates are currently in clinical study.

Most commercial mAbs studied as antiviral agents in the clinic have either directly or indirectly targeted human immunodeficiency virus, respiratory syncytial virus, or hepatitis C virus infections. However, the ability of mAbs to bind to specific targets and utilize various anti-infective modes of action would seem to make them well suited for the prevention and/or treatment of a wider variety of viral diseases. A number of factors, including the continuing need for

[4] Reichert, J.M. Trends in the Development and Approval of Monoclonal Antibodies for Viral Infections. BioDrugs 21, 1-7 (2007)

innovative medicines for viral infections, the global spread of viral infections, and increased government funding for the study of pathogen countermeasures, have prompted companies to reconsider mAbs as antiviral agents. Public sector research into the use of mAbs against emerging pathogens, such as severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus, may have already provided candidates for further development.

Antibodies are produced by the immune system to combat invading organisms such as viruses. Prior to the development of monoclonal antibodies (mAbs), polyclonal antibody preparations derived from human serum were used for both prophylaxis and the treatment of a number of viral infections.[1] mAbs, which can be designed to function using various modes of action, seem to be well suited to use as antiviral interventions. However, mAbs are inconvenient to administer compared with oral antibiotics and provide protection from infection for much shorter time periods compared with vaccines. mAbs also tend to be more expensive than either antibiotics or vaccines. As a consequence, in the past mAbs have not been the interventions of choice for infectious diseases. In fact, mAbs for infectious diseases have comprised only 13

To inform future efforts in the research and development of these innovative agents, an overview of trends in the commercial development of mAbs for viral infections, with a focus on mAbs for HIV, RSV, and hepatitis C virus (HCV) infections, is provided, and the possibility of increased efforts to develop mAbs for emerging pathogens is discussed.

Discussion

To date, the majority of commercial clinical development of mAbs for viral infections has focused on products that might meet existing medical needs for new therapies and provide sufficient return on investment. Opportunities of this type exist for numerous viral diseases for which (i) current treatment options are not optimal; (ii) no effective vaccines are available; and (iii) markets, at least those in the US and Europe, are defined. Examples of agents that meet such criteria are the mAbs directed against HIV, RSV, and HCV infections. Examination of the commercial preclinical pipeline suggests that similar selection criteria have been applied to the majority of candidates that might enter clinical study in the near future. However, in the case of mAbs targeting SCV, the current low incidence of new infections begs the question of whether the preclinical candidates will progress, although as a defensive public health measure, products for these infections should be available.

The current dearth of commercial research and development of mAbs for emerging pathogens might be ameliorated somewhat by:

1. an increased level of government funding available for the development of

bioterrorism countermeasures;

2. an emphasis on priority pathogens by the US National Institutes of Health (NIH);

3. the FDA's easing of efficacy requirements in cases where human studies would not be ethical or feasible.

While these factors might indeed bolster the somewhat anemic efforts of industry, the public sector appears to have already responded to the challenge in a more vigorous way. Numerous mAbs for emerging viral diseases are in early research and preclinical stages at academic and government institutions.[38,39] Work has focused on priority pathogens such as Hanta and Ebola viruses that are easily disseminated or transmitted person-to-person, and on emerging pathogens such as Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever virus, rabies, and SCV. Importantly, the emphasis has been on development of human mAbs, which, along with humanized products, comprise most of the commercial mAbs now in clinical study.

Ties between the public and private sectors are notoriously intricate.[40] In fact, the preclinical mAbs for SCV and West Nile virus infections attributed here to the commercial sector were all developed with at least some input from the public sector. However, it remains to be seen whether mAbs for infections that occur at high levels only sporadically, or those that would be likely to provide poor return on investment, will be commercialized. MAbs could potentially be critical as a first response measure in the case of a public health crisis, but substantial public sector input might be required to get such products to the market. The NIH's current emphasis on translational medicine might ease the progress of less commercially attractive products through the process of preclinical and clinical development.

Despite obstacles to the development of innovative mAbs for the prophylaxis or treatment of viral diseases, there is reason for cautious optimism. Scientific advances have uncovered potential new viral targets and mAb modes of action. New possibilities exist for designing safer and more efficacious mAbs. An example of the success potentially achievable with improved design can be found in the case of the mAbs for RSV - felvizumab did not prove efficacious, palivizumab was sufficiently efficacious to be approved, motavizumab shows some improved efficacy compared with palivizumab, and even more potent anti-RSV mAbs can be designed.In addition, increased emphasis from both the public and private sectors on the study of mAbs as viral countermeasures might serve the immediate purpose of providing mAbs useful as either preventative measures or as treatments, but might also provide information potentially useful in the development of vaccines. In either case, the results could greatly benefit public health.

4.3 Mass-production of a COVID-19 antibody

Now suppose that a clone of lymphocytes producing antibodies against the COVID-19 virus has been established. The thechniques of genetic engineering described above could then be used to mass-produce the antibody, which could then be used very widely to treat COVID-19 patients. The specific nucleotide sequence respondible for producing the antibody could be isolated, and then spliced into the plasmid of an easily-cultivated bacteria, or other organism. In this way, large cultures of the bacteria can be made to produce the urgently-needed antibody treatment.

It has already been suggested that since plasma from the blood of recovered COVID-19 patients contains antibodies against the virus, it could be used to treat patients who are seriously ill with the disease. The method outlined here offers an alternative.

Chapter 5

RECOVERY OFFERS CLIMATE ACTION OPPORTUNITIES

5.1 The UK declares a climate emergency

Introducing the motion in the House of Commons, Labour leader Jeremy Corbyn said: **"We have no time to waste. We are living in a climate crisis that will spiral dangerously out of control unless we take rapid and dramatic action now. This is no longer about a distant future. We're talking about nothing less than the irreversible destruction of the environment within our lifetimes of members of this house."**

Here are some excerpts from an article by Amy Goodman and Nermeen Shaikh of Democracy now published in Truthout on May 2, 2019.[1]:

On Wednesday, the House of Commons became the first parliament in the world to declare a climate emergency. The resolution came on the heels of the recent Extinction Rebellion mass uprising that shut down Central London last month in a series of direct actions. Activists closed bridges, occupied public landmarks and even superglued themselves to buildings, sidewalks and trains to demand urgent action to combat climate change. Police arrested more than 1,000 protesters. Labour Party Leader Jeremy Corbyn told Parliament, "We are witnessing an unprecedented upsurge of climate activism, with groups like Extinction Rebellion forcing the politicians in this building to listen. For all the dismissive and defensive column inches the processes have provoked, they are a massive and, I believe, very necessary wake-up call. Today we have the opportunity to say, 'We hear you.'" We speak with George Monbiot, British journalist, author and columnist with The Guardian. His recent piece for The Guardian is headlined "Only rebellion will prevent an ecological apocalypse." Monbiot says capitalism "is like a gun pointed at the heart of the planet.

[1] https://truthout.org/video/george-monbiot-on-the-uk-climate-emergency/

It will essentially, necessarily destroy our life-support systems. Among those characteristics is the drive for perpetual economic growth on a finite planet."

5.2 The 2018 IPCC report

Excerpts from an article summarizing the report

Here are excerpts from an article entitled **UN Experts Warn of 'Climate Catastrophe' by 2040** by Jesica Corbett. The article was published in Common Dreams on Monday, October 8, 2018.[2]:

"The climate crisis is here and already impacting the most vulnerable," notes 350.org's program director. "Staying under 1.5^{o}C is now a matter of political will."

Underscoring the need for "rapid, far-reaching, and unprecedented" changes to life as we know it to combat the global climate crisis, a new report from the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) - the United Nations' leading body for climate science - details what the world could look like if the global temperature rises to 1.5^{o}C versus 2^{o}C (2.7^{o}F versus 3.6^{o}F) above pre-industrial levels, and outlines pathways to reducing greenhouse gas emissions in the context of sustainable development and efforts to eradicate poverty.

[2]https://www.commondreams.org/news/2018/10/08/un-experts-warn-climate-catastrophe-2040-without-rapid-and-unprecedented-global

"Climate change represents an urgent and potentially irreversible threat to human societies and the planet," the report reads. "Human-induced warming has already reached about 1^{o}C (1.8^{o}F) above pre-industrial levels at the time of writing of this Special Report... If the current warming rate continues, the world would reach human-induced global warming of 1.5^{o}C around 2040."

Approved by the IPCC in South Korea on Saturday ahead of COP24 in Poland in December, Global Warming of 1.5^{o}C was produced by 91 authors and reviewers from 40 countries. Its release has elicited calls to action from climate campaigners and policymakers the world over.

"This is a climate emergency. The IPCC 1.5 report starkly illustrates the difference between temperature rises of 1.5^{o}C and 2^{o}C - for many around the world this is a matter of life and death," declared Karin Nansen, chair of Friends of the Earth International (FOEI). "It is crucial to keep temperature rise well below 1.5 degrees ... but the evidence presented by the IPCC shows that there is a narrow and shrinking window in which to do so."

The report was requested when the international community came together in December of 2015 for the Paris agreement, which aims to keep global warming within this century "well below" 2^{o}C, with an ultimate target of 1.5^{o}C. President Donald Trump's predecessor supported the accord, but Trump has vowed to withdraw the United States, even as every other nation on the planet has pledged their support for it. In many cases, however, sworn support hasn't led to effective policy.

"It's a fresh reminder, if one was needed, that current emissions reduction pledges are not enough to meet the long-term goals of the Paris agreement. Indeed, they are not enough for any appropriately ambitious temperature target, given what we know about dangerous climate impacts already unfolding even at lower temperature thresholds," Rachel Cleetus, lead economist and climate policy manager for the Union of Concerned Scientists (UCS), wrote ahead of its release.

"The policy implications of the report are obvious: We need to implement a suite of policies to sharply limit carbon emissions and build climate resilience, and we must do all this is in a way that prioritizes equitable outcomes particularly for the world's poor and marginalized communities," Cleetus added.

"We want a just transition to a clean energy system that benefits people not corporations," Nansen emphasized. "Only with a radical transformation of our energy, food and economic systems, embracing environmental, social, gender and economic justice, can we prevent climate catastrophe and temperature rises exceeding 1.5^{o}C."

Today we are faced with multiple interrelated crises, for example the threat of catastrophic climate change or equally catastrophic thermonuclear war, and the threat of widespread famine. These threats to human existence and to the biosphere demand a prompt and rational response; but because of institutional and cultural inertia, we are failing to take the steps that are necessary to avoid disaster.

5.3 Greta Thunberg

Only immediate climate action can save the future

Immediate action to halt the extraction of fossil fuels and greatly reduce the emission of CO_2 and other greenhouse gasses is needed to save the long-term future of human civilization and the biosphere.

At the opening ceremony of United Nations-sponsored climate talks in Katowice, Poland, Sir David Attenborough said “Right now, we are facing a man-made disaster of global scale. Our greatest threat in thousands of years. Climate change. If we don’t take action, the collapse of our civilizations and the extinction of much of the natural world is on the horizon. The world’s people have spoken. Their message is clear. Time is running out. They want you, the decision-makers, to act now.”

Antonio Guterres, UN Secretary-General, said climate change was already “a matter of life and death” for many countries. He added that the world is “nowhere near where it needs to be” on the transition to a low-carbon economy.

Swedish student Greta Thunberg, is a 16-year-old who has launched a climate protest movement in her country. She said, in a short but very clear speech after that of UN leader Antonio Guterres: “Some people say that I should be in school instead. Some people say that I should study to become a climate scientist so that I can ‘solve the climate crisis’. But the climate crisis has already been solved. We already have all the facts and solutions.”

She added: “Why should I be studying for a future that soon may be no more, when no one is doing anything to save that future? And what is the point of learning facts when the most important facts clearly mean nothing to our society?”

Thunberg continued: “Today we use 100 million barrels of oil every single day. There are no politics to change that. There are no rules to keep that oil in the ground. So we can’t save the world by playing by the rules. Because the rules have to be changed.”

She concluded by saying that “since our leaders are behaving like children, we will have to take the responsibility they should have taken long ago.”

Appearing among billionaires, corporate CEO’s and heads of state at the Davos Economic Forum in Switzerland, like a new Joan of Arc, 16-year-old Swedish climate activist Greta Thunberg called on decision-makers to fulfil their responsibilities towards future generations. Here are some excerpts from her speech:

Greta’s speech at Davos

Our house is on fire. I am here to say, our house is on fire. According to the IPCC, we are less than 12 years away from not being able to undo our mistakes. In that time, unprecedented changes in all aspects of society need to have taken place, including a reduction of our CO_2 emissions by at least 50%...

Here in Davos - just like everywhere else - everyone is talking about money. It seems money and growth are our only main concerns.

And since the climate crisis has never once been treated as a crisis, people are simply not aware of the full consequences on our everyday life. People are not aware that there is such a thing as a carbon budget, and just how incredibly small that remaining carbon budget is. That needs to change today.

No other current challenge can match the importance of establishing a wide, public awareness and understanding of our rapidly disappearing carbon budget, that should and must become our new global currency and the very heart of our future and present economics.

We are at a time in history where everyone with any insight of the climate crisis that threatens our civilization - and the entire biosphere - must speak out in clear language, no matter how uncomfortable and unprofitable that may be.

We must change almost everything in our current societies. The bigger your carbon footprint, the bigger your moral duty. The bigger your platform, the bigger your responsibility.

Figure 5.1: **Greta Thunberg on the cover of Time Magazine, The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, in their October 2018 report, used strong enough language to wake up at least part of the public: the children whose future is at stake. Here is an excerpt from a speech which 16-year-old Swedish climate activist Greta Thunberg made at the Davos Economic Forum in January, 2019: "Our house is on fire. I am here to say, our house is on fire. According to the IPCC, we are less than 12 years away from not being able to undo our mistakes. In that time, unprecedented changes in all aspects of society need to have taken place, including a reduction of our CO2 emissions by at least 50%..."**

5.4 Worldwide school strike, 15 March, 2019

Over 1.4 million young students across all continents took to the streets on Friday March 15th for the first ever global climate strike. Messages in more than 40 languages were loud and clear: world leaders must act now to address the climate crisis and save our future. The school strike was the largest climate action in history. Nevertheless it went almost unmentioned in the media,

Here are some of the statements by the students explaining why they took part in the strikes:

In India, no one talks about climate change. You don't see it on the news or in the papers or hear about it from government. We want global leaders to declare a climate emergency. If we don't act today, then we will have no tomorrow. - Vidit Baya, 17, Udaipur, India.

We face heartbreaking loss due to increasingly extreme weather events. We urge the Taiwanese government to implement mitigation measures and face up to the vulnerability of indigenous people, halt construction projects in the indigenous traditional realm, and recognize the legal status of Plains Indigenous People, in order to implement environmental protection as a bottom-up approach - Kaisanan Ahuan, Puli City, Taiwan.

We have reached a point in history when we have the technical capacities to solve poverty, malnutrition, inequality and of course global warming. The deciding factors for whether we take advantage of our potential will be our activism, our international unity and our ability to develop the art of making the impossible possible. Whether we succeed or not depends on our political will - Eyal Weintraub, 18, and Bruno Rodriguez, 18, Argentina.

The damage done by multinationals is enormous: the lack of transparency, dubious contracts, the weakening of the soil, the destruction of flora and fauna, the lack of respect for mining codes, the contamination of groundwater. In Mali, the state exercises insufficient control over the practices of the multinationals, and it is us, the citizens, who suffer the consequences. The climate alarm has sounded, and the time has come for us all to realize that there is still time to act locally, in our homes, our villages, our cities - Mone Fousseny, 22, Mali.

5.5 Solar energy

Before the start of the industrial era, human society relied exclusively on renewable energy sources - but can we do so again, with our greatly increased population and greatly increased demands? Will we ultimately be forced to reduce the global population or our per capita use of energy, or both? Let us now try to examine these questions.

Biomass, wind energy, hydropower and wave power derive their energy indirectly from the sun, but in addition, various methods are available for utilizing the power of sunlight directly. These include photovoltaic panels, solar designs in architecture, solar systems for heating water and cooking, concentrating photovoltaic systems, and solar thermal power plants.

Photovoltaic cells and concentrating photovoltaic systems

Solar power was the fastest-growing source of new energy in 2016, surpassing the net growth of all other energy sources including coal, according to a new report from the International Energy Agency (IEA).

The IEA report found new solar capacity increased by 50 percent in 2016, and IEA executive director Fatih Birol hailed solar's rapid growth. "What we are witnessing is the birth of a new era in solar photovoltaics [PV]. We expect that solar PV capacity growth will be higher than any other renewable technology up to 2022."[3]

The report also shows renewables as a whole accounted for two-thirds of all new energy capacity in 2016. "We see renewables growing by about 1,000 GW (gigawatts) by 2022, which equals about half of the current global capacity in coal power, which took 80 years to build," Birol said in a statement accompanying the report.[4]

Solar photovoltaic cells[5] are thin coated wafers of a semiconducting material (usually silicon). The coatings on the two sides are respectively charge donors and charge acceptors. Cells of this type are capable of trapping solar energy and converting it into direct-current electricity. The electricity generated in this way can be used directly (as it is, for example, in pocket calculators) or it can be fed into a general power grid. Alternatively it can be used to split water into hydrogen and oxygen. The gases can then be compressed and stored, or exported for later use in fuel cells. In the future, we may see solar photovoltaic arrays in sun-rich desert areas producing hydrogen as an export product. As their petroleum reserves become exhausted, the countries of the Middle East and Africa may be able to shift to this new technology and still remain energy exporters.

It is interesting to notice that the primary process of photosynthesis in plants is closely similar to the mechanism by which solar cells separate charges and prevent the back-reaction. We can see why a back-reaction must be prevented if we consider the excitation of a single atom. An absorbed photon lifts an electron from a filled atomic orbital to an empty one, leaving a positively-charged hole in the orbital from which the electron came. However, a back-reaction occurs almost immediately: The excited electron falls back into

[3] https://www.theguardian.com/environment/2017/oct/04/solar-power-renewables-international-energy-agency

[4] https://www.iea.org/newsroom/news/2017/october/solar-pv-grew-faster-than-any-other-fuel-in-2016-opening-a-new-era-for-solar-pow.html

[5] https://www.iea.org/renewables/

the orbital from which it came, and the absorbed energy is re-emitted. One can say that the electron and hole have recombined.

In higher plants, the back reaction is prevented because the photon is absorbed in a membrane which has a sandwich-like structure. Dye molecules (usually chlorophyll molecules) are sandwiched between a layer of charge donor molecules on one side of the membrane, and a layer of charge acceptor molecule on the other side. The electron quickly migrates to the acceptors, which are molecules with low-lying unfilled orbitals. Meanwhile the hole has quickly moved to the opposite side of the membrane. where it combines with an electron from a donor molecule. A donor molecule is a molecule whose highest filled orbital is high in energy. In this process, the back.reaction is prevented. The electron and hole are on opposite sides of the membrane, and they can only recombine after they have driven the metabolism of the plant.

In a photovoltaic solar cell, the mechanism by which the back-reaction is prevented is exactly similar. It too has a sandwich-like structure, with charge donors on one side, charge-acceptors on the other, and photon absorbers in the middle. Here too, the electron and hole quickly migrate to opposite sides. They can only recombine by traveling through the external circuit, which is analogous to a plant's metabolism, and performing useful work.

The cost of manufacturing photovoltaics continues to fall rapidly. In 2017, a homeowner paid approximately \$3,360 per kilowatt to have rooftop solar panels installed Usually photovoltaic panels are warranted for a life of 20 years, but they are commonly still operational after 30 years or more. Using the fact that there are 8760 hours in a year, and thus 175200 hours in 20 years, we can calculate that the cost of electricity to a solar-using homeowner today is about 1.92 cents per kilowatt hour. This can be compared with electricity generated from coal, which in 2011 cost 3.23 cents per kilowatt hour, while electricity generated from natural gas cost 4.51 cents per kilowatt hour. We must also remember that photovoltaics are falling rapidly in price, and that the fossil fuel costs do not include externalities, such as their contribution to climate change.

Concentrating photovoltaic systems are able to lower costs still further by combining silicon solar cells with reflectors that concentrate the sun's rays. The most inexpensive type of concentrating reflector consists of a flat piece of aluminum-covered plastic material bent into a curved shape along one of its dimensions, forming a trough-shaped surface. (Something like this shape results when we hold a piece of paper at the top and bottom with our two hands, allowing the center to sag.) The axis of the reflector can be oriented so that it points towards the North Star. A photovoltaic array placed along the focal line will then receive concentrated sunlight throughout the day.

Photovoltaic efficiency is defined as the ratio of the electrical power produced by a cell to the solar power striking its surface. For commercially available cells today, this ratio is between 9% and 14%. If we assume 5 hours of bright sunlight per day, this means that a photo cell in a desert area near to the equator (where 1 kW/m^2 of peak solar power reaches the earth's surface) can produce electrical energy at the average rate of 20-30 W_e/m^2, the average being taken over an entire day and night. The potential power per unit area for photovoltaic systems is far greater than for biomass. However, the mix of renewable energy sources most suitable for a particular country depends on many factors. We will see below that biomass is a promising future source of energy for Sweden, because of Sweden's low population density and high rainfall. By contrast, despite the high initial investment required, photovoltaics are undoubtedly a more promising future energy source for southerly countries with clear skies.

In comparing photovoltaics with biomass, we should be aware of the difference between electrical energy and energy contained in a the chemical bonds of a primary fuel such as wood or rapeseed oil. If Sweden (for example) were to supply all its energy needs from biomass, part of the biomass would have to be burned to generate electricity. The efficiency of energy conversion in electricity generation from fuel is 20%-35%. Of course, in dual use power plants, part of the left-over heat from electrical power generation can be used to heat homes or greenhouses. However, hydropower, wind power and photovoltaics have an advantage in generating electrical power, since they do so directly and without loss, whereas generation of electricity from biomass involves a loss from the inefficiency of the conversion from fuel energy to electrical energy. Thus a rational renewable energy program for Sweden should involve a mixture of biomass for heating and direct fuel use, with hydropower and wind power for generation of electricity. Perhaps photovoltaics will also play a role in Sweden's future electricity generation, despite the country's northerly location and frequently cloudy skies.

The global market for photovoltaics is expanding at the rate of 30% per year. This development is driven by rising energy prices, subsidies to photovoltaics by governments, and the realization of the risks associated with global warming and consequent international commitments to reduce carbon emissions. The rapidly expanding markets have resulted in lowered photovoltaic production costs, and hence further expansion, still lower costs, etc. - a virtuous feedback loop.

Solar thermal power plants

Solar Parabolic Troughs can be used to heat a fluid, typically oil, in a pipe running along the focal axis. The heated fluid can then be used to generate electrical power. The liquid that is heated in this way need not be oil. In a solar thermal power plant in California, reflectors move in a manner that follows the sun's position and they concentrate solar energy onto a tower, where molten salt is heated to a temperature of 1050 degrees F (566 ^{o}C). The molten salt stores the heat, so that electricity can be generated even when the sun is not shining. The California plant generates 10 MW_e.

Solar designs in architecture

At present, the average global rate of use of primary energy is roughly 2 kW_t per person. In North America, the rate is 12 kW_t per capita, while in Europe, the figure is 6 kW_t. In Bangladesh, it is only 0.2 kW_t. This wide variation implies that considerable energy savings are possible, through changes in lifestyle, and through energy efficiency.

Figure 5.2: **A rooftop array of photovoltaic cells.**

Figure 5.3: **A solar thermal power plant. Arrays of heliostatic reflectors concentrate the sun's rays onto molten salt in the tower. The plant produces electricity at night because the salt remains hot..**

Figure 5.4: **A solar cooker.**

Figure 5.5: **A rooftop solar thermal array for domestic water heating.**

Important energy savings can be achieved through solar design in architecture. For example, insulation can be improved in walls, and insulating shutters can be closed at night.

In double envelope construction, a weatherproof shell surrounds the inner house. Between the outer shell and the house, sun-heated air circulates. A less extreme example of this principle is the construction of south-facing conservatories. The sun-heated air in the conservatories acts as a thermal buffer, and reduces heat loss from the house.

Solar design aims at making houses cool in the summer and warm in the winter. Awnings can be spread out in the summer to shade windows, and rolled together in the winter to allow sunshine to enter the house. Alternatively, deciduous trees can be planted in front of south-facing windows. During the summer, the leaves of the trees shade the windows, while in the winter, the leaves fall, allowing the sun to enter.

During daylight hours, houses can be illuminated by fiber optic light pipes, connected to a parabolic collector on the roof. The roof can also contain arrays of solar photovoltaic cells and solar water heaters.

Houses can be heated in the winter by heat pumps connected to a deeply buried network of pipes. Heat pumps function in much the same way as refrigerators or air conditioners. When they are used to warm houses in the winter, a volatile liquid such as ammonia is evaporated underground, where the temperature is relatively constant, not changing much between summer and winter. In the evaporation process, heat is absorbed from the ground. The gas is then compressed and re-liquefied within the house, and in this process, it releases the heat that was absorbed underground. Electricity is of course required to drive a heat pump, but far less electrical power is needed to do this than would be required to heat the house directly.

In general, solar design of houses and other buildings requires an initial investment, but over time, the investment is amply repaid through energy savings.

Solar systems for heating water and cooking

Solar heat collectors are are already in common use to supply hot water for families or to heat swimming pools. A common form of the solar heat collector consists of a flat, blackened heat-collecting plate to which tubes containing the fluid to be heated are connected. The plate is insulated from the atmosphere by a layer of air (in some cases a partial vacuum) above which there is a sheet of glass. Water flowing through the tubes is collected in a tank whenever it is hotter than the water already there. In cases where there is a danger of freezing, the heated fluid may contain antifreeze, and it may then exchange heat with water in the collection tank. Systems of this kind can function even in climates as unfavorable as that of Northern Europe, although during winter months they must be supplemented by conventional water-heaters.

In the developing countries, wood is often used for cooking, and the result is sometimes deforestation, soil erosion and desertification. In order to supply an alternative, many designs for solar cooking have been developed. Often the designs are very simple, and many are both easy and inexpensive to build, the starting materials being aluminum foil and cardboard boxes.

5.6 Wind energy

Wind parks in favorable locations, using modern wind turbines, are able to generate 10 MW_e/km^2 or 10 W_e/m^2. Often wind farms are placed in offshore locations. When they are on land, the area between the turbines can be utilized for other purposes, for example for pasturage. For a country like Denmark, with good wind potential but cloudy skies, wind turbines can be expected to play a more important future role than photovoltaics. Denmark is already a world leader both in manufacturing and in using wind turbines. Today, on windy days, 100% of all electricity used in Denmark is generated by wind power, and the export of wind turbines makes a major contribution to the Danish economy. The use of wind power is currently growing at the rate of 38% per year. In the United States, it is the fastest-growing form of electricity generation.

The location of wind parks is important, since the energy obtainable from wind is proportional to the cube of the wind velocity. We can understand this cubic relationship by remembering that the kinetic energy of a moving object is proportional to the square of its velocity multiplied by the mass. Since the mass of air moving past a wind turbine is proportional to the wind velocity, the result is the cubic relationship just mentioned.

Before the decision is made to locate a wind park in a particular place, the wind velocity is usually carefully measured and recorded over an entire year. For locations on land, mountain passes are often very favorable locations, since wind velocities increase with altitude, and since the wind is concentrated in the passes by the mountain barrier. Other favorable locations include shorelines and offshore locations on sand bars. This is because onshore winds result when warm air rising from land heated by the sun is replaced by cool marine air. Depending on the season, the situation may be reversed at night, and an offshore wind may be produced if the water is warmer than the land.

The cost of wind-generated electrical power is currently lower than the cost of electricity generated by burning fossil fuels.

The "energy payback ratio" of a power installation is defined as the ratio of the energy produced by the installation over its lifetime, divided by the energy required to manufacture, construct, operate and decommission the installation. For wind turbines, this ratio is 17-39, compared with 11 for coal-burning plants. The construction energy of a wind turbine is usually paid back within three months.

Besides the propeller-like design for wind turbines there are also designs where the rotors turn about a vertical shaft. One such design was patented in 1927 by the French aeronautical engineer Georges Jean Marie Darrieus. The blades of a Darrieus wind turbine are airfoils similar to the wings of an aircraft. As the rotor turns in the wind, the stream of air striking the airfoils produces a force similar to the "lift" of an airplane wing. This force pushes the rotor in the direction that it is already moving. The Darrieus design has some advantages over conventional wind turbine design, since the generator can be placed

Figure 5.6: **Rows of wind turbines.**

Figure 5.7: **Vertical axis wind turbines.**

Figure 5.8: **Wind turbines on the Danish island of Samsø The island was the first in the world to achieve 100% renewable energy.**

at the bottom of the vertical shaft, where it may be more easily serviced. Furthermore, the vertical shaft can be lighter than the shaft needed to support a conventional wind turbine.

One problem with wind power is that it comes intermittently, and demand for electrical power does not necessarily come at times when the wind is blowing most strongly. To deal with the problem of intermittency, wind power can be combined with other electrical power sources in a grid. Alternatively, the energy generated can be stored, for example by pumped hydroelectric storage or by using hydrogen technology, as will be discussed below.

Bird lovers complain that birds are sometimes killed by rotor blades. This is true, but the number killed is small. For example, in the United States, about 70,000 birds per year are killed by turbines, but this must be compared with 57 million birds killed by automobiles and 97.5 million killed by collisions with plate glass.

The aesthetic aspects of wind turbines also come into the debate. Perhaps in the future, as wind power becomes more and more a necessity and less a matter of choice, this will be seen as a "luxury argument".

A Danish island reaches 100% renewable energy

The Danish island of Samsø is only 112 square kilometers in size, and its population numbers only 4,300. Nevertheless, it has a unique distinction. Samsø was the first closed land area to declare its intention of relying entirely on renewable energy, and it has now achieved this aim, provided that one stretches the definitions slightly.

In 1997, the Danish Ministry of Environment and Energy decided to sponsor a renewable-energy contest. In order to enter, communities had to submit plans for how they could make a transition from fossil fuels to renewable energy. An engineer (who didn't live there) thought he knew how Samsø could do this, and together with the island's mayor he submitted a plan which won the contest. As a result, the islanders became interested in renewable energy. They switched from furnaces to heat pumps, and formed cooperatives for the construction of windmill parks in the sea near to the island. By 2005, Samsø was producing, from renewable sources, more energy than it was using. The islanders still had gasoline-driven automobiles, but they exported from their windmill parks an amount of electrical energy that balanced the fossil fuel energy that they imported. This is a story that can give us hope for the future, although a farming community like Samsø cannot serve as a model for the world.

5.7 Hydroelectric power

In 2015, hydroelectric power supplied 16.6% of all electrical power, and 70% of the electrical power generated from renewable energy. In the developed countries, the potential for increasing this percentage is small, because most of the suitable sites for dams are already in use. Mountainous regions of course have the greatest potential for hydroelectric power, and this correlates well with the fact that virtually all of the electricity generated in Norway comes from hydro, while in Iceland and Austria the figures are respectively 83% and 67%. Among the large hydroelectric power stations now in use are the La Grande complex in Canada (16 GW_e) and the Itapú station on the border between Brazil and Paraguay (14 GW_e). The Three Gorges Dam in China produces 18.2 GW_e.

Even in regions where the percentage of hydro in electricity generation is not so high, it plays an important role because hydropower can be used selectively at moments of peak demand. Pumping of water into reservoirs can also be used to store energy.

The creation of lakes behind new dams in developing countries often involves problems, for example relocation of people living on land that will be covered by water, and loss of the land for other purposes[6]. However the energy gain per unit area of lake can be very large - over 100 W_e/m^2. Fish ladders can be used to enable fish to reach their spawning grounds above dams. In addition to generating electrical power, dams often play useful roles in flood control and irrigation.

At present, hydroelectric power is used in energy-intensive industrial processes, such as the production of aluminum. However, as the global energy crisis becomes more severe, we can expect that metals derived from electrolysis, such as aluminum and magnesium, will be very largely replaced by other materials, because the world will no longer be able to afford the energy needed to produce them.

[6]Over a million people were displaced by the construction of the Three Gorges Dam in China, and many sites of cultural value were lost

Table 5.1: Technical potential and utilization of hydropower. (Data from World Energy Council, 2003.)

Region	Technical potential	Annual output	Percent used
Asia	0.5814 TW_e	0.0653 TW_e	11%
S. America	0.3187 TW_e	0.0579 TW_e	18%
Europe	0.3089 TW_e	0.0832 TW_e	27%
Africa	0.2155 TW_e	0.0091 TW_e	4%
N. America	0.1904 TW_e	0.0759 TW_e	40%
Oceania	0.0265 TW_e	0.0046 TW_e	17%
World	1.6414 TW_e	0.2960 TW_e	18%

Figure 5.9: **Hydroelectric power does not suffer from the problem of intermittency, but may sometimes produce undesirable social and ecological impacts.**

5.8 Energy from the ocean

Tidal power

The twice-daily flow of the tides can be harnessed to produce electrical power. Ultimately tidal energy comes from the rotation of the earth and its interaction with the moon's gravitational field. The earth's rotation is very gradually slowing because of tidal friction, and the moon is gradually receding from the earth, but this process will take such an extremely long time that tidal energy can be thought of as renewable.

There are two basic methods for harnessing tidal power. One can build barriers that create level differences between two bodies of water, and derive hydroelectric power from the head of water thus created. Alternatively it is possible to place the blades of turbines in a tidal stream. The blades are then turned by the tidal current in much the same way that the blades of a wind turbine are turned by currents of air.

There are plans for using the second method on an extremely large scale in Cook Strait, near New Zealand. A company founded by David Beach and Chris Bathurst plans to anchor 7,000 turbines to the sea floor of Cook Strait in such a way that they will float 40 meters below the surface. Beach and Bathurst say that in this position, the turbines will be safe from the effects of earthquakes and storms. The tidal flow through Cook Strait is so great that the scheme could supply all of New Zealand's electricity if the project is completed on the scale visualized by its founders.

Choosing the proper location for tidal power stations is important, since the height of tides depends on the configuration of the land. For example, tides of 17 meters occur in the Bay of Fundy, at the upper end of the Gulf of Maine, between New Brunswick and Nova

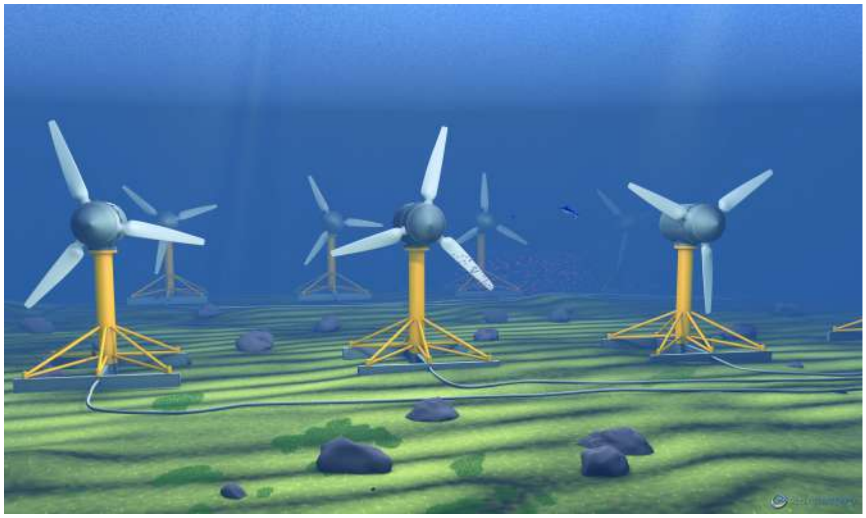


Figure 5.10: **Underwater turbines can make use of the energy of ocean currents.**

Scotia. Here tidal waves are funneled into the bay, creating a resonance that results in the world's greatest level difference between high an low tides. An 18 MW_e dam-type tidal power generation station already exists at Annapolis River, Nova Scotia, and there are proposals to increase the use of tidal power in the Bay of Fundy. Some proposals involve turbines in the tidal stream, similar to those proposed for use in the Cook Strait.

In the future, favorable locations for tidal power may be exploited to their full potentialities, even thought the output of electrical energy exceeds local needs. The excess energy can be stored in the form of hydrogen (see below) and exported to regions deficient in renewable energy resources.

Wave energy

At present, the utilization of wave energy is in an experimental stage. In Portugal, there are plans for a wave farm using the Pelamis Wave Energy Converter. The Pelamis is a long floating tube with two or more rigid sections joined by hinges. The tube is tethered with its axis in the direction of wave propagation. The bending between sections resulting from passing waves is utilized to drive high pressure oil through hydraulic motors coupled to electrical generators. Each wave farm in the Portuguese project is planned to use three Pelamis converters, each capable of producing 750 kW_e. Thus the total output of each wave farm will be 2.25 MW_e.

Another experimental wave energy converter is Salter's Duck, invented in the 1970's by Prof. Stephen Salter of the University of Edinburgh, but still being developed and improved. Like the Pelamis, the Duck is also cylindrical in shape, but the axis of the cylinder is parallel to the wave front, i.e. perpendicular to the direction of wave motion. A floating cam, attached to the cylinder, rises and falls as a wave passes, driving hydraulic motors within the cylinder. Salter's Duck is capable of using as much as 65% of the wave's

Figure 5.11: **The Pelamis wave energy transformer floats on the ocean like a giant sea snake. It consists of several segments which move against each other and build up hydraulic pressure. This in turn drives a turbine. A new Pelamis generation is currently under construction.**

energy.

The energy potentially available from waves is very large, amounting to as much as 100 kilowatts per meter of wave front in the best locations.

Ocean thermal energy conversion

In tropical regions, the temperature of water at the ocean floor is much colder than water at the surface. In ocean thermal energy conversion, cold water is brought to the surface from depths as great as 1 km, and a heat engine is run between deep sea water at a very low temperature and surface water at a much higher temperature.

According to thermodynamics, the maximum efficiency of a heat engine operating between a cold reservoir at the absolute temperature T_C and a hot reservoir at the absolute temperature T_H is given by 1-T_C/T_H. In order to convert temperature on the centigrade scale to absolute temperature (degrees Kelvin) one must add 273 degrees. Thus the maximum efficiency of a heat engine operating between water at the temperature of 25 ^{o}C and water at 5 ^{o}C is 1-(5+273)/(25+273)=0.067 = 6.7%. The efficiency of heat engines is always less than the theoretical maximum because of various losses, such as the loss due to friction. The actual overall efficiencies of existing ocean thermal energy conversion (OTEC) stations are typically 1-3%. On the other hand, the amount of energy potentially available from differences between surface and bottom ocean temperatures is extremely large.

Since 1974, OTEC research has been conducted by the United States at the Natural

Energy Laboratory of Hawaii. The Japanese government also supports OTEC research, and India has established a 1 MW_e OTEC power station floating in the ocean near to Tamil Nadu.

Renewable energy from evaporation

A September 26, 2017 article by Ahmet-Hamdi Cavusoglu et al. in *Nature Communications* points to evaporation as a future source of renewable energy. Here are some excerpts from the article:

"About 50% of the solar energy absorbed at the Earth's surface drives evaporation, fueling the water cycle that affects various renewable energy resources, such as wind and hydropower. Recent advances demonstrate our nascent ability to convert evaporation energy into work, yet there is little understanding about the potential of this resource.

"Here we study the energy available from natural evaporation to predict the potential of this ubiquitous resource. We find that natural evaporation from open water surfaces could provide power densities comparable to current wind and solar technologies while cutting evaporative water losses by nearly half. We estimate up to 325 GW of power is potentially available in the United States. Strikingly, water's large heat capacity is sufficient to control power output by storing excess energy when demand is low, thus reducing intermittency and improving reliability. Our findings motivate the improvement of materials and devices that convert energy from evaporation...

"Recent advances in water responsive materials and devices demonstrate the ability to convert energy from evaporation into work. These materials perform work through a cycle of absorbing and rejecting water via evaporation. These water-responsive materials can be incorporated into evaporation-driven engines that harness energy when placed above a body of evaporating water. With improvements in energy conversion efficiency, such devices could become an avenue to harvest energy via natural evaporation from water reservoirs."

Ozgur Sahin, a biophysicist at Columbia, has developed technology that uses spores from the harmless soil-dwelling bacterium *B. subtilis* to absorb and release water when the relative humidity of the surrounding air changes. At high humidity, the spores take in water and expand, and at low humidity they release water and contract, acting like a muscle.

5.9 Biomass

Biomass is defined as any energy source based on biological materials produced by photosynthesis - for example wood, sugar beets, rapeseed oil, crop wastes, dung, urban organic wastes, processed sewage, etc. Using biomass for energy does not result in the net emission of CO_2, since the CO_2 released by burning the material had previously been absorbed from the atmosphere during photosynthesis. If the biological material had decayed instead of being burned, it would released the same amount of CO_2 as in the burning process.

Figure 5.12: **Rapeseed is grown in several countries, including Denmark and the UK. Experimental Danish buses are already running on rapeseed oil.**

The solar constant has the value 1.4 kilowatts/m^2. It represents the amount of solar energy per unit area[7] that reaches the earth, before the sunlight has entered the atmosphere. Because the atmosphere reflects 6% and absorbs 16%, the peak power at sea level is reduced to 1.0 kW/m^2. Clouds also absorb and reflect sunlight. Average cloud cover reduces the energy of sunlight a further 36%. Also, we must take into account the fact that the sun's rays do not fall perpendicularly onto the earth's surface. The angle that they make with the surface depends on the time of day, the season and the latitude.

In Sweden, which lies at a northerly latitude, the solar energy per unit of horizontal area is less than for countries nearer the equator. Nevertheless, Göran Persson, during his term as Prime Minister of Sweden, announced that his government intends to make the country independent of imported oil by 2020 through a program that includes energy from biomass.

In his thesis, *Biomass in a Sustainable Energy System*, the Swedish researcher Pål Börjesson states that of various crops grown as biomass, the largest energy yields come from short-rotation forests (Salix viminalis, a species of willow) and sugar beet plantations. These have an energy yield of from 160 to 170 GJ$_t$ per hectare-year. (The subscript t means "thermal". Energy in the form of electricity is denoted by the subscript e). One can calculate that this is equivalent to about 0.5 MW$_t$/km^2, or 0.5 W$_t$/m^2. Thus, although 1.0 kW/m^2 of solar energy reaches the earth at noon at the equator, the trees growing in northerly Sweden can harvest a day-and-night and seasonal average of only 0.5 Watts of thermal energy per horizontal square meter[8]. Since Sweden's present primary energy use is approximately 0.04 TW$_t$, it follows that if no other sources of energy were used, a square area of Salix forest 290 kilometers on each side would supply Sweden's present energy needs. This corresponds to an area of 84,000 km^2, about 19% of Sweden's total

[7]The area is assumed to be perpendicular to the sun's rays.

[8]In tropical regions, the rate of biomass production can be more than double this amount.

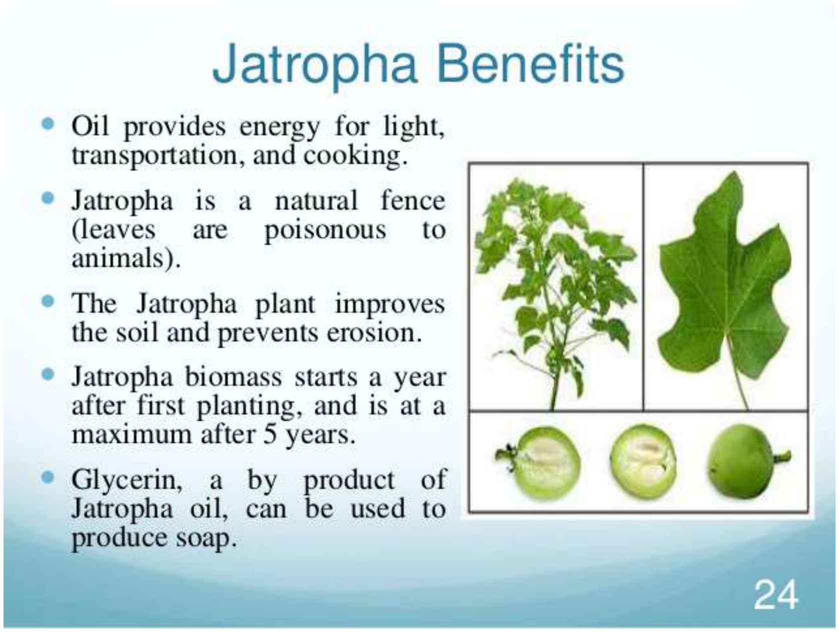


Figure 5.13: **In some countries, Jatropha is a promising source of biomass..**

area[9]. Of course, Sweden's renewable energy program will not rely exclusively on energy crops, but on a mixture of sources, including biomass from municipal and agricultural wastes, hydropower, wind energy and solar energy.

At present, both Sweden and Finland derive about 30% of their electricity from biomass, which is largely in the form of waste from the forestry and paper industries of these two countries.

Despite their northerly location, the countries of Scandinavia have good potentialities for developing biomass as an energy source, since they have small population densities and adequate rainfall. In Denmark, biodiesel oil derived from rapeseed has been used as fuel for experimental buses. Rapeseed fields produce oil at the rate of between 1,000 and 1,300 liters per hectare-crop. The energy yield is 3.2 units of fuel product energy for every unit of fuel energy used to plant the rapeseed, and to harvest and process the oil. After the oil has been pressed from rapeseed, two-thirds of the seed remains as a protein-rich residue which can be fed to cattle.

Miscanthus is a grassy plant found in Asia and Africa. Some forms will also grow in Northern Europe, and it is being considered as an energy crop in the United Kingdom. Miscanthus can produce up to 18 dry tonnes per hectare-year, and it has the great advantage that it can be cultivated using ordinary farm machinery. The woody stems are very suitable for burning, since their water content is low (20-30%).

For some southerly countries, honge oil, derived from the plant *Pongamia pinnata* may prove to be a promising source of biomass energy. Studies conducted by Dr. Udishi

[9] Additional land area would be needed to supply the energy required for planting, harvesting, transportation and utilization of the wood.

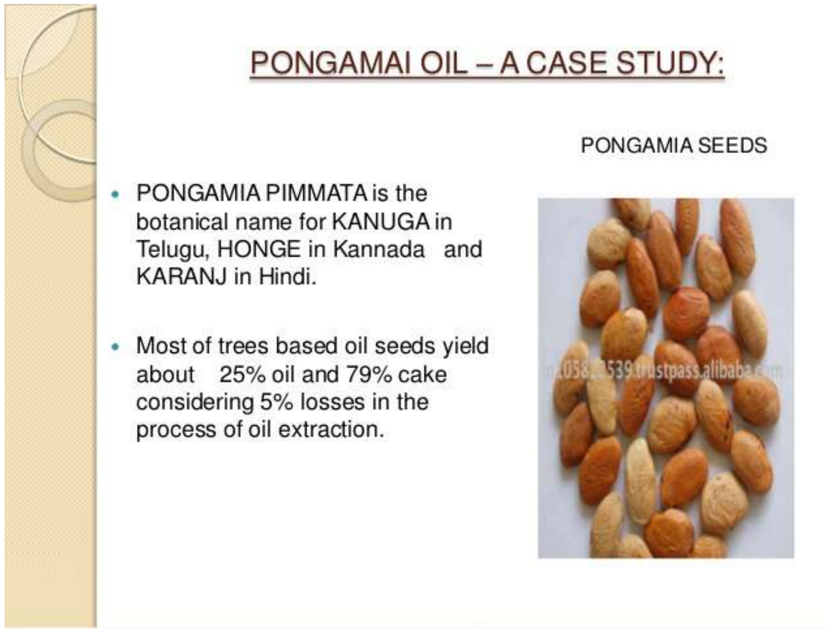


Figure 5.14: **The price of honge oil is quite competitive with other forms of oil.**

Shrinivasa at the Indian Institute of Sciences in Bangalore indicate that honge oil can be produced at the cost of $150 per ton. This price is quite competitive when compared with other potential fuel oils.

Recent studies have also focused on a species of algae that has an oil content of up to 50%. Algae can be grown in desert areas, where cloud cover is minimal. Farm waste and excess CO_2 from factories can be used to speed the growth of the algae.

It is possible that in the future, scientists will be able to create new species of algae that use the sun's energy to generate hydrogen gas. If this proves to be possible, the hydrogen gas may then be used to generate electricity in fuel cells, as will be discussed below in the section on hydrogen technology. Promising research along this line is already in progress at the University of California, Berkeley.

Biogas is defined as the mixture of gases produced by the anaerobic digestion of organic matter. This gas, which is rich in methane (CH_4), is produced in swamps and landfills, and in the treatment of organic wastes from farms and cities. The use of biogas as a fuel is important not only because it is a valuable energy source, but also because methane is a potent greenhouse gas, which should not be allowed to reach the atmosphere. Biogas produced from farm wastes can be used locally on the farm, for cooking and heating, etc. When biogas has been sufficiently cleaned so that it can be distributed in a pipeline, it is known as "renewable natural gas". It may then be distributed in the natural gas grid, or it can be compressed and used in internal combustion engines. Renewable natural gas can also be used in fuel cells, as will be discussed below in the section on Hydrogen Technology.

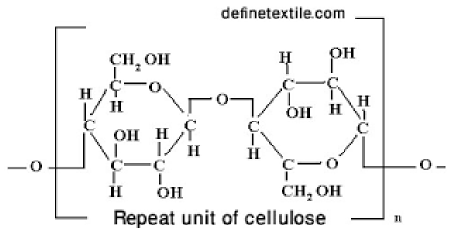


Figure 5.15: **Cellulose is a polysacheride. In other words, it is a long polymer whose subunits are sugars. The links between the sugar subunits in the chain can be broken, for example by the action of enzymes or acids. After this has been done, the resulting sugars can be fermented into alcohols, and these can be used to fuel motor vehicles or aircraft.**

Cellulostic ethanol

The fact that alcohols such as ethanol can be produced from cellulose has long been known.[10] In 1819, the French chemist Henri Braconnot demonstrated that cellulose could be broken down into sugars by treating it with sulfuric acid. The sugars thus produced could then be fermented into alcohols which could be used as liquid fuels.

In 1898, Germany built factories to commercialize this process, and shortly afterwards the same was done in the United States using a slightly different technique. These plants producing cellulostic ethanol operated during World War I, but the plants closed after the end of the war because of the cheapness and easy availability of fossil fuels. The production of cellulostic ethanol was revived during World War II.

During the last two decades, development of enzymatic techniques has supplied a better method of breaking the long cellulose polymer chain into sugars. In fact, it has recently become possible to use microbial enzymes both for this step and for the fermentation step.

In a September 9, 2008 article in the *MIT Technology Review.* Prachi Patal wrote: "New genetically modified bacteria could slash the costs of producing ethanol from cellulostic biomass, such as corn cobs and leaves, switchgrass, and paper pulp. The microbes produce ethanol at higher temperatures than are possible using yeast, which is currently employed to ferment sugar into the biofuel. The higher temperature more than halves the quantity of the costly enzymes needed to split cellulose into the sugars that the microbes can ferment. What's more, while yeast can only ferment glucose, 'this microorganism is good at using all the different sugars in biomass and can use them simultaneously and rapidly,' says Lee Lynd, an engineering professor at Dartmouth College, who led the microbe's development...

"Lynd wants to create microbes that would do it all: efficiently break down the cellulose and hemicellulose, and then ferment all the resulting sugars. Lynd, a cofounder of Mascoma, is working with colleagues at the startup, based in Cambridge, MA, to develop a simple one-step process for making cellulostic ethanol. In the combined process, a mixture of biomass and the microbes would go into a tank, and ethanol would come out."

Cellulostic ethanol has several advantages over alcohol derived from grain;

[10] See the Wikipedia article on *Cellulostic Ethanol*

- Cellulostic ethanol avoids the food-fuel competition.
- The net greenhouse-gas-reducing effect of ethanol derived from grain is questionable.
- Cellulostic ethanol can use cardboard and paper waste as starting substances, thus reducing the quantity of trash in waste dumps.

5.10 Geothermal energy

The ultimate source of geothermal energy is the decay of radioactive nuclei in the interior of the earth. Because of the heat produced by this radioactive decay, the temperature of the earth's core is 4300 ^oC. The inner core is composed of solid iron, while the outer core consists of molten iron and sulfur compounds. Above the core is the mantle, which consists of a viscous liquid containing compounds of magnesium, iron, aluminum, silicon and oxygen. The temperature of the mantle gradually decreases from 3700 ^oC near the core to 1000 ^oC near the crust. The crust of the earth consists of relatively light solid rocks and it varies in thickness from 5 to 70 km.

The outward flow of heat from radioactive decay produces convection currents in the interior of the earth. These convection currents, interacting with the earth's rotation, produce patterns of flow similar to the trade winds of the atmosphere. One result of the currents of molten conducting material in the interior of the earth is the earth's magnetic field. The crust is divided into large sections called "tectonic plates", and the currents of molten material in the interior of the earth also drag the plates into collision with each other. At the boundaries, where the plates collide or split apart, volcanic activity occurs. Volcanic regions near the tectonic plate boundaries are the best sites for collection of geothermal energy.

The entire Pacific Ocean is ringed by regions of volcanic and earthquake activity, the so-called Ring of Fire. This ring extends from Tierra del Fuego at the southernmost tip of South America, northward along the western coasts of both South America and North America to Alaska. The ring then crosses the Pacific at the line formed by the Aleutian Islands, and it reaches the Kamchatka Peninsula in Russia. From there it extends southward along the Kurile Island chain and across Japan to the Philippine Islands, Indonesia and New Zealand. Many of the islands of the Pacific are volcanic in nature. Another important region of volcanic activity extends northward along the Rift Valley of Africa to Turkey, Greece and Italy. In the Central Atlantic region, two tectonic plates are splitting apart, thus producing the volcanic activity of Iceland. All of these regions are very favorable for the collection of geothermal power.

The average rate at which the energy created by radioactive decay in the interior of the earth is transported to the surface is 0.06 W_t/m^2. However, in volcanic regions near the boundaries of tectonic plates, the rate at which the energy is conducted to the surface is much higher - typically 0.3 W_t/m^2. If we insert these figures into the thermal conductivity law

$$q = K_T \frac{\Delta T}{z}$$

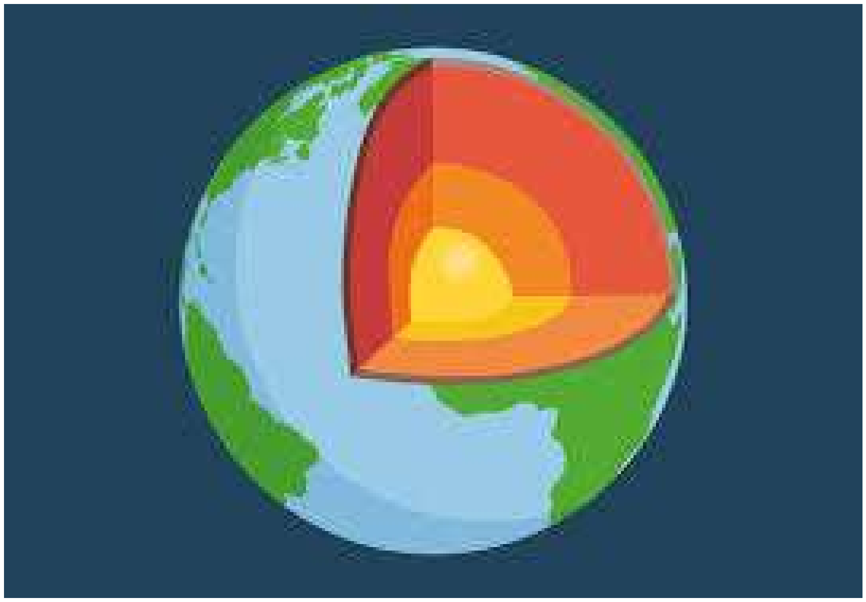


Figure 5.16: **The source of geothermal energy is the radioactive decay of elements deep within the earth.**

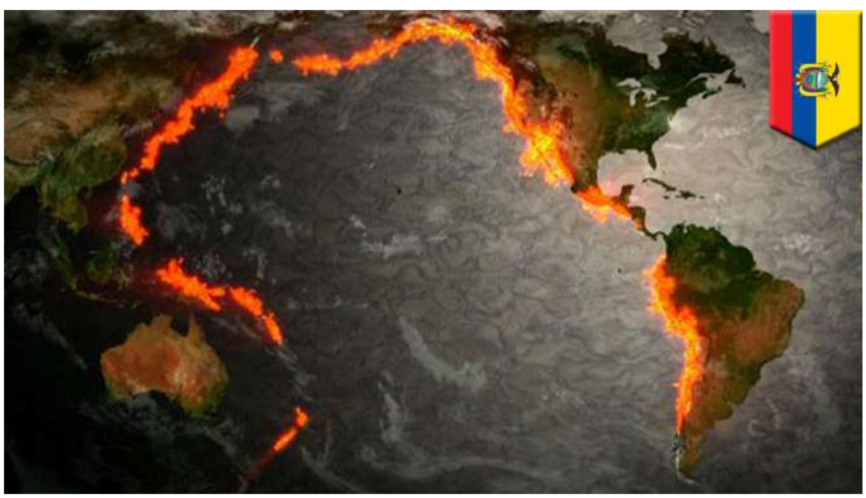


Figure 5.17: **The "ring of fire" is especially favorable for geothermal energy installations. The ring follows the western coasts of South America and North America to Alaska, After crossing the Bering Sea, it runs southward past Japan and Indonesia to New Zealand. Earthquakes and volcanic activity along this ring are produced by the collision of tectonic plates. Another strip-like region very favorable for geothermal installations follows Africa's Rift Valley northward through Turkey and Greece to Italy, while a third pass through Iceland.**

we can obtain an understanding of the types of geothermal resources available throughout the world. In the thermal conductivity equation, q is the power conducted per unit area, while K_T is the thermal conductivity of the material through the energy is passing. For sandstones, limestones and most crystalline rocks, thermal conductivities are in the range 2.5-3.5 $W_t/(m\ ^oC)$. Inserting these values into the thermal conductivity equation, we find that in regions near tectonic plate boundaries we can reach temperatures of 200 ^oC by drilling only 2 kilometers into rocks of the types named above. If the strata at that depth contain water, it will be in the form of highly-compressed steam. Such a geothermal resource is called a *high-enthalpy* resource[11].

In addition to high-enthalpy geothermal resources there are *low-enthalpy* resources in nonvolcanic regions of the world, especially in basins covered by sedimentary rocks. Clays and shales have a low thermal conductivity, typically 1-2 $W_t/(m\ ^oC)$. When we combine these figures with the global average geothermal power transmission, $q = 0.06\ W_t/m^2$, the thermal conduction equation tells us that $\Delta T/z = 0.04\ ^oC/m$. In such a region the geothermal resources may not be suitable for the generation of electrical power, but nevertheless adequate for heating buildings. The Creil district heating scheme north of Paris is an example of a project where geothermal energy from a low enthalpy resource is used for heating buildings.

The total quantity of geothermal electrical power produced in the world today is 8 GW_e, with an additional 16 GW_t used for heating houses and buildings. In the United States alone, 2.7 GW_e are derived from geothermal sources. In some countries, for example Iceland and Canada, geothermal energy is used both for electrical power generation and for heating houses.

There are three methods for obtaining geothermal power in common use today: Deep wells may yield dry steam, which can be used directly to drive turbines. Alternatively water so hot that it boils when brought to the surface may be pumped from deep wells in volcanic regions. The steam is then used to drive turbines. Finally, if the water from geothermal wells is less hot, it may be used in binary plants, where its heat is exchanged with an organic fluid which then boils. In this last method, the organic vapor drives the turbines. In all three methods, water is pumped back into the wells to be reheated. The largest dry steam field in the world is The Geysers, 145 kilometers north of San Francisco, which produces 1,000 MW_e.

There is a fourth method of obtaining geothermal energy, in which water is pumped down from the surface and is heated by hot dry rocks. In order to obtain a sufficiently large area for heat exchange the fissure systems in the rocks must be augmented, for example by pumping water down at high pressures several hundred meters away from the collection well. The European Union has established an experimental station at Soultz-sous-Forets in the Upper Rhine to explore this technique. The experiments performed at Soultz will determine whether the "hot dry rock" method can be made economically viable. If so, it can potentially offer the world a very important source of renewable energy.

[11]Enthalpy $\equiv H \equiv U + PV$ is a thermodynamic quantity that takes into account not only the internal energy U of a gas, but also energy PV that may be obtained by allowing it to expand.

The molten lava of volcanoes also offers a potential source of geothermal energy that may become available in the future, but at present, no technology has been developed that is capable of using it.

5.11 Hydrogen technologies

Electrolysis of water

When water containing a little acid is placed in a container with two electrodes and subjected to an external direct current voltage greater than 1.23 Volts, bubbles of hydrogen gas form at one electrode (the cathode), while bubbles of oxygen gas form at the other electrode (the anode). At the cathode, the half-reaction

$$2H_2O(l) \rightarrow O_2(g) + 4H^+(aq) + 4e^- \qquad E^0 = -1.23\ Volts$$

takes place, while at the anode, the half-reaction

$$4H^+(aq) + 4e^- \rightarrow 2H_2(g) \qquad E^0 = 0$$

occurs.

Half-reactions differ from ordinary chemical reactions in containing electrons either as reactants or as products. In electrochemical reactions, such as the electrolysis of water, these electrons are either supplied or removed by the external circuit. When the two half-reactions are added together, we obtain the total reaction:

$$2H_2O(l) \rightarrow O_2(g) + 2H_2(g) \qquad E^0 = -1.23\ Volts$$

Notice that $4H^+$ and $4e^-$ cancel out when the two half-reactions are added. The total reaction does not occur spontaneously, but it can be driven by an external potential E, provided that the magnitude of E is greater than 1.23 volts.

When this experiment is performed in the laboratory, platinum is often used for the electrodes, but electrolysis of water can also be performed using electrodes made of graphite.

Electrolysis of water to produce hydrogen gas has been proposed as a method for energy storage in a future renewable energy system. For example, it might be used to store energy generated by photovoltaics in desert areas of the world. Compressed hydrogen gas could then be transported to other regions and used in fuel cells. Electrolysis of water and storage of hydrogen could also be used to solve the problem of intermittency associated with wind energy or solar energy.

Half reactions

Chemical reactions in which one or more electrons are transferred are called *oxidation-reduction reactions*. Any reaction of this type can be used in a fuel cell. As an example,

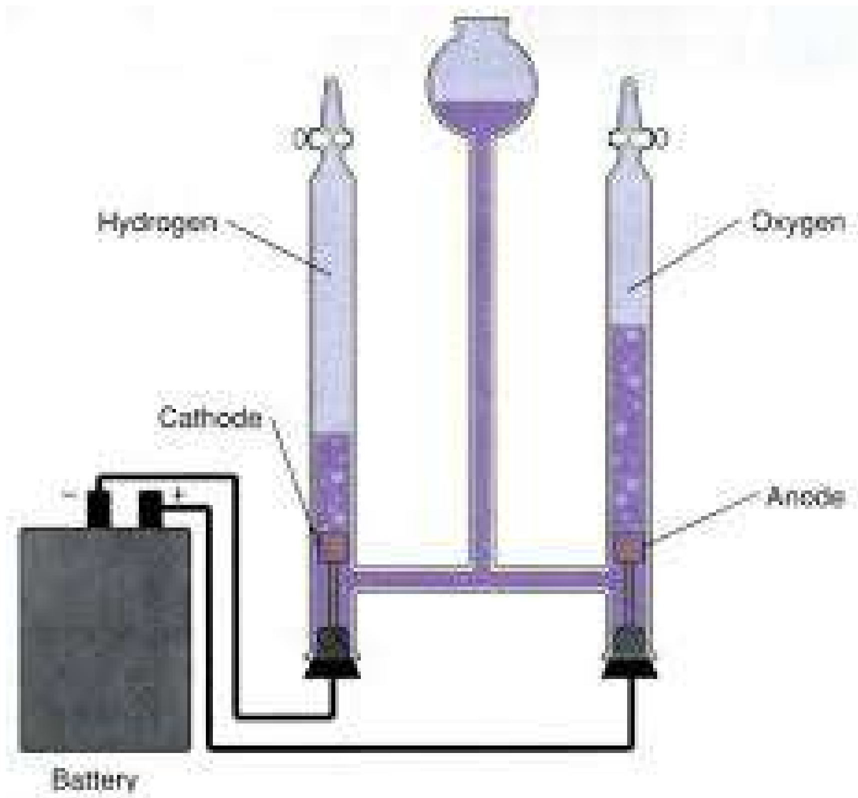


Figure 5.18: **Electrolysis of water.**

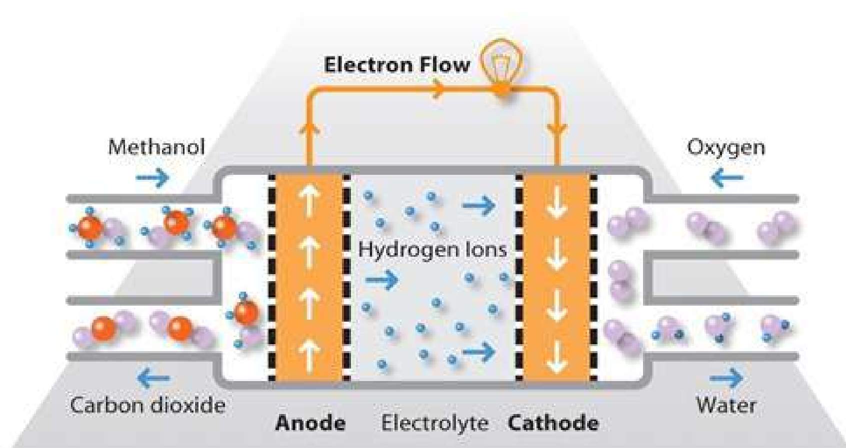


Figure 5.19: **A methanol fuel cell.**

we can consider the oxidation-reduction reaction in which solid lithium metal reacts with fluorine gas;

$$2Li_{(s)} + F_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2LiF_{(s)}$$

This reaction can be split into two half-reactions,

$$Li_{(s)} \rightarrow Li^{+} + e^{-} \qquad\qquad E_0 = -3.040\ V$$

and

$$F_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2F^{+} + 2e^{-} \qquad\qquad E_0 = 2.87\ V$$

The quantity E_0 which characterizes these half-reactions is called *standard potential* of the half-reaction, and it is measured in Volts. If the oxidation-reduction reaction is used as the basis of a fuel cell, the voltage of the cell is the difference between the two standard potentials. In the lithium fluoride example, it is

$$2.87\ V - (-3.040\ V) = 5.91\ V$$

Here are a few more half-reactions and their standard potentials:

$$\begin{array}{cc}
K^{+} + e^{-} \rightarrow\ K_{(s)} & E_0 = -2.924\ V \\
Na^{+} + e^{-} \rightarrow Na_{(s)} & E_0 = -2.7144\ V \\
2H_2O + 2e^{-} \rightarrow H_20 + 2OH^{-} & E_0 = -0.828\ V \\
Zn^{2+} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow Zn_{(s)} & E_0 = -0.7621\ V \\
Fe^{2+} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow Fe_{(s)} & E_0 = -0.440\ V \\
Pb^{2+} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow Pb_{(s)} & E_0 = -0.1266\ V \\
2H^{+} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow H_{2(g)} & E_0 \equiv 0.0000\ V \\
Cu^{2+} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow Cu_{(s)} & E_0 = +0.3394\ V \\
I_{2(s)} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow 2I^{-} & E_0 = +0.535\ V \\
Fe^{3+} + e^{-} \rightarrow Fe^{2+} & E_0 = +0.769\ V \\
Br_{2(l)} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow 2Br^{-} & E_0 = +1.0775\ V \\
O_{2(g)} + 4H^{+} + 4e^{-} \rightarrow 2H_2O & E_0 = +1.2288\ V \\
Cl_{2(g)} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow 2Cl^{-} & E_0 = +1.3601\ V
\end{array}$$

Fuel cells are closely related to storage batteries. Essentially, when we recharge a storage battery we are just running a fuel cell backwards, applying an electrical potential which is sufficient to make a chemical reaction run in a direction opposite to the way that it would run spontaneously. When the charged battery is afterwards used to drive a vehicle or to power an electronic device, the reaction runs in the spontaneous direction, but the energy of the reaction, instead of being dissipated as heat, drives electrons through an external circuit and performs useful work.

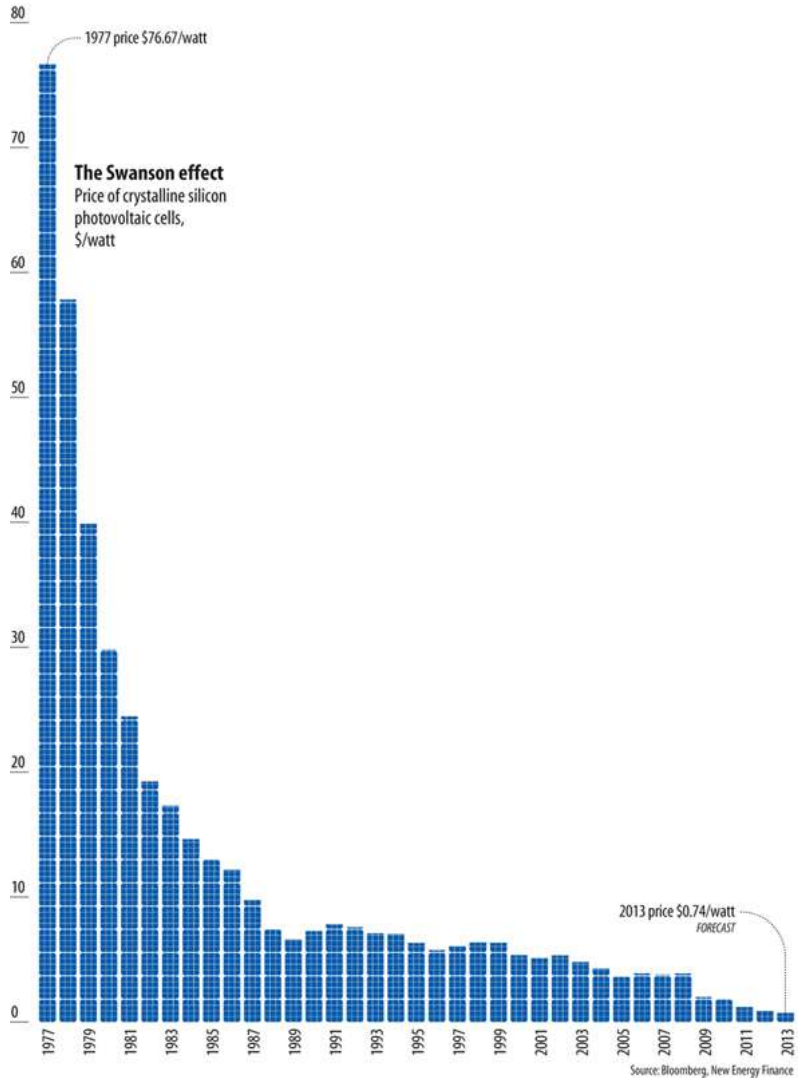


Figure 5.20: **The cost of photovoltaic cell panels is falling rapidly**

5.12 Renewables are now much cheaper than fossil fuels!

According to an article written by Megan Darby and published in *The Guardian* on 26 January, 2016, "Solar power costs are tumbling so fast the technology is likely to fast outstrip mainstream energy forecasts.

"That is the conclusion of Oxford University researchers, based on a new forecasting model published in Research Policy[12].

"Commercial prices have fallen by 58% since 2012 and by 16

"Since the 1980s, panels to generate electricity from sunshine have got 10% cheaper

[12]http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0048733315001699

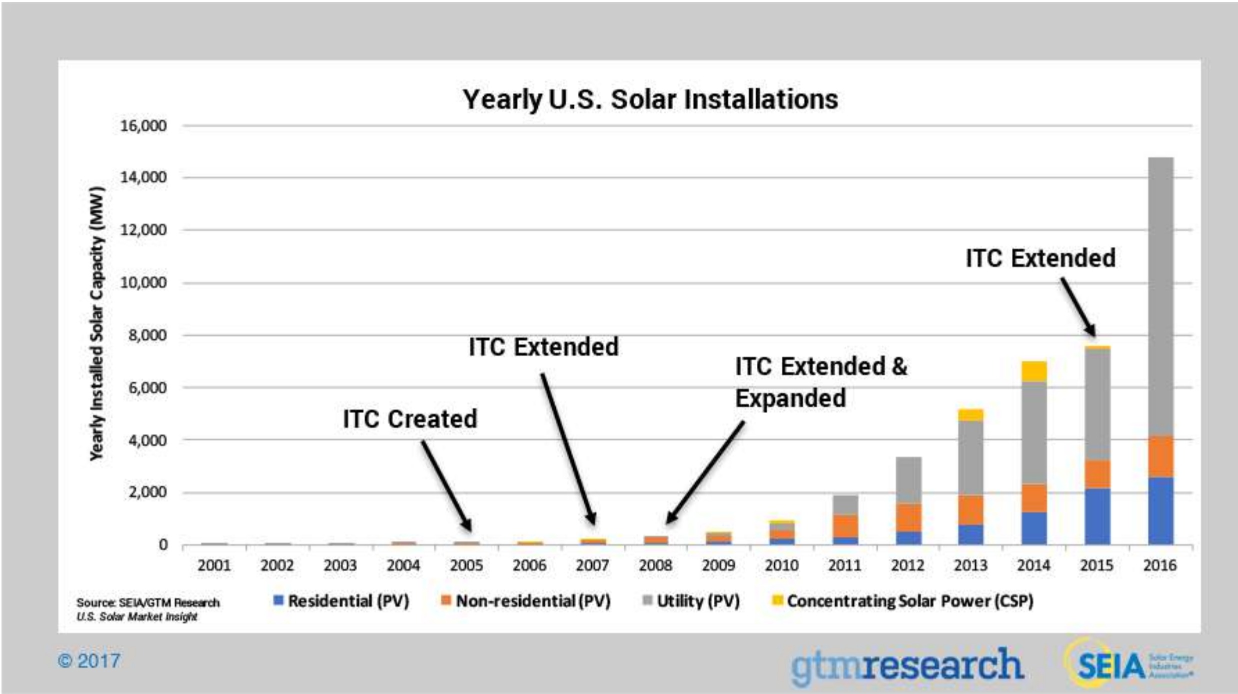


Figure 5.21: **Driven by falling prices, new solar installations in the United States are increasing rapidly. The acronym ITC stands for Solar Investment Tax Credit. Commercial prices have fallen by 58% since 2012 and by 16% in the last year**

each year. That is likely to continue, the study said, putting solar on course to meet 20% of global energy needs by 2027.' '

5.13 Lester R. Brown

In December 2008, Lester R. Brown called attention to the following facts:

- The renewable energy industry - wind, solar, geothermal - are expanding by over 30 percent yearly;
- There are now, in the U.S., 24,000 megawatts of wind generating capacity online, but there is a staggering 225,000 megawatts of planned wind farms;
- What is needed is a World War II-type mobilization to produce electric-powered cars that will operate at an equivalent gas cost of $1 per gallon (Replacing each SUV with a plug-in hybrid could save $20,000 of oil imports over its lifetime);

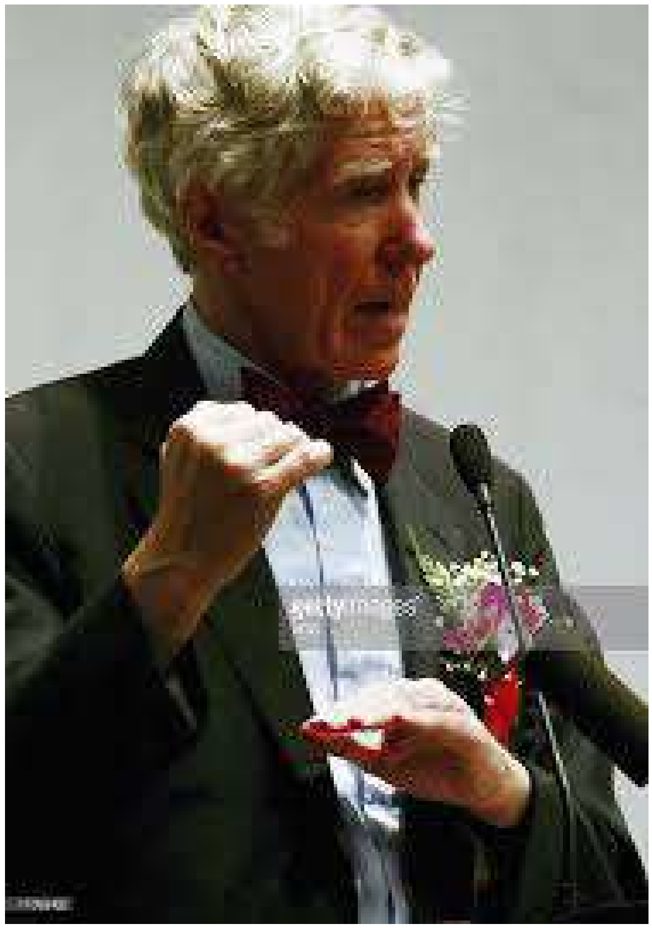


Figure 5.22: **Lester R. Brown, born in 1934, is the author of more than 50 books, and he has been called "...one of the world's most influential thinkers" (Washington Post). He is the founder of the Worldwatch Institute and the Earth Policy Institute. Books produced by Brown and his coworkers at the EPI can be freely downloaded and circulated. The 2015 book *The Great Transition: Shifting From Fossil Fuels to Solar and Wind Energy* can be freely downloaded from the following link: http://www.earth-policy.org/books/tgt**

Suggestions for further reading

1. G. Boyle (editor), *Renewable Energy: Power for a Sustainable Future, Second Edition*, Oxford University Press, (2004).
2. G. Boyle, B. Everett and J. Ramage (editors), *Energy Systems and Sustainability*, Oxford University Press, (2003).
3. United Nations Development Programme, *World Energy Assessment*, United Nations, New York, (2002).
4. P. Smith et al., *Meeting Europe's Climate Change Commitments: Quantitative Estimates of the Potential for Carbon Mitigation by Agriculture*, Global Change Biology, **6**, 525-39, (2000).
5. R.E.H. Sims, *The Brilliance of Energy: In Business and in Practice*, James and James, London, (2002).
6. Friends of the Earth, *Energy Without End*, FOE, London, (1991).
7. E.A. Alma and E. Neala, *Energy Viability of Photovoltaic Systems*, Energy Policy, **28**, 999-1010, (2000).
8. Department of Trade and Industry, *Developments of Solar Photovoltaics in Japan*, Global Watch Mission Report, November, (2003).
9. European Photovoltaics Industry Association, *Solar Generation: Solar Electricity for Over 1 Billion People and 2 Million Jobs by 2020*, EPA, published in association with Greenpeace (see www.cleanenergynow.org), (2001).
10. B. Sørensen, *Renewable Energy, Second Edition*, Academic Press, (2000).
11. K. Illum, *A Viable Energy Strategy for the Nordic Countries*, Greenpeace Nordic, (2006).
12. K. Illum, *SESAME: The Sustainable Energy Systems Analysis Model*, Along University Press, Denmark, (1995).
13. G. Sinden, *Wind Power and the UK Wind Resource*, Environmental Change Institute, University of Oxford, (2005).
14. P. Börjesson, *Energy Analysis of Biomass Production and Transportation*, Biomass and Energy, **11**, 305-318, (1996).
15. P. Börjesson, *Emissions of CO2 from Biomass Production and Transportation*, Energy Conversion Management, **37**, 1235-1240, (1995).
16. P. Börjesson and L. Gustav's, *Regional Production and Utilization of Biomass in Sweden*, Energy - The International Journal, **21**, 747-764, (1996).
17. D. Duodena and C. Galvin, *Renewable Energy*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1983).
18. G. Foley, *The Energy Question*, Penguin Books Ltd., (1976).
19. D. Hayes, *The Solar Energy Timetable*, Worldwatch Paper 19, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1978).
20. J. Holdren and P. Herrera, *Energy*, Sierra Club Books, New York, (1971).
21. L. Rosen and R.Glasser (eds.), *Climate Change and Energy Policy*, Los Alamos National Laboratory, AIP, New York, (1992).
22. A.B. Lovins, *Soft Energy Paths*, Ballinger, Cambridge, (1977).
23. National Academy of Sciences, *Energy and Climate*, NAS, Washington D.C., (1977).

24. LTI-Research Group, ed., *Long-Term Integration of Renewable Energy Sources into the European Energy System*, Physica Verlag, (1998).
25. P.H. Ableson, *Renewable Liquid Fuels*, Science, **268**, 5213, (1995).
26. W.H. Avery and C. Wu, *Renewable Energy From the Ocean. A Guide to OTEC*, Oxford University Press, (1994).
27. H.M. Browenstein et al., *Biomass Energy Systems and the Environment*, Pergamon Press, New York, (1981).
28. M. Brower, *Cool Energy. Renewable Solutions to Environmental Problems*, MIT Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, (1994).
29. L.R. Brown, *Food or Fuel: New Competition for the World's Cropland*, Worldwatch Paper 35, Worldwatch Institute,Washington D.C., (1980).
30. C.H. Deutsch, *As Oil Prices Rise, the Hydrogen Car is Looking Better*, New York Times, August 26, (1990).
31. W.L. Driscoll, *Fill 'Er Up with Biomass Derivatives*, Technology Review, August/September, 74-76, (1993).
32. J. Dunkerley et al., *Energy Strategies for Developing Nations*, Resources for the Future, Washington D.C., (1981).
33. C. Flavin and N. Lenssen, *Beyond the Petroleum Age: Designing a Solar Economy*, Worldwatch Paper 100, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1990).
34. C. Flavin and N. Lenssen, *The Power Surge. Guide to the Coming Energy Revolution*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1994).
35. J. Gever et al., *Beyond Oil. The Threat to Food and Fuel in the Coming Decades*, Ballinger, Cambridge Massachusetts, (1986).
36. E.A. Hiller and B.A. Stout, *Biomass Energy. A Monograph*, Texas A&M University Press, College Station, Texas, (1985).
37. T.B. Johansson et al., (editors), *Renewable Energy: Sources for Fuels and Electricity*, Island Press, Washington D.C., (1982).
38. D. Knott, *Hydrogen: The Fuel of the Future?*, Oil and Gas Journal, May, 26, (1994).
39. D.K. McDaniels, *The Sun: Our Future Energy Source* Second Edition, Krieger, Malabar Florida, (1994).
40. D. Pimentel, *Renewable Energy: Economic and Environmental Issues*, BioScience, **44**, 536-547, (1994).
41. D. Ross, *Power From the Waves*, Oxford University Press, (1995).
42. S. Sanchez, *Movement is in the Air As Texas Taps the Wind*, USA Today, November, (1995).
43. C.C. Swan, *Suncell. Energy, Economics and Photovoltaics*, Sierra Club Books, San Francisco, (1986).
44. I. Wickelgren, *Sunup at Last for Solar?*, Business Week, July 24, 84,86, (1995).
45. K. Zweibel, *Thin-film Photovoltaic Cells*, American Scientist, **81**, 362-369, (1993).
46. R. Golob and E. Brus, *The Almanac of Renewable Energy. The Complete Guide to Emerging Energy Technologies*, Henry Holt and Company, New York, (1993).
47. N. Yoneda and S. Ito, *Study of Energy Storage for Long Term Using Chemical Reactions*, 3rd International Solar Forum, Hamburg, Germany, June 24-27, (1980).

48. R. Curtis, *Earth Energy in the UK*, in *Proc. International Geothermal Days 'Germany 2001', conference*, Bad Urach, Available in PDF format on www.uni-giessen.de, (2001).
49. R. Harrison, N.D. Mortimer and O.B. Smarason, *Geothermal Heating: A Handbook of Engineering Economics*, Pergamon Press, (1990).
50. G.W. Huttrer, *The Status of World Geothermal Power Generation 1995-2000*, in **WGC 2000**, (2000).
51. International Geothermal Association, *Performance Indicators for Geothermal Power Plant*, IGA News, **45**, July-September, (2001).
52. J.W. Lund and D.H. Freestone, *Worldwide Direct Use of Geothermal Energy 2000*, in **WGC 2000**, (2000).
53. H.C.H. Armstead and J.W. Tester, *Heat Mining*, Chapman and Hall, (1987).
54. T.B. Johansson et al. (editors), *Electricity - Efficient End Use*, Lund University Press, (1989).
55. S. Krohn, *Wind Energy Policy in Denmark, Status 2002*, Danish Windpower Association, (2002), www.windpower.dk.
56. Imperial College London, *Assessment of Technological Options to Address Climate Change*, ICCEPT, (www.iccept.ic.ac.uk), (2002).
57. J. Guldemberg, (editor), *World Energy Assessment: Energy and the Challenge of Sustainability*, United Nations Development Programme, New York, (2000).
58. European Commission, *Green Paper - Towards a European Strategy for the Security of Energy Supply*, COM(2000) final, (2000).
59. P. Dal and H.S. Jensen, *Energy Efficiency in Denmark*, Danish Energy Ministry, (2000).
60. A.C. Baker, *Tidal Power*, Energy Policy, **19**, 792-7, (1991).
61. Department of Energy, *Tidal Power from the Severn Estuary, Volume I*, Energy Paper 46 (The Bondi Report), HMSO, (1987).
62. House of Commons Select Committee on Energy, *Renewable Energy*, Fourth Report Session 1991-1992, HMSO, (1992).
63. American Wind Energy Association, *Global Wind Energy Market Report*, AWEA, (2003).
64. M. Andersen, *Current Status of Wind Farms in the UK*, Renewable Energy Systems, (1992).
65. Border Wind, *Offshore Wind Energy: Building a New Industry for Britain*, Greenpeace, (1998).
66. J. Beurkens and P.H. Jensen, *Economics of Wind Energy, Prospects and Directions*, Renewable Energy World, July-Aug, (2001).
67. British Wind Energy Association, *Best Practice Guidelines for Wind Energy Development*, BWEA, (1994).
68. British Wind Energy Association, *Planning Progress*, BWEA, (2003) (www.britishwindenergy.co.uk).
69. Department of Trade and Industry, *Future Offshore: A Strategic Framework for the Offshore Wind Industry*, DTI, November (2002).

70. European Wind Energy Association, *Time for Action: Wind Energy in Europe*, EWEA, (1991).
71. European Wind Energy Association, *Wind Force 12*, EWEA, (2002).
72. T. Burton et al., *Wind Energy Handbook*, Wiley, (2001).
73. J.F. Manwell et al., *Wind Energy Explained*, Wiley, (2002).
74. G. Boyle (editor), *Renewable Energy: Power for a Sustainable Future, Second Edition*, Oxford University Press, (2004).
75. G. Boyle, B. Everett and J. Ramage (editors), *Energy Systems and Sustainability*, Oxford University Press, (2003).
76. United Nations Development Programme, *World Energy Assessment*, United Nations, New York, (2002).
77. P. Smith et al., *Meeting Europe's Climate Change Commitments: Quantitative Estimates of the Potential for Carbon Mitigation by Agriculture*, Global Change Biology, **6**, 525-39, (2000).
78. R.E.H. Sims, *The Brilliance of Energy: In Business and in Practice*, James and James, London, (2002).
79. Friends of the Earth, *Energy Without End*, FOE, London, (1991).
80. E.A. Alma and E. Neala, *Energy Viability of Photovoltaic Systems*, Energy Policy, **28**, 999-1010, (2000).
81. Department of Trade and Industry, *Developments of Solar Photovoltaics in Japan*, Global Watch Mission Report, November, (2003).
82. B. Sørensen, *Renewable Energy, Second Edition*, Academic Press, (2000).
83. K. Illum, *A Viable Energy Strategy for the Nordic Countries*, Greenpeace Nordic, (2006).
84. K. Illum, *SESAME: The Sustainable Energy Systems Analysis Model*, Along University Press, Denmark, (1995).
85. G. Sinden, *Wind Power and the UK Wind Resource*, Environmental Change Institute, University of Oxford, (2005).
86. P. Börjesson, *Energy Analysis of Biomass Production and Transportation*, Biomass and Energy, **11**, 305-318, (1996).
87. P. Börjesson, *Emissions of CO2 from Biomass Production and Transportation*, Energy Conversion Management, **37**, 1235-1240, (1995).
88. P. Börjesson and L. Gustav's, *Regional Production and Utilization of Biomass in Sweden*, Energy - The International Journal, **21**, 747-764, (1996).
89. D. Duodena and C. Galvin, *Renewable Energy*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1983).
90. G. Foley, *The Energy Question*, Penguin Books Ltd., (1976).
91. D. Hayes, *The Solar Energy Timetable*, Worldwatch Paper 19, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1978).
92. J. Holdren and P. Herrera, *Energy*, Sierra Club Books, New York, (1971).
93. L. Rosen and R.Glasser (eds.), *Climate Change and Energy Policy*, Los Alamos National Laboratory, AIP, New York, (1992).
94. A.B. Lovins, *Soft Energy Paths*, Ballinger, Cambridge, (1977).
95. National Academy of Sciences, *Energy and Climate*, NAS, Washington D.C., (1977).

96. LTI-Research Group, ed., *Long-Term Integration of Renewable Energy Sources into the European Energy System*, Physica Verlag, (1998).
97. P.H. Ableson, *Renewable Liquid Fuels*, Science, **268**, 5213, (1995).
98. W.H. Avery and C. Wu, *Renewable Energy From the Ocean. A Guide to OTEC*, Oxford University Press, (1994).
99. H.M. Browenstein et al., *Biomass Energy Systems and the Environment*, Pergamon Press, New York, (1981).
100. M. Brower, *Cool Energy. Renewable Solutions to Environmental Problems*, MIT Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, (1994).
101. L.R. Brown, *Food or Fuel: New Competition for the World's Cropland*, Worldwatch Paper 35, Worldwatch Institute,Washington D.C., (1980).
102. C.H. Deutsch, *As Oil Prices Rise, the Hydrogen Car is Looking Better*, New York Times, August 26, (1990).
103. W.L. Driscoll, *Fill 'Er Up with Biomass Derivatives*, Technology Review, August/September, 74-76, (1993).
104. J. Dunkerley et al., *Energy Strategies for Developing Nations*, Resources for the Future, Washington D.C., (1981).
105. C. Flavin and N. Lenssen, *Beyond the Petroleum Age: Designing a Solar Economy*, Worldwatch Paper 100, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1990).
106. C. Flavin and N. Lenssen, *The Power Surge. Guide to the Coming Energy Revolution*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1994).
107. J. Gever et al., *Beyond Oil. The Threat to Food and Fuel in the Coming Decades*, Ballinger, Cambridge Massachusetts, (1986).
108. E.A. Hiller and B.A. Stout, *Biomass Energy. A Monograph*, Texas A&M University Press, College Station, Texas, (1985).
109. T.B. Johansson et al., (editors), *Renewable Energy: Sources for Fuels and Electricity*, Island Press, Washington D.C., (1982).
110. D. Knott, *Hydrogen: The Fuel of the Future?*, Oil and Gas Journal, May, 26, (1994).
111. D.K. McDaniels, *The Sun: Our Future Energy Source* Second Edition, Krieger, Malabar Florida, (1994).
112. D. Pimentel, *Renewable Energy: Economic and Environmental Issues*, BioScience, **44**, 536-547, (1994).
113. D. Ross, *Power From the Waves*, Oxford University Press, (1995).
114. S. Sanchez, *Movement is in the Air As Texas Taps the Wind*, USA Today, November, (1995).
115. C.C. Swan, *Suncell. Energy, Economics and Photovoltaics*, Sierra Club Books, San Francisco, (1986).
116. I. Wickelgren, *Sunup at Last for Solar?*, Business Week, July 24, 84,86, (1995).
117. K. Zweibel, *Thin-film Photovoltaic Cells*, American Scientist, **81**, 362-369, (1993).
118. R. Golob and E. Brus, *The Almanac of Renewable Energy. The Complete Guide to Emerging Energy Technologies*, Henry Holt and Company, New York, (1993).

Chapter 6

THE GREEN NEW DEAL

6.1 Cutting military budgets

The cost of US wars since 2001

According to the National Priorities Project[1], the total cost of US wars between November 11, 2001 and April 8, 2019 has been 4.77 trillion US dollars, or written out in detail $4,773,527,023,293.00. Every hour US taxpayers are paying 32.08 million dollars for the total costs of war. Globally, the world spent 1.9 trillion dollars on military budgets in 2018, according to the Stockholm International Peace Research Institute.

Every war is a war against children

War was always madness, always immoral, always the cause of unspeakable suffering, economic waste and widespread destruction, and always a source of poverty, hate, barbarism and endless cycles of revenge and counter-revenge. It has always been a crime for soldiers to kill people, just as it is a crime for murderers in civil society to kill people. No flag has ever been wide enough to cover up atrocities. Every war is a war against children.

But today, the development of all-destroying modern weapons has put war completely beyond the bounds of sanity and elementary humanity. The danger of a catastrophic nuclear war casts a dark shadow over the future of our species. It also casts a very black shadow over the future of the global environment. The environmental consequences of a massive exchange of nuclear weapons have been treated in a number of studies by meteorologists and other experts from both East and West. Scientists believe that the "nuclear winter" effect could kill a large proportion of the plants, animals and humans on earth.

[1]https://www.nationalpriorities.org/cost-of/war/

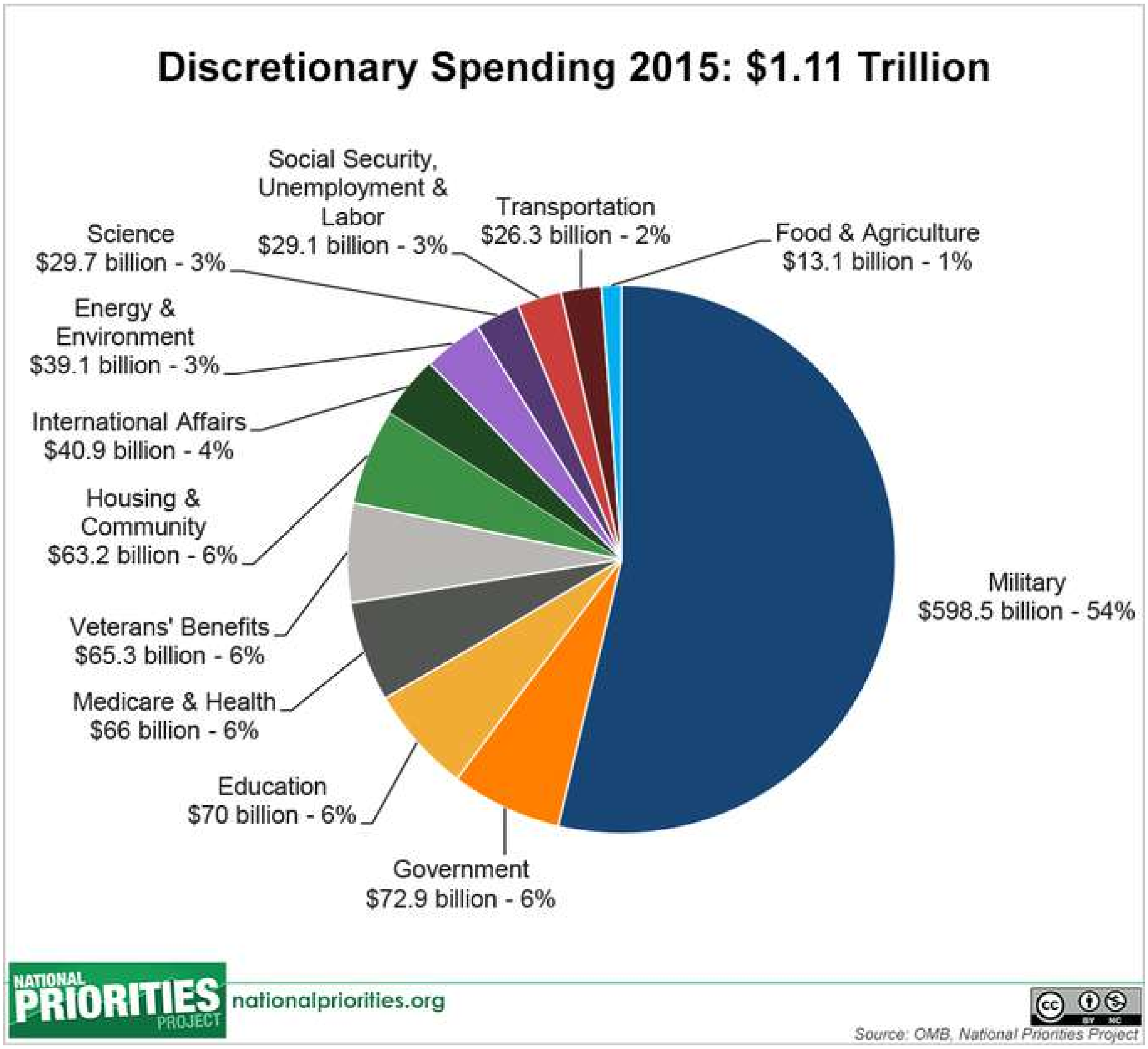


Figure 6.1: **In the fiscal year US 2015, military spending accounted for 54 percent of all federal discretionary spending, a total of $598.5 billion. Military spending includes: all regular activities of the Department of Defense; war spending; nuclear weapons spending; international military assistance; and other Pentagon-related spending.**

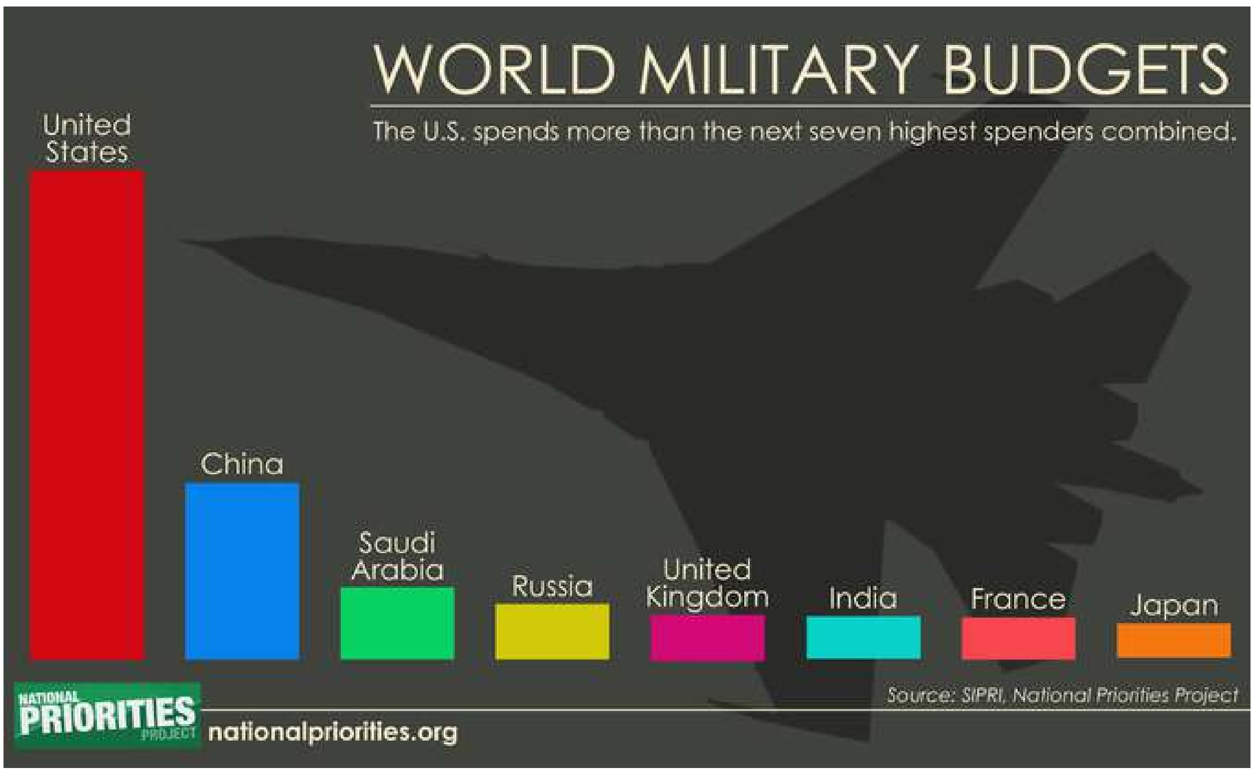


Figure 6.2: **U.S. military spending dwarfs the budget of the #2 country - China. For every dollar China spends on its military, the U.S. spends $2.77. The U.S. outpaces all other nations in military expenditures. World military spending totaled more than $1.6 trillion in 2015. The U.S. accounted for 37 percent of the total. U.S. military expenditures are roughly the size of the next seven largest military budgets around the world, combined.**

Figure 6.3: **An attempt was made to audit Pentagon spending, but the firm entrusted with this task eventually pronounced it impossible because of confusing records and lack of records. Trillions of dollars are unaccounted for.**

Figure 6.4: **No War! No Warming! There are two important connections between war and global warming. Firstly, military organizations run on oil and are are the largest single users of fossil fuels. Secondly, and even more importantly, money saved by slashing military budgets would be more than enough to carry out programs to avoid catastrophic climate change.**

Figure 6.5: **Military-industrial complexes want war. Ordinary people do not want it. According to the Stockholm International Peace Research Institute, global military expenses in 2018 amounted to 1.8 trillion dollars. This almost unimaginable river of money is the basic reason why the terrible suffering and waste of war is inflicted on the world's people.**

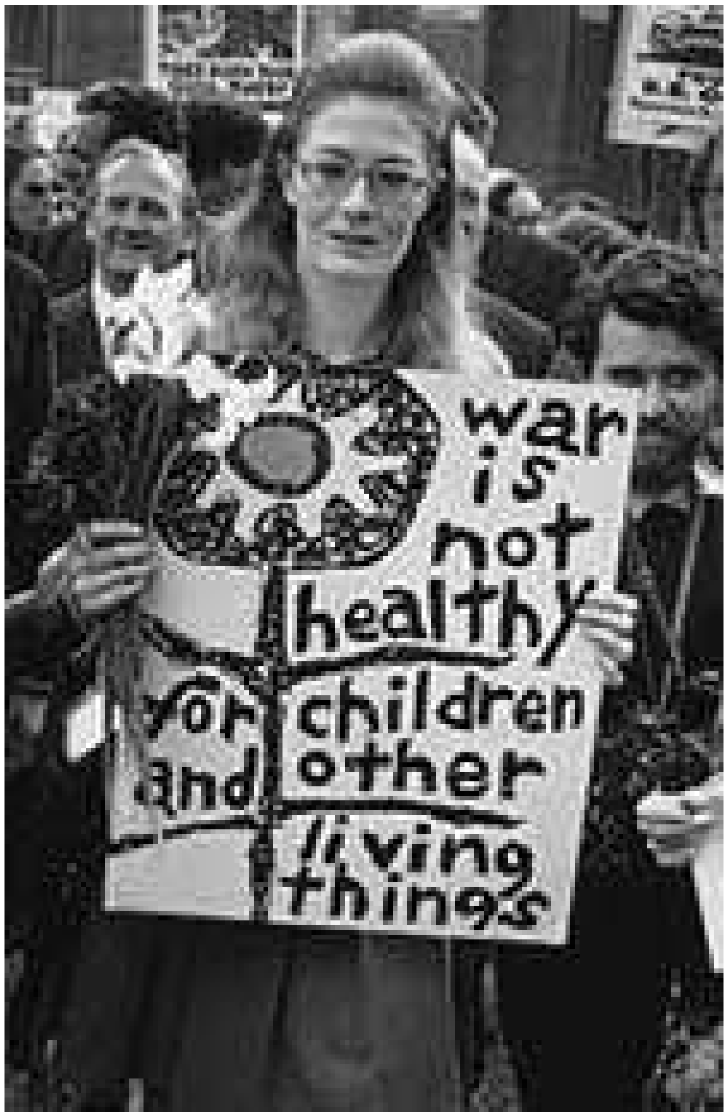


Figure 6.6: **The actress Vanessa Redgrave was part of a 1968 protest against the Vietnam War.**

Figure 6.7: **We must do whatever is necessary to save the future.**

Figure 6.8: **Young protesters from the Sunrise Movement call on leaders to back the Green New Deal.**

6.2 The Extinction Rebellion

In an open letter to governments, reported in The Guardian [2], leaders of the environmental mobement said:

In our complex, interdependent global ecosystem, life is dying, with species extinction accelerating. The climate crisis is worsening much faster than previously predicted. Every single day 200 species are becoming extinct. This desperate situation can't continue.

Political leaders worldwide are failing to address the environmental crisis. If global corporate capitalism continues to drive the international economy, global catastrophe is inevitable.

Complacency and inaction in Britain, the US, Australia, Brazil, across Africa and Asia - all illustrate diverse manifestations of political paralysis, abdicating humankind's grave responsibility for planetary stewardship.

International political organizations and national governments must foreground the climate-emergency issue immediately, urgently drawing up comprehensive policies to address it. Conventionally privileged nations must voluntarily fund comprehensive environment-protection policies in impoverished nations, to compensate the latter for foregoing unsustainable economic growth, and paying recompense for the planet-plundering imperialism of materially privileged nations.

With extreme weather already hitting food production, we demand that governments act now to avoid any risk of hunger, with emergency investment in agro-ecological extreme-weather-resistant food production. We also call for an urgent summit on saving the Arctic icecap, to slow weather disruption of our harvests.

We further call on concerned global citizens to rise up and organize against current complacency in their particular contexts, including indigenous people's rights advocacy, decolonization and reparatory justice - so joining the global movement that's now rebelling against extinction (eg Extinction Rebellion in the UK).

We must collectively do whatever's necessary non-violently, to persuade politicians and business leaders to relinquish their complacency and denial. Their "business as usual" is no longer an option. Global citizens will no longer put up with this failure of our planetary duty.

Every one of us, especially in the materially privileged world, must commit to accepting the need to live more lightly, consume far less, and to not only uphold human rights but also our stewardship responsibilities to the planet.

The letter was signed by 100 academics, authors, politicians and campaigners from

[2]https://www.theguardian.com/environment/2018/dec/09/act-now-to-prevent-an-environmental-catastrophe

Figure 6.9: **Young protesters in London demanding action to prevent catastrophic climate change.**

across the world. Among them were Vandana Shiva, Noam Chomsky, Naomi Klein and Bill McKibben.

6.3 The cost of inaction

In a sense, the cost of inaction is incalculably high. At stake is the entire future of human civilization and the biosphere. Our children's future and our grandchildren's future will be lost if we do not take rapid action to avoid catastrophic climate change. Nevertheless, scientists studying two of the most dangerous feedback loops, the albedo effect from melting of Arctic sea ice, and the release of methane from melting permafrost, have attempted to put a price tag on the cost of inaction under various scenarios. Their results were recently published in Nature[3], and reported in The National Geographic[4].

The National Geographic article, written by Stephen Leahey and published on April

[3] https://www.nature.com/articles/s41467-019-09863-x

[4] https://www.msn.com/en-us/weather/topstories/a-warming-arctic-could-cost-the-world-trillions-of-dollars/ar-BBWcxsz?li=BBnbcA1

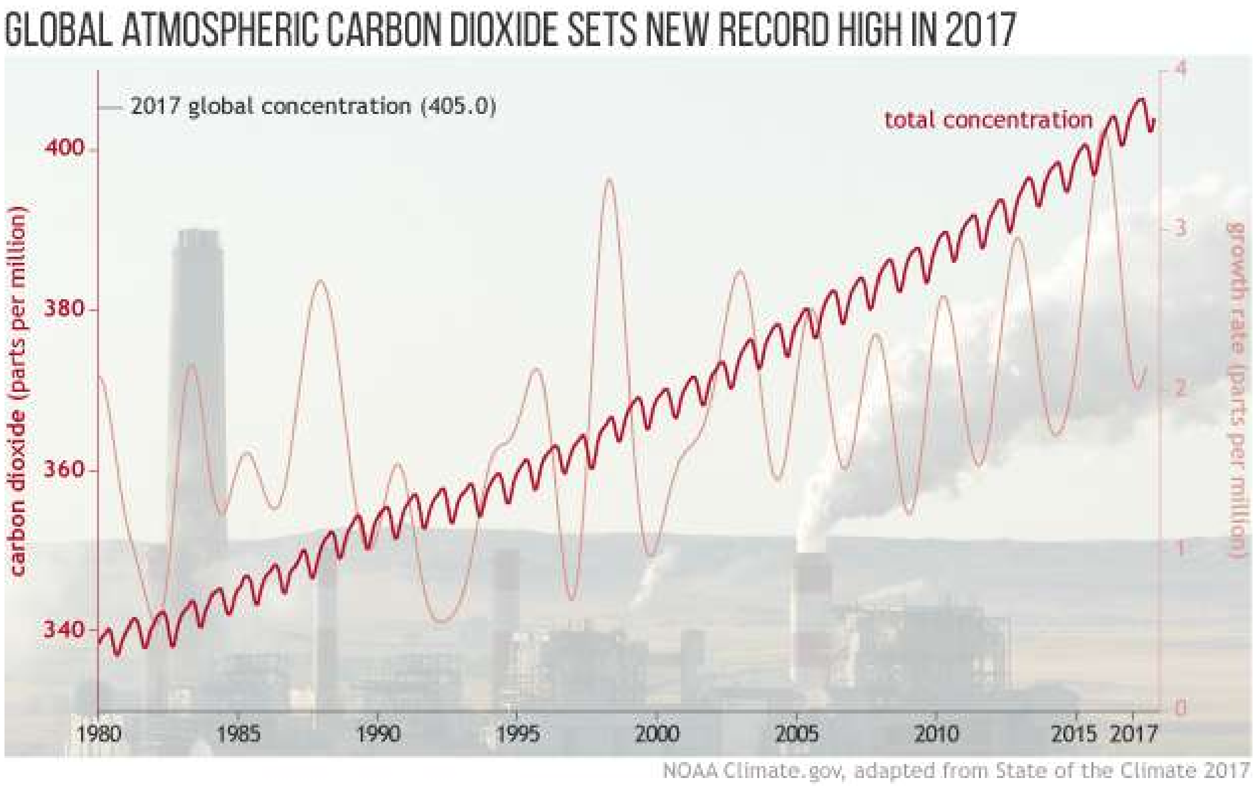


Figure 6.10: **Today the atmospheric concentration of CO_2 is 413 ppm., roughly double the pre-industrial concentration. The last time that it was this high was in the Pliocene Epoch 5.3 to 2.6 million years ago. Sea levels were then 20 meters higher than they are right now, and trees were growing at the South Pole. Unless we quickly lower carbon emissions, most coastal cities and low-lying countries will be lost to rising seas.**

24, 2019, states the following:

Scientists have long warned that climate change is likely to bring expensive impacts, from rising seas to stronger storms. And a new study comes with a hefty price tag.

A warming Arctic is shifting from white to dark as sea ice melts and land-covered snow retreats, and that means it can absorb even more of the sun's heat. Plus, the Arctic's vast permafrost area is thawing, releasing more heat-trapping carbon and methane. These climate-change-driven feedbacks in the Arctic are accelerating warming even faster and may add nearly $70 trillion to the overall costs of climate change - even if the world meets the Paris Agreement climate targets, a new study says.

However, if efforts can be made to keep climate change limited to 2.7 degrees Fahrenheit (1.5C), the extra cost of Arctic warming drops to $25 trillion, new research published in Nature Communications reports. A trillion is a thousand billion. For comparison, the global GDP in 2016 was around $76 trillion.

"Massive changes are underway in the Arctic. Permafrost and loss of sea ice and snow are two known tipping elements in the climate system," said lead author Dmitry Yumashev of the Pentland Centre for Sustainability in Business, Lancaster University in the United Kingdom.

"We wanted to know what Arctic warming could do to the rest of the world," said Yumashev.

Climate "tipping elements" are also known as tipping points or feedbacks, where a change in a natural system triggers further warming. Last year, a study documented ten tipping points and noted that these can act like a row of dominoes, one pushing another system over. Once started, these tipping points are nearly impossible to stop and risk what researchers called a "Hothouse Earth" state - in which the global average temperature is 4 to 5 degrees Celsius higher, with regions like the Arctic averaging 10 degrees C higher than today.

The Arctic is warming at least twice as fast as the global average. Sea ice has been in decline since the 1990s, exposing a million square miles of ocean. As more solar energy is absorbed it creates what's called the surface albedo feedback...

The $25 to $70 trillion cost of Arctic warming adds four to six percent to the total cost of climate change - which is estimated to reach $1,390 trillion by the year 2300 if emissions cuts are not better than the Paris Agreement. However, the costs of the current business-as-usual path could be more than $2,000 trillion.

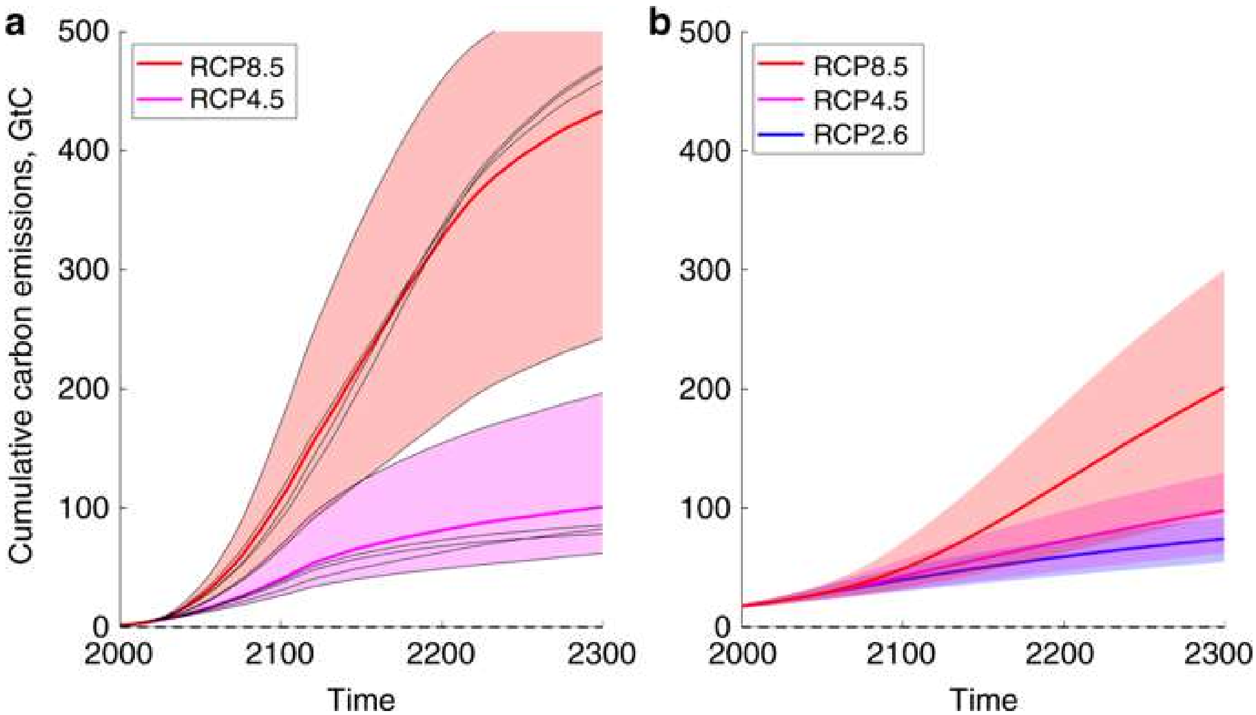


Figure 6.11: **Cumulative carbon emissions in gigatons under various scenarios.**

Global carbon debt increasing by $16 trillion annually

Another estimate of the cost of climate inaction has been made by Dr. Gideon Polya in an article entitled "Inescapable $200-250 Trillion Global Carbon Debt Increasing by $16 Trillion Annually"[5]. Here are some quotations from the article:

Carbon Debt is simply the damage-related cost of greenhouse gas (GHG) pollution that if not addressed now will inescapably have to be paid by future generations. However GHG emissions continue to rise inexorably and there is no global program to draw down CO2 and other GHGs from the atmosphere. While young people are now vociferously demanding massive climate action, inescapable global Carbon Debt is $200-$250 trillion and increasing by $16 trillion each year.

Unlike Conventional Debt that can be variously expunged by bankruptcy, printing money or default, Carbon Debt is inescapable - thus, for example, national commitments to GHG pollution reduction made to the 2015 Paris Climate Conference amount to a temperature rise of over 3 degrees Centigrade (3C) , and unless huge sea walls are built Netherlands-style , coastal cities of the world housing hundreds of millions of people will be submerged by rising

[5]https://countercurrents.org/2019/04/27/inescapable-200-250-trillion-global-carbon-debt-increasing-by-16-trillion-annually-gideon-polya/

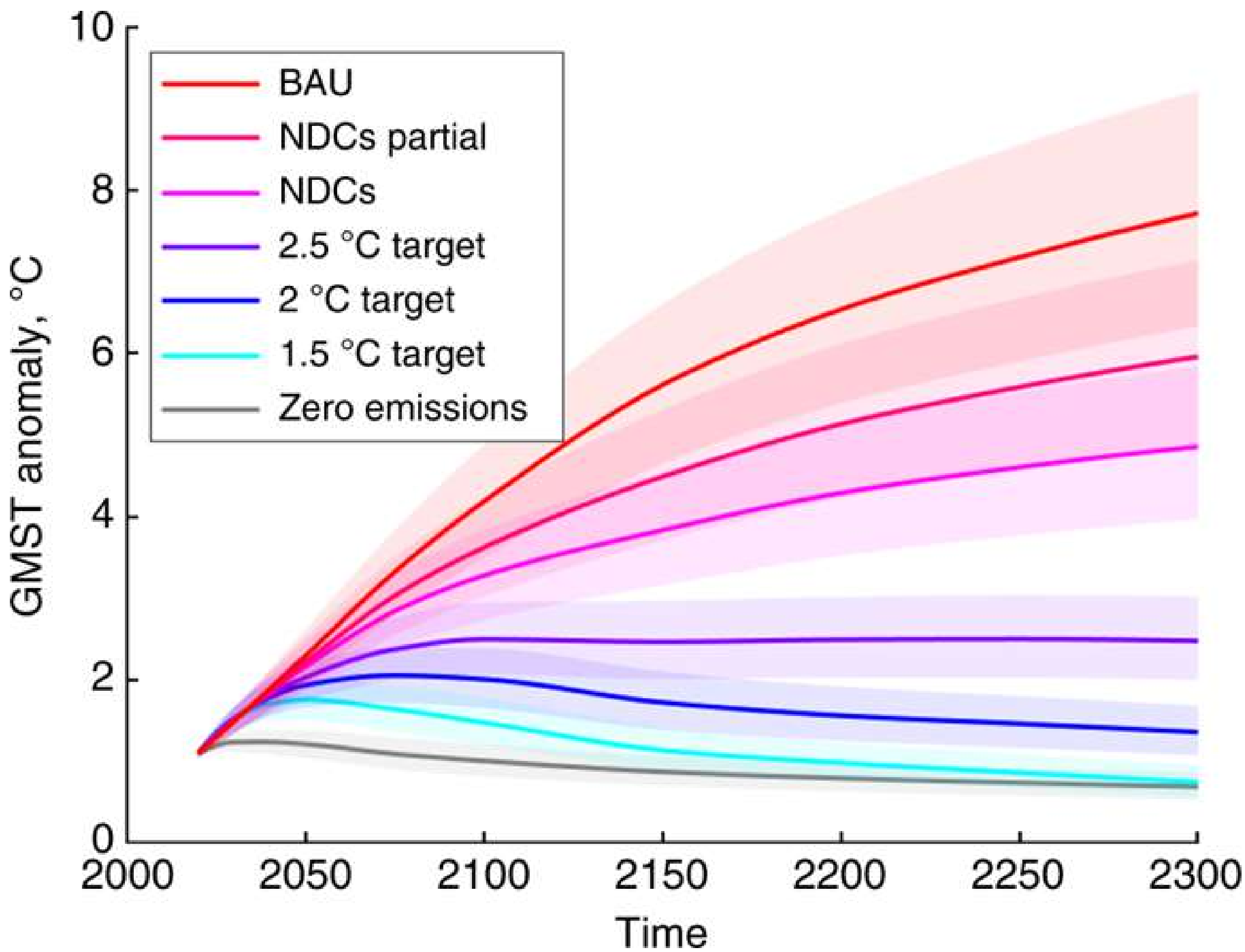


Figure 6.12: **Global mean temperature simulations under the range of climate scenarios considered.**

sea levels (notably in Asia), mega-delta agricultural lands vital for feeding Humanity will be subject to inundation and salinization, and low-lying Island States will cease to exist

While outright, anti-science climate change denialism is politically entrenched in climate criminal Trump America and its climate criminal lackey Australia, most governments around the world are politically committed to effective climate change denialism through climate change inaction. That climate change inaction is most clearly quantitated in terms of Carbon Debt, but the very term has been white-washed out of public perception by US owned or subverted Mainstream media. Thus the Australian ABC (the taxpayer-funded Australian equivalent of the UK BBC) is self-assertedly "progressive" but a Search of the ABC for the term "Climate Debt" reveals zero (0) reportage. A Search of the self-assertedly "ethical" UK BBC for the term "Climate Debt" yields 9 items with none later than 2009, defining the term or quantifying global or national Carbon Debt.

Explanations for this extraordinary mainstream media lying by omission over Carbon Debt can be variously advanced, ranging from entrenched mendacity by US- and corporate- subverted media to cognitive dissonance in the face of a worsening climate emergency. However I am confident in predicting that if governments do not take action on the world's massive Carbon Debt then intergenerational justice action by the utterly betrayed and robbed young people of the world will make the present Extinction Rebellion climate demonstrations in London look like a proverbial Teddy Bear's Picnic. A young people-led Climate Revolution (non-violent one hopes) is coming...

Up to one million species face extinction

According to a recent United Nations report[6]

The Intergovernmental Science-Policy Platform on Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services (IPBES) report warns of "an imminent rapid acceleration in the global rate of species extinction."

The pace of loss "is already tens to hundreds of times higher than it has been, on average, over the last 10 million years," it notes.

"Half-a-million to a million species are projected to be threatened with extinction, many within decades."

[6]https://news.yahoo.com/one-million-species-risk-extinction-due-humans-draft-131407174.html

Refugees from climate change

The United Nations High Commission on Refugees

In an article on *Climate Change and Disasters* the United Nations High Commission on Refugees makes the following statement:

"The Earth's climate is changing at a rate that has exceeded most scientific forecasts. Some families and communities have already started to suffer from disasters and the consequences of climate change, forced to leave their homes in search of a new beginning.

"For UNHCR, the consequences of climate change are enormous. Scarce natural resources such as drinking water are likely to become even more limited. Many crops and some livestock are unlikely to survive in certain locations if conditions become too hot and dry, or too cold and wet. Food security, already a concern, will become even more challenging.

"People try to adapt to this situation, but for many this will mean a conscious move to another place to survive. Such moves, or the effects of climate change on natural resources, may spark conflict with other communities, as an increasing number of people compete for a decreasing amount of resources.

"Since 2009, an estimated one person every second has been displaced by a disaster, with an average of 22.5 million people displaced by climate- or weather-related events since 2008 (IDMC 2015). Disasters and slow onsets, such as droughts in Somalia in 2011 and 2012, floods in Pakistan between 2010 and 2012, and the earthquake in Nepal in 2015, can leave huge numbers of people traumatized without shelter, clean water and basic supplies."

Populations displaced by sea level rise

In a recent article[7] discussed the long-term effects of sea level rise and the massive refugee crisis that it might create. By 2060, about 1.4 billion people could be climate change refugees, according to the paper, and that number could reach 2 billion by 2100.

The lead author, Prof. Emeritus Charles Geisler of Cornell University says: "The colliding forces of human fertility, submerging coastal zones, residential retreat, and impediments to inland resettlement is a huge problem. We offer preliminary estimates of the lands unlikely to support new waves of climate refugees due to the residues of war, exhausted natural resources, declining net primary productivity, desertification, urban sprawl, land concentration, 'paving the planet' with roads and greenhouse gas storage zones offsetting permafrost melt."

We should notice that Prof. Geisler's estimate of 2 billion climate refugees by 2100 includes all causes, not merely sea level rise. However, the number of refugees from sea level rise alone will be very large, since all the world's coastal cities, and many river deltas will be at risk.

[7]Geisler C. et al,, *Impediments to inland resettlement under conditions of accelerated sea level rise* , Land Use Policy, Vol **55**, July 2017, Pages 322-330

Populations displaced by drought and famine

Climate change could produce a refugee crisis that is "unprecedented in human history", Barack Obama has warned as he stressed global warming was the most pressing issue of the age.

Speaking at an international food conference in Milan, the former US President said rising temperatures were already making it more difficult to grow crops and rising food prices were "leading to political instability".

If world leaders put aside "parochial interests" and took action to reduce greenhouse gas emissions by enough to restrict the rise to one or two degrees Celsius, then humanity would probably be able to cope.

Failing to do this, Mr Obama warned, increased the risk of "catastrophic" effects in the future, "not only real threats to food security, but also increases in conflict as a consequence of scarcity and greater refugee and migration patterns".

"If you think about monsoon patterns in the Indian subcontinent, maybe half a billion people rely on traditional rain patterns in those areas,"

Populations displaced by rising temperatures

A new study published in Nature: Climate Change has warned that up to 75% of the world's population could face deadly heat waves by 2100 unless greenhouse gas emissions are rapidly controlled.[8]. The following is an excerpt from the article:

"Here we conducted a global analysis of documented lethal heat events to identify the climatic conditions associated with human death and then quantified the current and projected occurrence of such deadly climatic conditions worldwide. We reviewed papers published between 1980 and 2014, and found 783 cases of excess human mortality associated with heat from 164 cities in 36 countries.

"Based on the climatic conditions of those lethal heat events, we identified a global threshold beyond which daily mean surface air temperature and relative humidity become deadly. Around 30% of the world's population is currently exposed to climatic conditions exceeding this deadly threshold for at least 20 days a year.

"By 2100, this percentage is projected to increase to 48% under a scenario with drastic reductions of greenhouse gas emissions and 74% under a scenario of growing emissions. An increasing threat to human life from excess heat now seems almost inevitable, but will be greatly aggravated if greenhouse gases are not considerably reduced." [9]

[8]Mora, C. et al., *Global risk of deadly heat*, Nature: Climate Change, 19 June 2017

[9]See also https://phys.org/news/2017-08-deadly-south-asia-century.html and https://cleantechnica.com/2017/09/28/extreme-heatwaves-like-recent-lucifer-heatwave-become-normal-europe-2050s/

Populations displaced by war

A recent article in *The Guardian*[10] discusses the relationship between climate change and war, Here are some excerpts from the article:

“Climate change is set to cause a refugee crisis of ’unimaginable scale’, according to senior military figures, who warn that global warming is the greatest security threat of the 21st century and that mass migration will become the ’new normal’.

“The generals said the impacts of climate change were already factors in the conflicts driving a current crisis of migration into Europe, having been linked to the Arab Spring, the war in Syria and the Boko Haram terrorist insurgency.

“Military leaders have long warned that global warming could multiply and accelerate security threats around the world by provoking conflicts and migration. They are now warning that immediate action is required.

“’Climate change is the greatest security threat of the 21st century,’ said Maj Gen Muniruzzaman.

“Muniruzzaman, chairman of the Global Military Advisory Council on climate change and a former military adviser to the president of Bangladesh. He said one meter of sea level rise will flood 20% of his nation. ’We’re going to see refugee problems on an unimaginable scale, potentially above 30 million people.’

“Previously, Bangladesh’s finance minister, Abul Maal Abdul Muhith, called on Britain and other wealthy countries to accept millions of displaced people.

“Brig Gen Stephen Cheney, a member of the US Department of State’s foreign affairs policy board and CEO of the American Security Project, said: ’Climate change could lead to a humanitarian crisis of epic proportions. We’re already seeing migration of large numbers of people around the world because of food scarcity, water insecurity and extreme weather, and this is set to become the new normal’.

Political reactions to migration

Brexit

Across the developed world, the reaction to threatened migration of refugees from climate change has been less than generous, to say the least. The recent decision of Britain to leave the European Union was motivated largely by the fear of British workers that EU laws would force their country to accept large numbers of refugees.

Swings to the right in Europe

In Germany, Angela Merkel’s generous policies towards refugees have cost her votes, while an openly racist party, the Alternative for Germany (AfD) party, has gained in strength. Frauke Petry, 40, the party’s leader, has said border guards might need to turn guns on

[10]Thursday, 1 December, 2016

anyone crossing a frontier illegally. The party's policy platform says "Islam does not belong in Germany" and calls for a ban on the construction of mosques.

In September, 2017, eight people from the neo-Nazi Freital Group were put on trial in Dresden for bomb attacks on homes for asylum applicants. Hundreds of similar assaults occur in Germany every year, but they had never before been tried as terrorism in a federal court.

In the German election, which took place on Sunday, October 1, 2017, Angela Merkel won a fourth term as Chancellor, but her party won only 33% of the votes, a percentage much reduced from the 41% won in the election of 2013. Angela Merkel was paying a high price for her refugee-friendly policies.

Meanwhile the far right anti-immigration AfD party made a historic breakthrough, winning 13.5% of the vote, thus becoming the first overtly nationalist party to sit in the Bundestag in 60 years. The Greens have already complained that "Nazis have returned to parliament". In fact, members of the AfD party have begun to say that Germans should stop being ashamed of their country's Nazi past.

In France, the National Front is a nationalist party that uses populist rhetoric to promote its anti-immigration and anti-European Union positions. The party favors protectionist economic policies and would clamp down on government benefits for immigrants.

Similarly, in the Netherlands, the anti-European Union, anti-Islam Party for Freedom has called for closing all Islamic schools and recording the ethnicity of all Dutch citizens. In early November, the party was leading in polls ahead of next year's parliamentary elections.

Other far-right anti-immigrant parties in Europe include Golden Dawn (Greece), Jobbic (Hungary), Sweden Democrats (Sweden), Freedom Party (Austria), and People's Party - Our Slovakia (Slovakia). All of these parties have gained in strength because of the widespread fear of immigration.

Populism in the United States

The election of Donald Trump, who ran for President in 2016 on an openly racist and anti-immigrant platform, can also be seen as the result of fear of immigration, especially on the part of industrial workers.

A more humane response to the refugee crisis

In the long-term future, climate change will make the refugee crisis much more severe. Heat and drought will make large regions of the world uninhabitable, and will threaten many populations with famine. The severity of the refugee crisis will depend on how quickly we reduce greenhouse gas emissions.

While making many parts of the world uninhabitable, long-term climate change will make other regions more suitable for human habitation and agriculture. For example, farming will become more possible in Siberia, Greenland, the Canadian Arctic, Alaska and

Patagonia. A humane response to the refugee crisis could include the generous opening of these regions to refuges.

The global population of humans is currently increasing by almost a billion people every decade. Global population must be stabilized, and in the long run, gradually reduced. Money currently wasted (or worse than wasted) on armaments could be used instead to promote universal primary health care, and with it, universal access to the knowledge and materials needed for family planning.

Finally, reduced consumption of meat, particularly beef, would shorten the food chain thus make more food available for famine relief.

6.4 Social systems in Scandinavia

The Green New Deal can simultaneously address the climate crisis and the problem of excessive economic inequality. In this context, it is interesting to look at the social and economic systems of the Scandinavian countries, Norway, Sweden, Finland, Denmark and Iceland. In these countries the contrast between the rich and poor has been very much reduced. It is almost true to say that poverty has been eliminated in these countries. At the same time, the Scandinavians have strong policies to address the climate emergency. Thus Scandinavian successes are a counter-argument to those who say that the Green New Deal cannot be put into practice.[11]

The Danish system today

In 2017. Denmark ranked 2nd in the world (after Norway) in the World Happiness Report. In a number of other years, Denmark has ranked 1st. In compiling the report, researchers ask people in a given country whether they are happy, and record how many say "yes". Interestingly, in Denmark, women are the most happy of all. It is therefore relevant to look at the Danish social and political system of today, and to examine the reasons why women are so satisfied with it.

Denmark has very high taxes, but in return for these, its citizens receive many social services, such as free health care. If they qualify for university education, the tuition is free, and students are given an allowance for their living expenses. Mothers or alternatively fathers, can take paid leave of up to 52 weeks after the birth of a child. After that, a *vuggestue* (cresch) is always available, so that mothers can return to their jobs. When the child become too old for the cresch, day care centers are always available. For children of school age, after-school clubs are available where children can practice arts and crafts or other activities under supervision until their parents come home from work.

It is illegal in Denmark to fire a woman because she has become pregnant, or to deny her work because the employer fears that she may become pregnant. Thus, Danish women grow up expecting to find jobs outside the home. Danish women are happy to have careers, but it is also a necessity, because with taxes so high that a single income is not enough

[11]But, of course, it cannot be put into practice while maintaining an economic oligarchy.

to give a family the desired standard of living. Husbands are grateful to their wives for helping to support the family. In the case of single mothers, support is given by the state.

The number of births per woman-life reached a low of 1.38 in 1983, but since that time the number has gradually risen gradually and in 2017 the fertility rate was 1.77, still less than the replacement level. The other Scandinavian countries have very similar systems, and they all have high human development indices, as well as a high degree of economic equality. When US Senator Bernie Sanders declared that he is a socialist, he made the statement more precise by saying that he is in favor of the Scandinavian social and political system.

Renewable energy in Denmark

Here are some excerpts from a recent report by the Danish Ministry of Energy, Utilities and Climate:[12]

Denmark's success in transforming into a sustainable, green society is widely recognized. Denmark is at the forefront of numerous international initiatives and collaborative endeavors. In 2017, for the second consecutive year in a row, Denmark won the World Energy Council award for the world's best energy system.

Denmark's energy and climate policy was also high lighted in 2017 by the International Energy Agency (IEA), as an international model because the country produces wind turbines, provides record low energy prices and good electricity connections to neighboring countries.

In 2017, Denmark achieved a world record of 43.4% power produced solely by wind turbines.

Denmark can cover the largest share of its electricity production with green power from wind turbines.

Denmark is also a European leader in the export of energy technology, as exports of energy equipment account for a larger share of total exports than in any other EU country.

The government has set ambitious goals that few other countries can match:

- **At least 50% of Denmark's energy needs must be covered by renewable energy by 2030.**
- **Coal must be completely phased out of the power supply by 2030.**
- **Moratorium on all exploration and drilling activities for oil, gas and shale gas on land and inland waters of Denmark.**
- **Denmark must be a low-emission society independent of fossil fuels in 2050.**

[12]Denmark: Energy and climate pioneer. Status of the green transition

Figure 6.13: **Senator Bernie Sanders, the popular candidate for the US Presidency in 2016 and 2020, says that he is a socialist. When asked to explain this in detail, Senator Sanders said that he believes that the United States would benefit from a social system similar to the systems in present-day Scandinavia.**

Figure 6.14: **A day-care center in Sweden. In the Scandinavian countries, most women work, and state-provided day-care centers for pre-school children make this possible.**

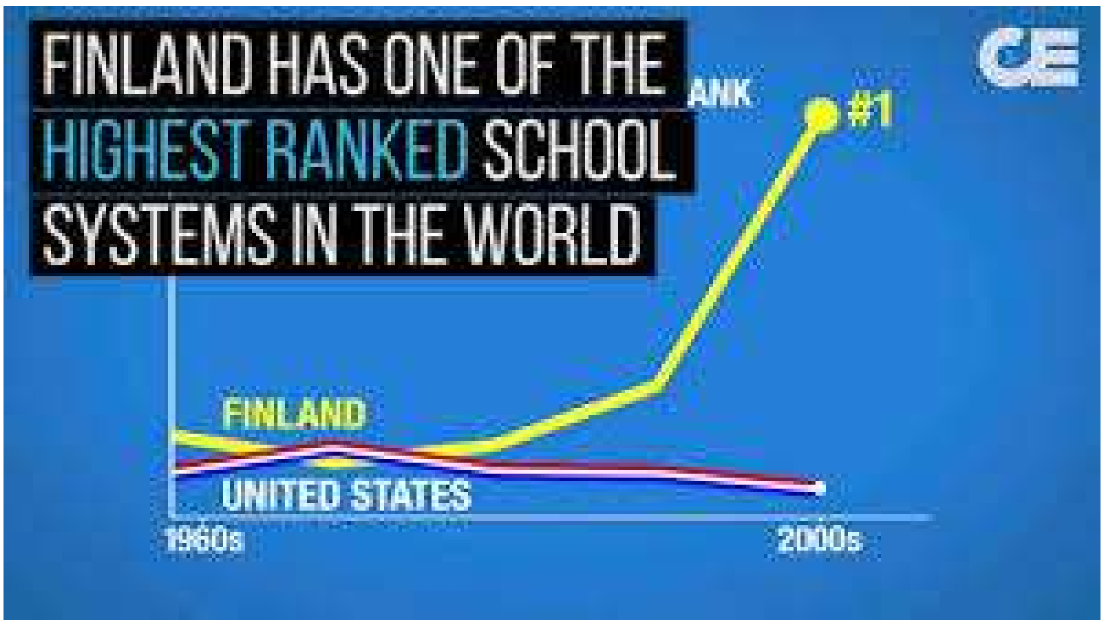


Figure 6.15: **Finland has the best school system in the world. One reason for this is that the teachers are very highly selected and highly paid. Another reason is that the children are given frequent short rest periods, during which they may go outdoors and breath fresh air. They return from these small breaks with improved concentration.**

Figure 6.16: **The long-serving Danish Prime Minister Thorvald Stauning (1873-1942). He was the architect of the Danish social and economic system, which combines a free-market economy with such social benefits as universal free health care, state-provided day-care centers and free higher education. Thanks to Stauning's initiatives, those who qualify for college or university in Denmark are not only given free tuition, but also a stipend to support their living expenses. A high progressive income tax in Denmark pays for these benefits and reduces economic inequality. Stauning forged a coalition that united both labor and employers behind his reforms.**

6.5 Roosevelt saves his nation and the world

Born into a very wealthy Dutch-American family Franklin Delano Roosevelt (1882-1945) attended Groton School, Harvard College and Columbia Law School. After practicing law in New York, he was elected to the NY State Senate. During World War I, he served as Assistant Secretary of the Navy. In 1920 he was the Democratic Party's Candidate for US Vice President, but he and James G. Cox were defeated by Warren Harding's ticket.

In 1921, FDR contracted polio and lost the use of his legs. His mother urged him to leave politics and return to the family estate at Hyde Park, but he vigorously resisted this suggestion and struggled to continue despite his handicap. In 1928, Roosevelt was elected Governor of New York. As Governor, he instituted many reforms to combat the economic problems that had followed the 1929 Black Friday stock market crash.

After winning a second term as Governor of New York State in 1930, FDR became the front-running candidate for the US Presidency in i932. In accepting the Democratic Party nomination at the Chicago convention, he said: "I pledge you, I pledge myself to a new deal for the American people... This is more than a political campaign. It is a call to arms."

Here are some excerpts from FDR's First Inaugural Address, Saturday, March 4th, 1933:

I am certain that my fellow Americans expect that on my induction into the Presidency I will address them with a candor and a decision which the present situation of our Nation impels. This is preeminently the time to speak the truth, the whole truth, frankly and boldly. Nor need we shrink from honestly facing conditions in our country today. This great Nation will endure as it has endured, will revive and will prosper. So, first of all, let me assert my firm belief that the only thing we have to fear is fear itself - nameless, unreasoning, unjustified terror which paralyzes needed efforts to convert retreat into advance. In every dark hour of our national life a leadership of frankness and vigor has met with that understanding and support of the people themselves which is essential to victory. I am convinced that you will again give that support to leadership in these critical days.

In such a spirit on my part and on yours we face our common difficulties. They concern, thank God, only material things. Values have shrunken to fantastic levels; taxes have risen; our ability to pay has fallen; government of all kinds is faced by serious curtailment of income; the means of exchange are frozen in the currents of trade; the withered leaves of industrial enterprise lie on every side; farmers find no markets for their produce; the savings of many years in thousands of families are gone.

More important, a host of unemployed citizens face the grim problem of existence, and an equally great number toil with little return. Only a foolish optimist can deny the dark realities of the moment. ..

Recognition of the falsity of material wealth as the standard of success goes

hand in hand with the abandonment of the false belief that public office and high political position are to be valued only by the standards of pride of place and personal profit; and there must be an end to a conduct in banking and in business which too often has given to a sacred trust the likeness of callous and selfish wrongdoing. Small wonder that confidence languishes, for it thrives only on honesty, on honor, on the sacredness of obligations, on faithful protection, on unselfish performance; without them it cannot live.

Restoration calls, however, not for changes in ethics alone. This Nation asks for action, and action now.

Our greatest primary task is to put people to work. This is no unsolvable problem if we face it wisely and courageously. It can be accomplished in part by direct recruiting by the Government itself, treating the task as we would treat the emergency of a war, but at the same time, through this employment, accomplishing greatly needed projects to stimulate and reorganize the use of our natural resources.

Hand in hand with this we must frankly recognize the overbalance of population in our industrial centers and, by engaging on a national scale in a redistribution, endeavor to provide a better use of the land for those best fitted for the land. The task can be helped by definite efforts to raise the values of agricultural products and with this the power to purchase the output of our cities. It can be helped by preventing realistically the tragedy of the growing loss through foreclosure of our small homes and our farms. It can be helped by insistence that the Federal, State, and local governments act forthwith on the demand that their cost be drastically reduced. It can be helped by the unifying of relief activities which today are often scattered, uneconomical, and unequal. It can be helped by national planning for and supervision of all forms of transportation and of communications and other utilities which have a definitely public character. There are many ways in which it can be helped, but it can never be helped merely by talking about it. We must act and act quickly.

Roosevelt's New Deal programs aimed at "the three R's": **relief** of the poor, **reform** of financial institutions, and **recovery** of confidence. New Deal programs aimed at employing people on infrastructure projects that included the following:

- The Civilian Concervation Corps
- The Civil Works Administration
- The Farm Security Administration
- The National Industrial Recovery Act of 1933
- The Social Security Administration
- The Works Progress Administration of 1937 (WPA)

Wikipedia states that **"The WPA financed a variety of projects such as hospitals, schools and roads, and employed more than 8.5 million workers who built 650,000 miles of highways and roads, 125,000 public buildings as well as bridges, reservoirs, irrigation systems, parks, playgrounds and so on."**

Figure 6.17: **Franklin Delano Roosevelt (FDR) in 1933. Wikipedia says of him: "Roosevelt is widely considered to be one of the most important figures in American history, as well as among the most influential figures of the 20th century. Though he has been subject to substantial criticism, he is generally rated by scholars as one of the three greatest U.S. presidents, along with George Washington and Abraham Lincoln."**

Figure 6.18: **Eleanor and Franklin with two of their children in 1908. Eleanor was called Roosevelt even before her marriage. She was the niece of US President Theodore Roosevelt, a distant cousin of Franklin. She is remembered as an outstanding advocate of racial equality, journalistic freedom and human rights.**

Figure 6.19: **A photograph of FDR with his dog Fala and Ruthie Bie, the daughter of caretakers at his Hyde Park estate. Roosevelt was careful never to be seen using his wheelchair in public. Although disabled, he managed to give a public impression of buoyant energy and confidence. One of his slogans, which he used to end the depression, was "The only thing that we have to fear is fear itself!"**

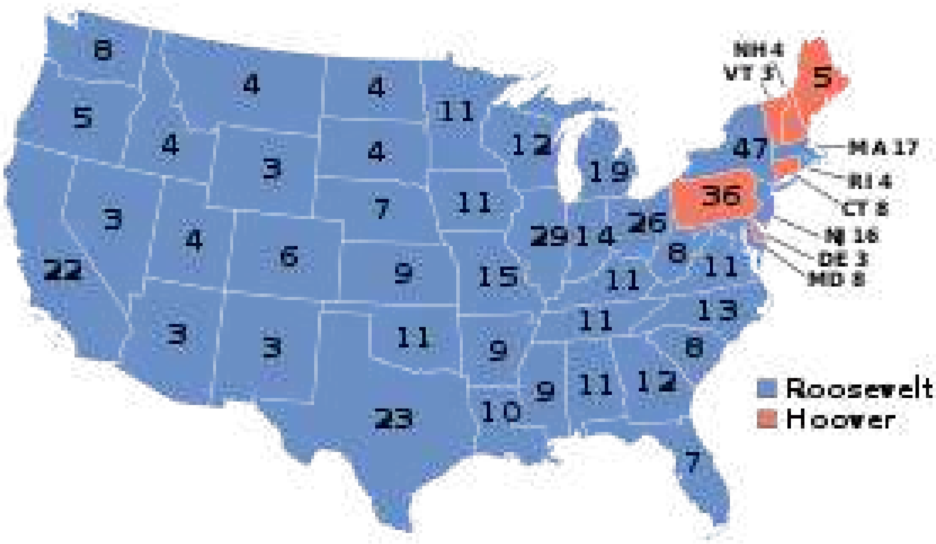


Figure 6.20: **The 1932 electoral vote. Roosevelt also won landslide victorys in 1936, 1940 and 1944. FDR died in office, shortly before the end of World War II. His administration's support for England during the the dark hours of the Battle of Britain had prevented Hitler's forces from invading the UK. In 1945, Eleanor Roosevelt helped to carry through FDR's plans for setting up the United Nations, and she was one of the two main drafters of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.**

Figure 6.21: **A photo of Eleanor Roosevelt with Charles Malik and their grandchildren. Malik and Eleanor Roosevelt worked together to draft the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.**

Roosevelt's New Deal serves a model for a Green New Deal that can save human civilization and the biosphere from catastrophic climate change, an emergency even more severe than those faced by Roosevelt. We can afford the Green New Deal. What we cannot afford is inaction.

Suggestions for further reading

1. Josh Holder, Niko Commenda and Jonathan Watts, *The three-degree world: the cities that will be drowned by global warming*, Guardian, 3 November (2017).
2. Pacific Islands Development Forum, *Suva Declaration on Climate Change*, 4 September (2015).
3. Credit Suisse, *Global Wealth Report 2018*
4. Oxfam, *Richest 1 percent bagged 82 percent of wealth created last year - poorest half of humanity got nothing* , 22 January (2018)
5. James Hansen, *Climate change in a nutshell: the gathering storm*, Columbia University, 18 December (2018).
6. Output of the technical working group meeting, The Royal Society, London, 6th July, 2009, *The Coral Reef Crisis: scientific justification for critical CO2 threshold levels of less than 350ppm*
7. P. Dasgupta, *Population, Resources and Poverty*, Ambio, **21**, 95-101, (1992).
8. L.R. Brown, *Who Will Feed China?*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1995).
9. L.R. Brown, et al., *Saving the Planet. How to Shape and Environmentally Sustainable Global Economy*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1991).
10. L.R. Brown, *Postmodern Malthus: Are There Too Many of Us to Survive?*, The Washington Post, July 18, (1993).
11. L.R. Brown and H. Kane, *Full House. Reassessing the Earth's Population Carrying Capacity*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1991).
12. L.R. Brown, *Seeds of Change*, Praeger Publishers, New York, (1970).
13. L.R. Brown, *The Worldwide Loss of Cropland*, Worldwatch Paper 24, Worldwatch Institute, Washington, D.C., (1978).
14. L.R. Brown, and J.L. Jacobson, *Our Demographically Divided World*, Worldwatch Paper 74, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1986).
15. L.R. Brown, and J.L. Jacobson, *The Future of Urbanization: Facing the Ecological and Economic Constraints*, Worldwatch Paper 77, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1987).
16. L.R. Brown, and others, *State of the World*, W.W. Norton, New York, (published annually).
17. H. Brown, *The Human Future Revisited. The World Predicament and Possible Solutions*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1978).
18. H. Hanson, N.E. Borlaug and N.E. Anderson, *Wheat in the Third World*, Westview Press, Boulder, Colorado, (1982).
19. A. Dil, ed., *Norman Borlaug and World Hunger*, Bookservice International, San Diego/Islamabad/Lahore, (1997).

20. N.E. Borlaug, *The Green Revolution Revisitied and the Road Ahead*, Norwegian Nobel Institute, Oslo, Norway, (2000).
21. N.E. Borlaug, *Ending World Hunger. The Promise of Biotechnology and the Threat of Antiscience Zealotry*, Plant Physiology, **124**, 487-490, (2000).
22. M. Giampietro and D. Pimental, *The Tightening Conflict: Population, Energy Use and the Ecology of Agriculture*, in **Negative Population Forum**, L. Grant ed., Negative Population Growth, Inc., Teaneck, N.J., (1993).
23. H.W. Kendall and D. Pimental, *Constraints on the Expansion of the Global Food Supply*, Ambio, **23**, 198-2005, (1994).
24. D. Pimental et al., *Natural Resources and Optimum Human Population*, Population and Environment, **15**, 347-369, (1994).
25. D. Pimental et al., *Environmental and Economic Costs of Soil Erosion and Conservation Benefits*, Science, **267**, 1117-1123, (1995).
26. D. Pimental et al., *Natural Resources and Optimum Human Population*, Population and Environment, **15**, 347-369, (1994).
27. D. Pimental and M. Pimental, *Food Energy and Society*, University Press of Colorado, Niwot, Colorado, (1996).
28. D. Pimental et al., *Environmental and Economic Costs of Soil Erosion and Conservation Benefits*, Science, **267**, 1117-1123, (1995).
29. RS and NAS, *The Royal Society and the National Academy of Sciences on Population Growth and Sustainability*, Population and Development Review, **18**, 375-378, (1992).
30. A.M. Altieri, *Agroecology: The Science of Sustainable Agriculture*, Westview Press, Boulder, Colorado, (1995).
31. G. Conway, *The Doubly Green Revolution*, Cornell University Press, (1997).
32. J. Dreze and A. Sen, *Hunger and Public Action*, Oxford University Press, (1991).
33. G. Bridger, and M. de Soissons, *Famine in Retreat?*, Dent, London, (1970).
34. W. Brandt, *World Armament and World Hunger: A Call for Action*, Victor Gollanz Ltd., London, (1982).
35. A.K.M.A. Chowdhury and L.C. Chen, *The Dynamics of Contemporary Famine*, Ford Foundation, Dacca, Pakistan, (1977)
36. J. Shepard, *The Politics of Starvation*, Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, Washington D.C., (1975).
37. M.E. Clark, *Ariadne's Thread: The Search for New Modes of Thinking*, St. Martin's Press, New York, (1989).
38. J.-C. Chesnais, *The Demographic Transition*, Oxford, (1992).
39. C.M. Cipola, *The Economic History of World Population*, Penguin Books Ltd., (1974).
40. E. Draper, *Birth Control in the Modern World*, Penguin Books, Ltd., (1972).
41. Draper Fund Report No. 15, *Towards Smaller Families: The Crucial Role of the Private Sector*, Population Crisis Committee, 1120 Nineteenth Street, N.W., Washington D.C. 20036, (1986).
42. E. Eckholm, *Losing Ground: Environmental Stress and World Food Prospects*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1975).

43. E. Havemann, *Birth Control*, Time-Life Books, (1967).
44. J. Jacobsen, *Promoting Population Stabilization: Incentives for Small Families*, Worldwatch Paper 54, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1983).
45. N. Keyfitz, *Applied Mathematical Demography*, Wiley, New York, (1977).
46. W. Latz (ed.), *Future Demographic Trends*, Academic Press, New York, (1979).
47. World Bank, *Poverty and Hunger: Issues and Options for Food Security in Developing Countries*, Washington D.C., (1986).
48. J.E. Cohen, *How Many People Can the Earth Support?*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1995).
49. J. Amos, *Climate Food Crisis to Deepen*, BBC News (5 September, 2005).
50. J. Vidal and T. Ratford, *One in Six Countries Facing Food Shortage*, The Guardian, (30 June, 2005).
51. J. Mann, *Biting the Environment that Feeds Us*, The Washington Post, July 29, 1994.
52. G.R. Lucas, Jr., and T.W. Ogletree, (editors), *Lifeboat Ethics. The Moral Dilemmas of World Hunger*, Harper and Row, New York.
53. J.L. Jacobson, *Gender Bias: Roadblock to Sustainable Development*, Worldwatch Paper 110, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1992).
54. J. Gever, R. Kaufmann, D. Skole and C. Vorosmarty, *Beyond Oil: The Threat to Food and Fuel in the Coming Decades*, Ballinger, Cambridge MA, (1986).
55. M. ul Haq, *The Poverty Curtain: Choices for the Third World*, Columbia University Pres, New York, (1976).
56. H. Le Bras, *La Planète au Village*, Datar, Paris, (1993).
57. E. Mayr, *Population, Species and Evolution*, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, (1970).
58. Patz, J. A., Campbell-Lendrum, D., Holloway, T. and Foley, J. A. *Impact of regional climate change on human health.* Nature **438**, 310-317 (2005).
59. Basu, R. and Samet, J. M. *Relation between elevated ambient temperature and mortality: a review of the epidemiologic evidence.* Epidemiol. Rev. **24**, 190-202 (2002).
60. Kovats, R. S. and Hajat, S. *Heat stress and public health: a critical review.* Annu. Rev. Publ. Health **29**, 41-55 (2008).
61. Leon, L. R. *Pathophysiology of Heat Stroke* **Vol. 7** (Colloquium Series on Integrated Systems Physiology: From Molecule to Function to Disease, Morgan Claypool Life Sciences, 2015).
62. Ostro, B. D., Roth, L. A., Green, R. S. and Basu, R. *Estimating the mortality effect of the July 2006 Californi a heat wave.* Environ. Res. **109**, 614-619 (2009).
63. Glas er, J. et al. *Climate change and the emergent epidemic of CKD from heat stress in rural communities: the case for heat stress nephropathy.* Clin. J. Am. Soc. Nephrol. **11**, 1472-1483 (2016).
64. Robine, J.-M. et al. *Death toll exceeded 70,000 in Europe during the summer of 2003.* C. R. Biol. **331**, 171-178 (2008).
65. Sillmann, J. and Roeckner, E. *Indices for extreme events in proje ctions of anthropogenic climate change.* Climatic Change **86**, 83-104 (2008).

66. Meeh l, G. A. and Teb aldi, C. *More intense, more frequent, and longer lasting heat waves in the 21st century*. Science **305**, 994-997 (2004).
67. Orlowsky, B. and Seneviratne, S. *Global changes in extreme events: regional and seasonal dimension*. Climatic Change **110**, 669-696 (2012).
68. Tebaldi, C., Hayhoe, K., Arblaster, J. M. and Meehl, G. A. *Going to the extremes*. Climatic Change **79**, 185-211 (2006).
69. Tebaldi, C. and Wehner, M. F. *Benefits of mitigation for future heat extremes under RCP4.5 compared to RCP8.5*. Climatic Change http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s10584-016-1605-5 (2016).
70. Sterl, A. et al. *When can we expect extremely high sur face temperatures?* Geophys. Res. Lett. **35**, L14703 (2008).
71. Huang, C. et al. *Projecting future heat-related mortality under climate change scenarios: a systematic review*. Environ. Health Persp. **119**, 1681-1690 (2011).
72. Guo, Y. et al. *Global variation in the effects of ambient temperature on mortality: a systematic evaluation*. J. Epidemiol. **25**, 781-789 (2014).
73. Luber, G. snd McGeehin, M. *Climate change and extreme heat events*. Am. J. Prev. Med. **35**, 429-435 (2008).-
74. Bouchama, A. and Knochel, J. P. *Heat stroke*. New. Engl. J. Med. **346**, 1978-1988 (2002).
75. Bobb, J. F., Peng, R. D., Bell, M. L. and Dominici, F. *Heat-related mortality and adaptation to heat in the United States*. Environ. Health Persp. **122**, 811-816 (2014).
76. Gasparrini, A. et al. *Temporal vari ation in heat-mortality associations: a multi-country study*. Environ. Health Persp. **123**, 1200-1207 (2015).
77. Lowe, D., Ebi, K. L. and Forsberg, B. *Heatwave early warning systems and adaptation advice to reduce human health consequences of he atwaves*. Int. J. Environ. Res. Public Health **8**, 4623-4648 (2011).
78. Hanna, E. G. and Tait, P. W. *Limitations to thermoregulation and acclimatization challenge human adaptation to global warming*. Int. J. Environ. Res. Publ. Health. **12**, 8034-8074 (2015).
79. Sherwood, S. C. and Huber, M. *An adaptability limit to climate change due to heat stress*. Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA **107**, 9552-9555 (201
80. Whitman, S. et al. *Mortality in Chicago attributed to the July 1995 heat wave*. Am. J. Public Health **87**, 1515-1518 (1997).
81. Dousset, B. et al. *Satellite monitoring of summer he at waves in the Paris metropolitan area*. Int. J. Climatol. **31**, 313-323 (2011).
82. Shaposhnikov, D. et al. *Mortality related to air pollution with the Moscow he at wave and wildfire of 2010*. Epidemiology **25**, 359-364 (2014).
83. Barnett, A. G., Tong, S. and Clements, A. *What measure of temperature is the best predic tor of mortality?* Environ. Res. **110**, 604-611 (2010).
84. Willett, K. M. and Sherwood, S. *Exceedance of heat index thresholds for 15 regions under a warming climate using the wet-bulb globe temperature*. Int. J. Climatol. **32**, 161-177 (2012).

85. Argüeso, D., Di Luca, A., Perkins-Kirkpatrick, S. and Evans, J. P. *Seasonal mean temperature changes control future heatwaves*. Geophys. Res. Lett. **43**, 7653-7660 (2016).
86. Jones, B. and O'Neill, B. *Spatially explicit global population scenarios consistent with t he Shared Socioeconomic Pathways*. Environ. Res. Lett. **11**, 084003 (2016).
87. Diffenbaugh, N. S. and Field, C. B. *Changes in ecological ly critical terrestrial climate conditions*. Science **341**, 486-492 (2013).
88. Mitchell, D. et al. *Attributing human mortality during extreme heat waves to anthropogenic climate change*. Environ. Res. Lett. **11**, 074006 (2016).

Chapter 7

OTHER SERIOUS DANGERS TO OUR FUTURE

Besides the dangers from the COVID-19 pandemic and from the threat of catastrophic climate change, on which we have been focusing, we must consider the following dangers to our long-term future:

7.1 Militarism and the danger of a thermonuclear war

Military-industrial complexes throughout the world involve a circular flow of money. The vast profits from arms industries are used to buy the votes of politicians, who then vote for obscenely bloated "defence" budgets. Military-industrial complexes need enemies. Without them they would wither. Thus, tensions are manufactured by corrupt politicians in the pay of arms industries. As Arundhati Roy famously observed, "Once weapons were manufactured to fight wars. Now wars are manufactured to sell weapons." Donald Trump has recently threatened to attack both Iran and North Korea with nuclear weapons. The United States, under Trump, is also threatening both Russia and China. Any such conflict could escalate uncontrollably into an all-destroying global thermonuclear war.

7.2 The danger of an extremely widespread famine

There is a danger that population growth, climate change and the end of the fossil fuel era cound combine to produce an extremely large-scale global famine by the middle of the present century. Such a famine might involve several billion people, rather than millions.

7.3 The global refugee crisis

The number of refugees from both conflicts and climate change is incresing rapidly. Several million refugees have fled from wars in the Middle East. Meanwhile, drought and rising temperatures in Africa have also produced millions of refugees, anxious for a better life in Europe. Similarly, in the western hemisphere, both conflicts and climate change have produced a stream of desparate people, traveling through Mexico to the southern borders of the United States. There they have been treated in an extremely cruel way by the Trump administration. Young children, infants, have been separatedfrom their parents and put into cages.

7.4 The loss of democratic institutions and drift towards neo-fascism

Most notably in the United States and Brazil, but also in a number of other countries, such as Hungary, Turkey and India, there has been a loss of popular control over the institutions of government, and a drift towards authoritarian rule, police brutality, and neo-fascism. Remembering the rise of fascism in Europe in the 1930's we can see worryingly similar trends today.

7.5 Apocalyptic loss of biodiversity

In geologically-observed extinction events, such as the Permian-Triassic Extinction, more than 90 percent of all terrestrial vertebrates and marine species were lost forever. It may be that our present episode of human-caused climate change will ultimately lead to a similar mass extinction; but we can already see an alarming loss of biodiversity as the result of human activities such as over-use of pesticides and encroachment on habitat. A new mass extinction has already started.

7.6 Intolerable economic inequality

Intolerable and unjust economic inequality is increasing rapidly, both within and between nations. Statistics show that half of the world's net wealth belongs to the top 1%. They own as much as the remaining 99% of the world's peoples, the other 7.4 billion of us.

7.7 The threat of thermonuclear war

Figure 7.1: **One of a series of prints which the German artist Käthe Kollwitz (1867-1945) made as a protest against the atrocities of World War I.**

Figure 7.2: **Another anti-war print by Käthe Kollwitz.**

7.8 Children of Hiroshima and Nagasaki

On August 6, 1945, at 8:15 in the morning, an atomic bomb was exploded in the air over Hiroshima. The force of the explosion was equivalent to twenty thousand tons of T.N.T.. Out of a city of two hundred and fifty thousand people, almost one hundred thousand were killed by the bomb; and another hundred thousand were hurt.

In some places, near the center of the city, people were completely vaporized, so that only their shadows on the pavement marked the places where they had been. Many people who were not killed by the blast or by burns from the explosion, were trapped under the wreckage of their houses. Unable to move, they were burned to death in the fire which followed.

Some accounts of the destruction of Hiroshima, written by children who survived it, have been collected by Professor Arata Osada. Among them is the following account, written by a boy named Hisato Ito. He was 11 years old when the atomic bomb was exploded over the city:

"On the morning of August 5th (we went) to Hiroshima to see my brother, who was at college there. My brother spent the night with us in a hotel... On the morning of the 6th, my mother was standing near the entrance, talking with the hotel proprietor before paying the bill, while I played with the cat. It was then that a violent flash of blue-white light swept in through the doorway."

"I regained consciousness after a little while, but everything was dark. I had been flung to the far end of the hall, and was lying under a pile of debris caused by the collapse of two floors of the hotel. Although I tried to crawl out of this, I could not move. The fine central pillar, of which the proprietor was so proud, lay flat in front of me. "

"I closed my eyes and was quite overcome, thinking that I was going to die, when I heard my mother calling my name. At the sound of her voice, I opened my eyes; and then I saw the flames creeping close to me. I called frantically to my mother, for I knew that I should be burnt alive if I did not escape at once. My mother pulled away some burning boards and saved me. I shall never forget how happy I felt at that moment - like a bird let out of a cage."

"Everything was so altered that I felt bewildered. As far as my eyes could see, almost all the houses were destroyed and on fire. People passed by, their bodies red, as if they had been peeled. Their cries were pitiful. Others were dead. It was impossible to go farther along the street on account of the bodies, the ruined houses, and the badly wounded who lay about moaning. I did not know what to do; and as I turned to the west, I saw that the flames were drawing nearer.."

"At the water's edge, opposite the old Sentai gardens, I suddenly realized that I had become separated from my mother. The people who had been burned were plunging into the river Kobashi, and then were crying our: 'It's hot! It's hot!' They were too weak to swim, and they drowned while crying for help."

In 1951, shortly after writing this account, Hisato Ito died of radiation sickness. His mother died soon afterward from the same cause.

When the news of the atomic bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki reached Albert

Figure 7.3: **It was like a scene from hell. Source: SGI International.**

Einstein, his sorrow and remorse were extreme. During the remainder of his life, he did his utmost to promote the cause of peace and to warn humanity against the dangers of nuclear warfare.

When Otto Hahn, the discoverer of fission, heard the news of the destruction of Hiroshima, he and nine other German atomic scientists were being held prisoner at an English country house near Cambridge. Hahn became so depressed that his colleagues feared that he would take his own life.

Among the scientists who had worked at Chicago and Los Alamos, there was relief that the war was over; but as descriptions of Hiroshima and Nagasaki became available, there were also sharp feelings of guilt. Many scientists who had worked on the bomb project made great efforts to persuade the governments of the United States, England and Russia to agree to international control of atomic energy; but these efforts met with failure; and the nuclear arms race feared by Bohr developed with increasing momentum.

Figure 7.4: **Burned beyond recognition. Source: SGI International.**

Figure 7.5: **Memories of August 6. Source: SGI International.**

Figure 7.6: **The effects lasted a lifetime. Source: SGI International.**

Figure 7.7: **After the bombing. Source: SGI International.**

7.9 Targeting civilians

"The unleashed power of the atom has changed everything except our ways of thinking, and thus we drift towards unparalleled catastrophes."

"I don't know what will be used in the next world war, but the 4th will be fought with stones."

Albert Einstein

Figure 7.8: **Saint Paul's Cathedral during the London Blitz. Determined fire-fighting by citizens saved the cathedral from burning,** (Wikipedia)

Introduction

Today, the greatest threats facing human civilization and the biosphere are catastrophic climate change and nuclear war. Each of these could potentially destroy our civilization, kill most humans, and make most of our planet uninhabitable for most species, including our own.

The peoples of the world must unite and work with dedication to avoid these twin threats.

Targeting civilians

The erosion of ethical principles during World War II

When Hitler invaded Poland in September, 1939, US President Franklin Delano Roosevelt appealed to Great Britain, France, and Germany to spare innocent civilians from terror bombing. "The ruthless bombing from the air of civilians in unfortified centers of population during the course of the hostilities", Roosevelt said (referring to the use of air bombardment during World War I) "...has sickened the hearts of every civilized man and woman, and has profoundly shocked the conscience of humanity." He urged "every Government which may be engaged in hostilities publicly to affirm its determination that its armed forces shall in no event, and under no circumstances, undertake the bombardment from the air of civilian populations or of unfortified cities."

Two weeks later, British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain responded to Roosevelts appeal with the words: "Whatever the lengths to which others may go, His Majesty's Government will never resort to the deliberate attack on women and children and other civilians for purposes of mere terrorism."

Much was destroyed during World War II, and among the casualties of the war were the ethical principles that Roosevelt and Chamberlain announced at its outset. At the time of Roosevelt and Chamberlains declarations, terror bombing of civilians had already begun in the Far East. On 22 and 23 September, 1937, Japanese bombers attacked civilian populations in Nanjing and Canton. The attacks provoked widespread protests. The British Under Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, Lord Cranborne, wrote: "Words cannot express the feelings of profound horror with which the news of these raids has been received by the whole civilized world. They are often directed against places far from the actual area of hostilities. The military objective, where it exists, seems to take a completely second place. The main object seems to be to inspire terror by the indiscriminate slaughter of civilians..."

On the 25th of September, 1939, Hitlers air force began a series of intense attacks on Warsaw. Civilian areas of the city, hospitals marked with the Red Cross symbol, and fleeing refugees all were targeted in a effort to force the surrender of the city through terror. On the 14th of May, 1940, Rotterdam was also devastated. Between the 7th of September 1940 and the 10th of May 1941, the German Luftwaffe carried out massive air attacks on targets in Britain. By May, 1941, 43,000 British civilians were killed and more than a million houses destroyed.

By the end of the war the United States and Great Britain were bombing of civilians on a far greater scale than Japan and Germany had ever done. For example, on July 24-28, 1943, British and American bombers attacked Hamburg with an enormous incendiary raid whose official intention was "the total destruction" of the city.

The result was a firestorm that did, if fact, lead to the total destruction of the city. One airman recalled, that "As far as I could see was one mass of fire. A sea of flame has been the description, and thats an understatement. It was so bright that I could read the target maps and adjust the bomb-sight." Another pilot was "...amazed at the awe-inspiring sight of the target area. It seemed as though the whole of Hamburg was on fire from one end to the other and a huge column of smoke was towering well above us - and we were on 20,000 feet! It all seemed almost incredible and, when I realized that I was looking at a city with a population of two millions, or about that, it became almost frightening to think of what must be going on down there in Hamburg."

Below, in the burning city, temperatures reached 1400 degrees Fahrenheit, a temperature at which lead and aluminum have long since liquefied. Powerful winds sucked new air into the firestorm. There were reports of babies being torn by the high winds from their mothers arms and sucked into the flames. Of the 45,000 people killed, it has been estimated that 50 percent were women and children and many of the men killed were elderly, above military age. For weeks after the raids, survivors were plagued by "...droves of vicious rats, grown strong by feeding on the corpses that were left unburied within the rubble as well as the potatoes and other food supplies lost beneath the broken buildings."

The German cities Kassel, Pforzheim, Mainz, Dresden and Berlin were similarly destroyed, and in Japan, US bombing created firestorms in many cities, for example Tokyo, Kobe and Yokohama. In Tokyo alone, incendiary bombing caused more than 100,000 civilian casualties.

Hiroshima and Nagasaki

On August 6, 1945, at 8:15 in the morning, an atomic bomb was exploded in the air over Hiroshima. The force of the explosion was equivalent to twenty thousand tons of T.N.T.. Out of a city of two hundred and fifty thousand people, almost one hundred thousand were killed by the bomb; and another hundred thousand were hurt.

In some places, near the center of the city, people were completely vaporized, so that only their shadows on the pavement marked the places where they had been. Many people who were not killed by the blast or by burns from the explosion, were trapped under the wreckage of their houses. Unable to move, they were burned to death in the fire which followed.

Some accounts of the destruction of Hiroshima, written by children who survived it, have been collected by Professor Arata Osada. Among them is the following account, written by a boy named Hisato Ito. He was 11 years old when the atomic bomb was exploded over the city:

"On the morning of August 5th (we went) to Hiroshima to see my brother, who was at college there. My brother spent the night with us in a hotel... On the morning of the 6th, my mother was standing near the entrance, talking with the hotel proprietor before paying the bill, while I played with the cat. It was then that a violent flash of blue-white light swept in through the doorway."

"I regained consciousness after a little while, but everything was dark. I had been flung to the far end of the hall, and was lying under a pile of debris caused by the collapse of two floors of the hotel. Although I tried to crawl out of this, I could not move. The fine central pillar, of which the proprietor was so proud, lay flat in front of me. "

"I closed my eyes and was quite overcome, thinking that I was going to die, when I heard my mother calling my name. At the sound of her voice, I opened my eyes; and then I saw the flames creeping close to me. I called frantically to my mother, for I knew that I should be burnt alive if I did not escape at once. My mother pulled away some burning boards and saved me. I shall never forget how happy I felt at that moment - like a bird let out of a cage."

"Everything was so altered that I felt bewildered. As far as my eyes could see, almost all the houses were destroyed and on fire. People passed by, their bodies red, as if they had been peeled. Their cries were pitiful. Others were dead. It was impossible to go farther along the street on account of the bodies, the ruined houses, and the badly wounded who lay about moaning. I did not know what to do; and as I turned to the west, I saw that the flames were drawing nearer.."

Figure 7.9: **Hiroshima** (duniverso.com.br)

“At the waters edge, opposite the old Sentai gardens, I suddenly realized that I had become separated from my mother. The people who had been burned were plunging into the river Kobashi, and then were crying out: ‘Its hot! Its hot! They were too weak to swim, and they drowned while crying for help.”

In 1951, shortly after writing this account, Hisato Ito died of radiation sickness. His mother died soon afterward from the same cause.

The postwar nuclear arms race

When the news of the atomic bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki reached Albert Einstein, his sorrow and remorse were extreme. During the remainder of his life, he did his utmost to promote the cause of peace and to warn humanity against the dangers of nuclear warfare. Together with Bertrand Russell and Joseph Rotblat he helped to found Pugwash Conferences on Science and World Affairs (Nobel Peace Prize 1995), an organization of scientists and other scholars devoted to world peace and to the abolition of nuclear weapons.

When Otto Hahn, the discoverer of fission, heard the news of the destruction of Hiroshima, he and nine other German atomic scientists were being held prisoner at an English

Figure 7.10: **Hiroshima. The greater absorption of thermal energy by dark colors resulted in the clothes pattern, in the tight-fitting areas on this survivor, being burnt into the skin.**(Public domain)

Figure 7.11: **Nagasaki before the nuclear explosion and firestorm.** (Public domain)

country house near Cambridge. Hahn became so depressed that his colleagues feared that he would take his own life.

World public opinion was also greatly affected by the indiscriminate destruction of human life in Hiroshima and Nagasaki. Shortly after the bombings, the French existentialist author Albert Camus wrote: "Our technical civilization has just reached its greatest level of savagery. We will have to choose, in the more or less near future, between collective suicide and the intelligent use of our scientific conquests. Before the terrifying prospects now available to humanity, we see even more clearly that peace is the only battle worth waging. This is no longer a prayer, but a demand to be made by all peoples to their governments - a demand to choose definitively between hell and reason."

Among the scientists who had worked at Chicago and Los Alamos, there was relief that the war was over; but as descriptions of Hiroshima and Nagasaki became available there were also sharp feelings of guilt. Many scientists who had worked on the bomb project made great efforts to persuade the governments of the United States, England and the Soviet Union to agree to international control of atomic energy; but these efforts met with failure; and the nuclear arms race developed with increasing momentum.

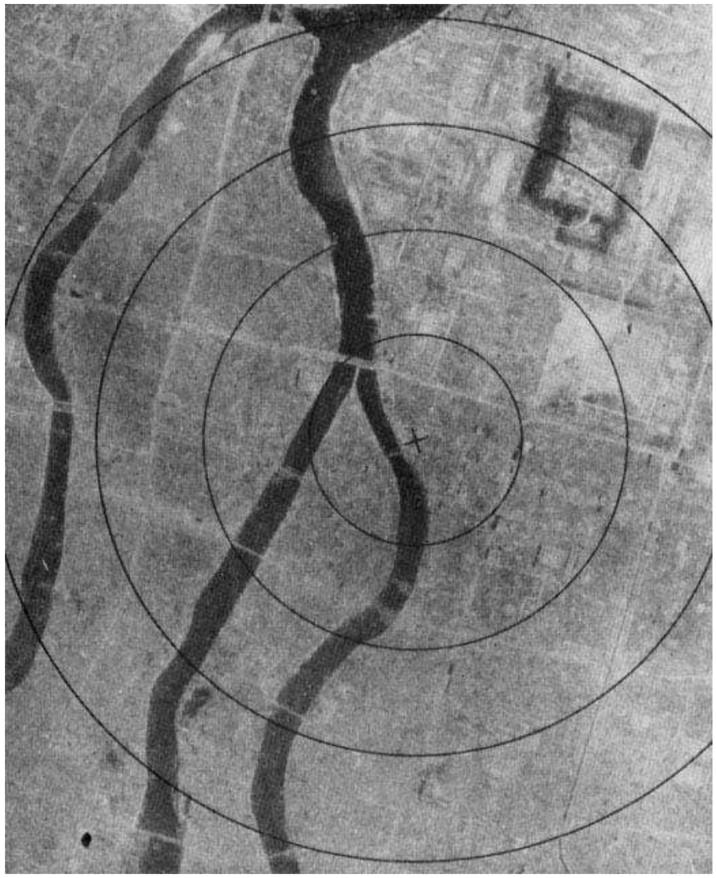


Figure 7.12: **Nagasaki afterwards.** (Public domain)

In 1946, the United States proposed the Baruch Plan to internationalize atomic energy, but the plan was rejected by the Soviet Union, which had been conducting its own secret nuclear weapons program since 1943. On August 29, 1949, the USSR exploded its first nuclear bomb. It had a yield equivalent to 21,000 tons of TNT, and had been constructed from Pu-239 produced in a nuclear reactor. Meanwhile the United Kingdom had begun to build its own nuclear weapons.

The explosion of the Soviet nuclear bomb caused feelings of panic in the United States, and President Truman authorized an all-out effort to build superbombs using thermonuclear reactions - the reactions that heat the sun and stars. The idea of using a U-235 fission bomb to trigger a thermonuclear reaction in a mixture of light elements had first been proposed by Enrico Fermi in a 1941 conversation with his Chicago colleague Edward Teller. After this conversation, Teller (perhaps the model for Stanley Kubrick's character Dr. Strangelove) became a fanatical advocate of the superbomb.

After Truman's go-ahead, the American program to build thermonuclear weapons made rapid progress, and on October 31, 1952, the first US thermonuclear device was exploded at Eniwetok Atoll in the Pacific Ocean. It had a yield of 10.4 megatons, that is to say it had an explosive power equivalent to 10,400,000 tons of TNT. Thus the first thermonuclear

Figure 7.13: **The United States exploded a hydrogen bomb near the island of Enewetak in the South Pacific in 1952. The explosive force of the bomb was 500 times greater than the bombs that destroyed Hiroshima and Nagasaki. The Soviet Union tested its first hydrogen bomb in 1953. In March, 1954, the US tested another hydrogen bomb at the Bikini Atoll in the Pacific Ocean. It was 1000 times more powerful than the Hiroshima bomb. The Japanese fishing boat, Lucky Dragon, was 130 kilometers from the Bikini explosion, but radioactive fallout from the test killed one crew member and made all the others seriously ill.** (Public domain)

Figure 7.14: **After discussing the Bikini test and its radioactive fallout with Joseph Rotblat, Lord Russell became concerned for the future of the human gene pool if large numbers of such bombs should ever be used in a war. To warn humanity of the danger, he wrote what came to be known as the Russell-Einstein Manifesto. On July 9, 1955, with Rotblat in the chair, Russell read the Manifesto to a packed press conference. The document contains the words: "Here then is the problem that we present to you, stark and dreadful and inescapable: Shall we put an end to the human race, or shall mankind renounce war?... There lies before us, if we choose, continual progress in happiness, knowledge and wisdom. Shall we, instead, choose death because we cannot forget our quarrels? We appeal as human beings to human beings: Remember your humanity, and forget the rest." Lord Russell devoted much of the remainder of his life to working for the abolition of nuclear weapons. Here he is seen in 1962 in Trafalgar Square, London, addressing a meeting of the Campaign for Nuclear Disarmament.** (Public domain)

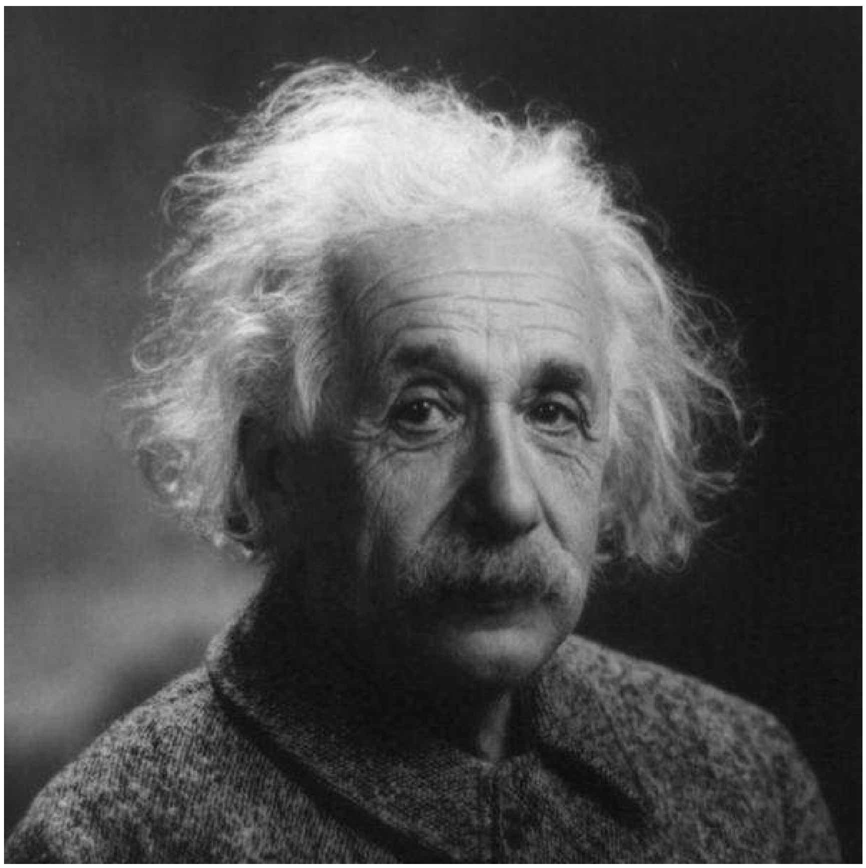


Figure 7.15: **Albert Einstein wrote: "The unleashed power of the atom has changed everything save our modes of thinking, and we thus drift toward unparalleled catastrophes." He also said, "I don't know what will be used in the next world war, but the 4th will be fought with stones."**(Wikimedia)

Figure 7.16: **Joseph Rotblat devoted the remainder of his life to working for peace and for the abolition of nuclear weapons. He became the president and guiding spirit of the Pugwash Conferences on Science and World Affairs, an organization of scientists and other scholars devoted to these goals. In his 1995 Nobel Peace Prize acceptance speech, Sir Joseph Rotblat (as he soon became) emphasized the same point that had been made in the Russell-Einstein Manifesto - that war itself must be eliminated in order to free civilization from the danger of nuclear destruction.** (Pugwash Conferences)

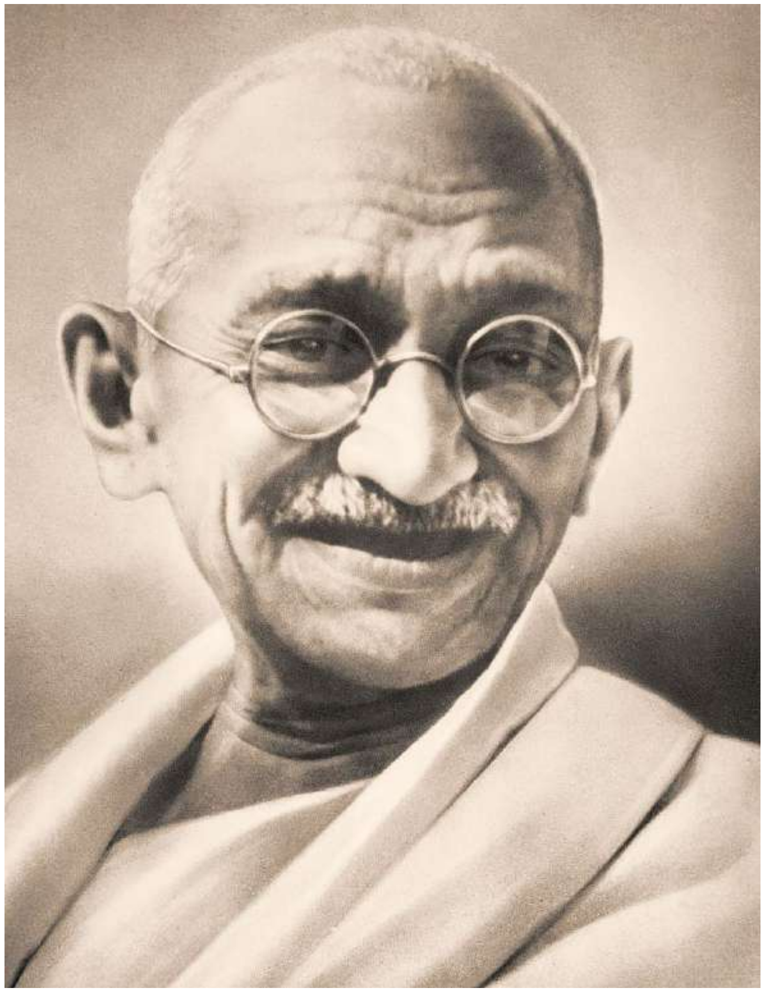


Figure 7.17: **To the insidious argument that "the end justifies the means", Mahatma Gandhi answered firmly: "They say 'means are after all means. I would say 'means are after all everything. As the means, so the end. Indeed the Creator has given us control (and that very limited) over means, none over end... The means may be likened to a seed, and the end to a tree; and there is the same inviolable connection between the means and the end as there is between the seed and the tree. Means and end are convertible terms in my philosophy of life." In other words, if evil means are used, the end achieved will be contaminated by the means used to achieve it. Gandhi's insight can be applied to the argument that the nuclear bombings that destroyed Hiroshima and Nagasaki helped to end World War II and were therefore justified. In fact, these terrible events lead to a nuclear arms race that still casts an extremely dark shadow over the future of human civilization.** (Public domain)

bomb was five hundred times as powerful as the bombs that had devastated Hiroshima and Nagasaki. Lighter versions of the device were soon developed, and these could be dropped from aircraft or delivered by rockets.

The Soviet Union and the United Kingdom were not far behind. In 1955 the Soviets exploded their first thermonuclear device, followed in 1957 by the UK. In 1961 the USSR exploded a thermonuclear bomb with a yield of 58 megatons. A bomb of this size, three thousand times the size of the Hiroshima bomb, would be able to totally destroy a city even if it missed it by 50 kilometers. Fall-out casualties would extend to a far greater distance.

In the late 1950s General Gavin, Chief of Army Research and Development in the United States, was asked by the Symington Committee, "If we got into a nuclear war and our strategic air force made an assault in force against Russia with nuclear weapons exploded in a way where the prevailing winds would carry them south-east over Russia, what would be the effect in the way of death?"

General Gavin replied: "Current planning estimates run on the order of several hundred million deaths. That would be either way depending on which way the wind blew. If the wind blew to the south-east they would be mostly in the USSR, although they would extend into the Japanese area and perhaps down into the Philippine area. If the wind blew the other way, they would extend well back into Western Europe."

Between October 16 and October 28, 1962, the Cuban Missile Crisis occurred, an incident in which the world came extremely close to a full-scale thermonuclear war. During the crisis, President Kennedy and his advisers estimated that the chance of an all-out nuclear war with Russia was 50%. Recently-released documents indicate that the probability of war was even higher than Kennedy's estimate. Robert McNamara, who was Secretary of Defense at the time, wrote later, "We came within a hairbreadth of nuclear war without realizing it... Its no credit to us that we missed nuclear war..."

In 1964 the first Chinese nuclear weapon was tested, and this was followed in 1967 by a Chinese thermonuclear bomb with a yield of 3.3 megatons. France quickly followed suit testing a fission bomb in 1966 and a thermonuclear bomb in 1968. In all about thirty nations contemplated building nuclear weapons, and many made active efforts to do so.

Because the concept of deterrence required an attacked nation to be able to retaliate massively even though many of its weapons might be destroyed by a preemptive strike, the production of nuclear warheads reached insane heights, driven by the collective paranoia of the Cold War. More than 50,000 nuclear warheads were produced worldwide, a large number of them thermonuclear. The collective explosive power of these warheads was equivalent to 20,000,000,000 tons of TNT, i.e. 4 tons for every man, woman and child on the planet, or, expressed differently, a million times the explosive power of the bomb that destroyed Hiroshima.

The end of the Cold War

In 1985, Michael Gorbachev (1931-) became the General Secretary of the Communist Party of the Soviet Union. Gorbachev had become convinced by his conversations with scientists that the policy of nuclear confrontation between the United States and the USSR was far too dangerous to be continued over a long period of time. If continued, sooner or later, through accident of miscalculation, it would result in a disaster of unprecedented proportions. Gorbachev also believed that the USSR was in need of reform, and he introduced two words to characterize what he felt was needed: *glasnost* (openness) and *perestroika* (reconstruction).

In 1986, US President Ronald Reagan met Mikhail Gorbachev in Reykjavik, Iceland. The two leaders hoped that they might find ways of reducing the danger that a thermonuclear Third World War would be fought between their two countries. Donald Reagan, the White House Chief of Staff, was present at the meeting, and he records the following conversation: "At one point in time Gorbachev said 'I would like to do away with all nuclear weapons. And Reagan hit the table and said 'Well why didn't you say so in the first place! Thats exactly what I want to do! And if you want to do away with all the weapons, Ill agree to do away with all the weapons. Of course well do away with all the weapons. 'Good, [said Gorbachev] 'Thats great, but you must confine SDI to the laboratory. 'No I wont, said Reagan. 'No way. SDI continues. I told you that I am never going to give up SDI." The SDI program, which seemingly prevented Presidents Reagan and Gorbachev from reaching an agreement to completely eliminate their nuclear weapons was Reagan's "Star Wars" program which (in violation of the ABM Treaty) proposed to set up a system of of radar, satellites and missiles to shoot down attacking missiles.

Gorbachev s reforms effectively granted self-government to the various parts of the Soviet Union, and he himself soon resigned from his post as its leader, since the office was no longer meaningful. Most of the newly-independent parts of the old USSR began to introduce market economies, and an astonished world witnessed a series of unexpected and rapid changes: On September 10, 1989 Hungarian government opened its border for East German refugees; on November 9, 1989 Berlin Wall was reopened; on December 22, 1989 Brandenburg Gate was opened; and on October 3, 1990 Germany was reunited. The Cold War was over!

The Non-Proliferation Treaty

During the Cold War, a number of international treaties attempting to reduce the global nuclear peril had been achieved after much struggle. Among these, the 1968 Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (NPT) has special importance. The NPT was designed to prevent the spread of nuclear weapons beyond the five nations that already had them; to provide assurance that "peaceful" nuclear activities of non-nuclear-weapon states would not be used to produce such weapons; to promote peaceful use of nuclear energy to the greatest extent consistent with non-proliferation of nuclear weapons; and finally, to ensure that definite steps towards complete nuclear disarmament would be taken by all states, as well steps towards comprehensive control of conventional armaments (Article VI).

The non-nuclear-weapon states insisted that Article VI be included in the treaty as a price for giving up their own ambitions. The full text of Article VI is as follows: "Each of the Parties to the Treaty undertakes to pursue negotiations in good faith on effective measures relating cessation of the nuclear arms race at an early date and to nuclear disarmament, and on a Treaty on general and complete disarmament under strict international control."

The NPT has now been signed by 187 countries and has been in force as international law since 1970. However, Israel, India, Pakistan, and Cuba have refused to sign, and North Korea, after signing the treaty, withdrew from it in 1993. Israel began producing nuclear weapons in the late 1960s (with the help of a reactor provided by France) and the country is now believed to possess 100-150 of them, including neutron bombs. Israels policy is one of "nuclear opacity" - i.e., visibly possessing nuclear weapons while denying their existence.

South Africa, with the help of Israel and France, also produced nuclear weapons, which it tested in the Indian Ocean in 1979. In 1991 however, South Africa signed the NPT and destroyed its nuclear weapons.

India produced what it described as a "peaceful nuclear explosion" in 1974. By 1989 Indian scientists were making efforts to purify the lithium-6 isotope, a key component of the much more powerful thermonuclear bombs. In 1998, India conducted underground tests of nuclear weapons, and is now believed to have roughly 60 warheads, constructed from Pu-239 produced in "peaceful" reactors.

Pakistan's efforts to obtain nuclear weapons were spurred by India's 1974 "peaceful nuclear explosion". Zulfiquar Ali Bhutto, who initiated Pakistan's program, first as Minister of Fuel, Power and Natural Resources, and later as President and Prime Minister, declared: "There is a Christian Bomb, a Jewish Bomb and a Hindu Bomb. There must be an Islamic Bomb! We will get it even if we have to starve - even if we have to eat grass!" As early as 1970, the laboratory of Dr. Abdul Qadeer Khan, (a metallurgist who was to become Pakistan's leading nuclear bomb maker) had been able to obtain from a Dutch firm the high-speed ultracentrafuges needed for uranium enrichment. With unlimited financial support and freedom from auditing requirements, Dr. Khan purchased restricted items needed for nuclear weapon construction from companies in Europe and the United States. In the process, Dr. Khan became an extremely wealthy man. With additional help from China, Pakistan was ready to test five nuclear weapons in 1998. The Indian and Pakistani nuclear bomb tests, conducted in rapid succession, presented the world with the danger that these devastating bombs would be used in the conflict over Kashmir. Indeed, Pakistan announced that if a war broke out using conventional weapons, Pakistan's nuclear weapons would be used "at an early stage".

In Pakistan, Dr. A.Q. Khan became a great national hero. He was presented as the person who had saved Pakistan from attack by India by creating Pakistan's own nuclear weapons. In a Washington Post article[1] Pervez Hoodbhoy wrote: "Nuclear nationalism was the order of the day as governments vigorously promoted the bomb as the symbol of Pakistan's high scientific achievement and self-respect, and as the harbinger of a new Muslim era." Similar manifestations of nuclear nationalism could also be seen in India after India's 1998 bomb tests.

Early in 2004, it was revealed that Dr. Khan had for years been selling nuclear secrets and equipment to Lybia, Iran and North Korea. However, observers considered that it was unlikely that Khan would be tried for these offenses, since a trial might implicate

[1] 1 February, 2004

Pakistan's army as well as two of its former prime ministers. Furthermore, Dr. Khan has the strong support of Pakistan's Islamic fundamentalists. Recent assassinations emphasize the precariousness of Pakistan's government. There is a danger that it may be overthrown by Islamic fundamentalists, who would give Pakistan's nuclear weapons to terrorist organizations. This type of danger is a general one associated with nuclear proliferation. As more and more countries obtain nuclear weapons, it becomes increasingly likely that one of them will undergo a revolution, during the course of which nuclear weapons will fall into the hands of subnational organizations.

Article VIII of the Non-Proliferation Treaty provides for a conference to be held every five years to make sure that the NPT is operating as intended. In the 1995 NPT Review Conference, the lifetime of the treaty was extended indefinitely, despite the general dissatisfaction with the bad faith of the nuclear weapon states: They had dismantled some of their warheads but had taken no significant steps towards complete nuclear disarmament. The 2000 NPT Review Conference made it clear that the nuclear weapons states could not postpone indefinitely their commitment to nuclear disarmament by linking it to general and complete disarmament, since these are separate and independent goals of Article VI. The Final Document of the conference also contained 13 Practical Steps for Nuclear Disarmament, including ratification of a Comprehensive Test Ban Treaty (CTBT), negotiations on a Fissile Materials Cutoff Treaty, the preservation and strengthening of the Anti-Ballistic Missile (ABM) Treaty, greater transparency with regard to nuclear arsenals, and making irreversability a principle of nuclear reductions. Another review conference is scheduled for 2010, a year that marks the 55th anniversary of the destruction of Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

Something must be said about the concept of irreversability mentioned in the Final Document of the 2000 NPT Review Conference. Nuclear weapons can be destroyed in a completely irreversible way by getting rid of the special isotopes which they use. In the case of highly enriched uranium (HEU), this can be done by mixing it thoroughly with ordinary unenriched uranium. In natural uranium, the rare fissile isotope U-235 is only 0.7%. The remaining 99.3% consists of the common isotope, U-238, which under ordinary circumstances cannot undergo fission. If HEU is mixed with a sufficient quantity of natural uranium, so that the concentration of U-235 falls below 20%, it can no longer be used in nuclear weapons.

Getting rid of plutonium irreversibly is more difficult, but it could be cast into large concrete blocks and dumped into extremely deep parts of the ocean (e.g. the Japan Trench) where recovery would be almost impossible. Alternatively, it could be placed in the bottom of very deep mine shafts, which could afterwards be destroyed by means of conventional explosives. None of the strategic arms reduction treaties, neither the SALT treaties nor the 2002 Moscow Treaty, incorporate irreversability.

The recent recommendation by four distinguished German statesmen that all short-range nuclear weapons be destroyed is particularly interesting [13]. The strongest argument for the removal of US tactical nuclear weapons from Europe is the danger of collapse of the NPT. The 2005 NPT Review Conference was a disaster, and there is a danger that at the 2010 Review Conference, the NPT will collapse entirely because of the discriminatory position of the nuclear weapon states (NWS) and their failure to honor their commitments under Article VI. NATOs present nuclear weapon policy also violates the NPT, and correcting this violation would help to save the 2010 Review Conference from failure.

At present, the air forces of the European countries in which the US nuclear weapons are stationed perform regular training exercises in which they learn how to deliver the weapons. This violates the spirit, and probably also the letter, of Article IV, which prohibits the transfer of nuclear weapons from an NWS to a non-NWS. The "nuclear sharing" proponents maintain that such transfers would only happen in an emergency; but there is nothing in the NPT saying that the treaty would not hold under all circumstances. Furthermore, NATO would be improved, rather than damaged, by giving up "nuclear sharing". If President Obama wishes to fulfill his campaign promises [14] - if he wishes to save the NPT - a logical first step would be to remove US tactical nuclear weapons from Europe.

Flaws in the concept of nuclear deterrence

Before discussing other defects in the concept of deterrence, it must be said very clearly that the idea of "massive nuclear retaliation" is completely unacceptable from an ethical point of view. The doctrine of retaliation, performed on a massive scale, violates not only the principles of common human decency and common sense, but also the ethical principles of every major religion. Retaliation is especially contrary to the central commandment of Christianity which tells us to love our neighbor, even if he or she is far away from us, belonging to a different ethnic or political group, and even if our distant neighbor has seriously injured us. This principle has a fundamental place not only in in Christianity but also in Buddhism. "Massive retaliation" completely violates these very central ethical principles, which are not only clearly stated and fundamental but also very practical, since they prevent escalatory cycles of revenge and counter-revenge.

Contrast Christian ethics with estimates of the number of deaths that would follow a US nuclear strike against Russia: Several hundred million deaths. These horrifying estimates shock us not only because of the enormous magnitude of the expected mortality, but also because the victims would include people of every kind: women, men, old people, children and infants, completely irrespective of any degree of guilt that they might have. As a result of such an attack, many millions of people in neutral countries would also die. This type of killing has to be classified as genocide.

When a suspected criminal is tried for a wrongdoing, great efforts are devoted to clarifying the question of guilt or innocence. Punishment only follows if guilt can be proved beyond any reasonable doubt. Contrast this with the totally indiscriminate mass slaughter that results from a nuclear attack!

It might be objected that disregard for the guilt or innocence of victims is a universal characteristic of modern war, since statistics show that, with time, a larger and larger percentage of the victims have been civilians, and especially children. For example, the air attacks on Coventry during World War II, or the fire bombings of Dresden and Tokyo, produced massive casualties which involved all segments of the population with complete disregard for the question of guilt or innocence. The answer, I think, is that modern war has become generally unacceptable from an ethical point of view, and this unacceptability is epitomized in nuclear weapons.

The enormous and indiscriminate destruction produced by nuclear weapons formed the background for an historic 1996 decision by the International Court of Justice in the Hague. In response to questions put to it by WHO and the UN General Assembly, the Court ruled that "the threat and use of nuclear weapons would generally be contrary to the rules of international law applicable in armed conflict, and particularly the principles and rules of humanitarian law." The only *possible* exception to this general rule might be "an extreme circumstance of self-defense, in which the very survival of a state would be at stake". But the Court refused to say that even in this extreme circumstance the threat or use of nuclear weapons would be legal. It left the exceptional case undecided. In addition, the World Court added unanimously that "there exists an obligation to pursue in good faith *and bring to a conclusion* negotiations leading to nuclear disarmament in all its aspects under strict international control."

This landmark decision has been criticized by the nuclear weapon states as being decided "by a narrow margin", but the structuring of the vote made the margin seem more narrow than it actually was. Seven judges voted against Paragraph 2E of the decision (the paragraph which states that the threat or use of nuclear weapons would be generally illegal, but which mentions as a possible exception the case where a nation might be defending itself from an attack that threatened its very existence.) Seven judges voted for the paragraph, with the President of the Court, Muhammad Bedjaoui of Algeria casting the deciding vote. Thus the Court adopted it, seemingly by a narrow margin. But three of the judges who voted against 2E did so because they believed that no possible exception should be mentioned! Thus, if the vote had been slightly differently structured, the result would have be ten to four.

Of the remaining four judges who cast dissenting votes, three represented nuclear weapons states, while the fourth thought that the Court ought not to have accepted the questions from WHO and the UN. However Judge Schwebel from the United States, who voted against Paragraph 2E, nevertheless added, in a separate opinion, "It cannot be accepted that the use of nuclear weapons on a scale which would - or could - result in the deaths of many millions in indiscriminate inferno and by far-reaching fallout, have pernicious effects in space and time, and render uninhabitable much of the earth, could be lawful." Judge Higgins from the UK, the first woman judge in the history of the Court, had problems with the word "generally" in Paragraph 2E and therefore voted against it, but she thought that a more profound analysis might have led the Court to conclude in favor of illegality in all circumstances. Judge Fleischhauer of Germany said in his separate opinion, "The nuclear weapon is, in many ways, the negation of the humanitarian considerations underlying the law applicable in armed conflict and the principle of neutrality. The nuclear weapon cannot distinguish between civilian and military targets. It causes immeasurable suffering. The radiation released by it is unable to respect the territorial integrity of neutral States."

President Bedjaoui, summarizing the majority opinion, called nuclear weapons "the ultimate evil", and said "By its nature, the nuclear weapon, this blind weapon, destabilizes humanitarian law, the law of discrimination in the use of weapons... The ultimate aim of every action in the field of nuclear arms will always be nuclear disarmament, an aim which is no longer utopian and which all have a duty to pursue more actively than ever."

Thus the concept of nuclear deterrence is not only unacceptable from the standpoint of ethics; it is also contrary to international law. The World Courts 1996 advisory Opinion unquestionably also represents the opinion of the majority of the worlds peoples. Although no formal plebiscite has been taken, the votes in numerous resolutions of the UN General Assembly speak very clearly on this question. For example the New Agenda Resolution (53/77Y) was adopted by the General Assembly on 4 December 1998 by a massively affirmative vote, in which only 18 out of the 170 member states voted against the resolution.[2] The New Agenda Resolution proposes numerous practical steps towards complete nuclear disarmament, and it calls on the Nuclear-Weapon States "to demonstrate an unequivocal commitment to the speedy and total elimination of their nuclear weapons and without delay to pursue in good faith and bring to a conclusion negotiations leading to the elimination of these weapons, thereby fulfilling their obligations under Article VI of the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons (NPT)". Thus, in addition to being ethically unacceptable and contrary to international law, nuclear weapons also contrary to the principles of democracy.

Having said these important things, we can now turn to some of the other defects in the concept of nuclear deterrence. One important defect is that nuclear war may occur through accident or miscalculation - through technical defects or human failings. This possibility is made greater by the fact that despite the end of the Cold War, thousands of missiles carrying nuclear warheads are still kept on a "hair-trigger" state of alert with a quasi-automatic reaction time measured in minutes. There is a constant danger that a nuclear war will be triggered by error in evaluating the signal on a radar screen. For example, the BBC reported recently that a group of scientists and military leaders are worried that a small asteroid entering the earths atmosphere and exploding could trigger a nuclear war if mistaken for a missile strike.

A number of prominent political and military figures (many of whom have ample knowledge of the system of deterrence, having been part of it) have expressed concern about the danger of accidental nuclear war. Colin S. Grey[3] expressed this concern as follows: "The problem, indeed the enduring problem, is that we are resting our future upon a nuclear deterrence system concerning which we cannot tolerate even a single malfunction." General Curtis E. LeMay[4] has written, "In my opinion a general war will grow through a series of political miscalculations and accidents rather than through any deliberate attack by either side." Bruce G. Blair[5] has remarked that "It is obvious that the rushed nature of the process, from warning to decision to action, risks causing a catastrophic mistake."...

---

[2]Of the 18 countries that voted against the New Agenda resolution, 10 were Eastern European countries hoping for acceptance into NATO, whose votes seem to have been traded for increased probability of acceptance.

[3]Chairman, National Institute for Public Policy

[4]Founder and former Commander in Chief of the United States Strategic Air Command

[5]Brookings Institute

"This system is an accident waiting to happen."

Today, the system that is supposed to give us security is called Mutually Assured Destruction, appropriately abbreviated as MAD. It is based on the idea of deterrence, which maintains that because of the threat of massive retaliation, no sane leader would start a nuclear war.

Before discussing other defects in the concept of deterrence, it must be said very clearly that the idea of "massive nuclear retaliation" is a form of genocide and is completely unacceptable from an ethical point of view. It violates not only the principles of common human decency and common sense, but also the ethical principles of every major religion.

Having said this, we can now turn to some of the other faults in the concept of nuclear deterrence. One important defect is that nuclear war may occur through accident or miscalculation, through technical defects or human failings, or by terrorism. This possibility is made greater by the fact that despite the end of the Cold War, thousands of missiles carrying nuclear warheads are still kept on "hair-trigger alert" with a quasi-automatic reaction time measured in minutes. There is a constant danger that a nuclear war will be triggered by error in evaluating the signal on a radar screen.

Incidents in which global disaster is avoided by a hair's breadth are constantly occurring. For example, on the night of 26 September, 1983, Lt. Col. Stanislav Petrov, a young software engineer, was on duty at a surveillance center near Moscow. Suddenly the screen in front of him turned bright red.

An alarm went off. It's enormous piercing sound filled the room. A second alarm followed, and then a third, fourth and fifth. "The computer showed that the Americans had launched a strike against us", Petrov remembered later. His orders were to pass the information up the chain of command to Secretary General Yuri Andropov. Within minutes, a nuclear counterattack would be launched. However, because of certain inconsistent features of the alarm, Petrov disobeyed orders and reported it as a computer error, which indeed it was.

Most of us probably owe our lives to his coolheaded decision and knowledge of software systems. The narrowness of this escape is compounded by the fact that Petrov was on duty only because of the illness of another officer with less knowledge of software, who would have accepted the alarm as real.

Narrow escapes such as this show us clearly that in the long run, the combination of space-age science and stone-age politics will destroy us. We urgently need new political structures and new ethics to match our advanced technology. Modern science has, for the first time in history, offered humankind the possibility of a life of comfort, free from hunger and cold, and free from the constant threat of death through infectious disease. At the same time, science has given humans the power to obliterate their civilization with nuclear weapons, or to make the earth uninhabitable through overpopulation and pollution. The question of which of these paths we choose is literally a matter of life or death for ourselves and our children.

Will we use the discoveries of modern science constructively, and thus choose the path leading towards life? Or will we use science to produce more and more lethal weapons, which sooner or later, through a technical or human failure, will result in a catastrophic nuclear war? Will we thoughtlessly destroy our beautiful planet through unlimited growth of population and industry? The choice among these alternatives is ours to make. We live at a critical moment of history, a moment of crisis for civilization.

No one alive today asked to be born at a time of crisis, but history has given each of us an enormous responsibility. Of course we have our ordinary jobs, which we need to do in order to stay alive; but besides that, each of us has a second job, the duty to devote both time and effort to solving the serious problems that face civilization during the 21st century. We cannot rely on our politicians to do this for us. Many politicians are under the influence of powerful lobbies. Others are waiting for a clear expression of popular will. It is the people of the world themselves who must choose their own future and work hard to build it.

No single person can achieve the changes that we need, but together we can do it. The problem of building a stable, just, and war-free world is difficult, but it is not impossible. The large regions of our present-day world within which war has been eliminated can serve as models. There are a number of large countries with heterogeneous populations within which it has been possible to achieve internal peace and social cohesion, and if this is possible within such extremely large regions, it must also be possible globally.

We must replace the old world of international anarchy, chronic war, and institutionalized injustice by a new world of law. The United Nations Charter, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and the International Criminal Court are steps in the right direction. These institutions need to be greatly strengthened and reformed. We also need a new global ethic, where loyalty to one's family and nation will be supplemented by a higher loyalty to humanity as a whole. Tipping points in public opinion can occur suddenly. We can think, for example, of the Civil Rights Movement, or the rapid fall of the Berlin Wall, or the sudden change that turned public opinion against smoking, or the sudden movement for freedom and democracy in the Arab world. A similar sudden change can occur soon regarding war and nuclear weapons.

We know that war is madness. We know that it is responsible for much of the suffering that humans experience. We know that war pollutes our planet and that the almost unimaginable sums wasted on war prevent the happiness and prosperity of mankind. We know that nuclear weapons are insane, and that the precariously balanced deterrence system can break down at any time through human error or computer errors or through terrorist actions, and that it definitely will break down within our lifetimes unless we abolish it. We know that nuclear war threatens to destroy civilization and much of the biosphere.

The logic is there. We must translate into popular action which will put an end to the undemocratic, money-driven, power-lust-driven war machine. The peoples of the world must say very clearly that nuclear weapons are an absolute evil; that their possession does not increase anyone's security; that their continued existence is a threat to the life of every person on the planet; and that these genocidal and potentially omnicidal weapons have no place in a civilized society.

Modern science has abolished time and distance as factors separating nations. On our shrunken globe today, there is room for one group only: the family of humankind. We

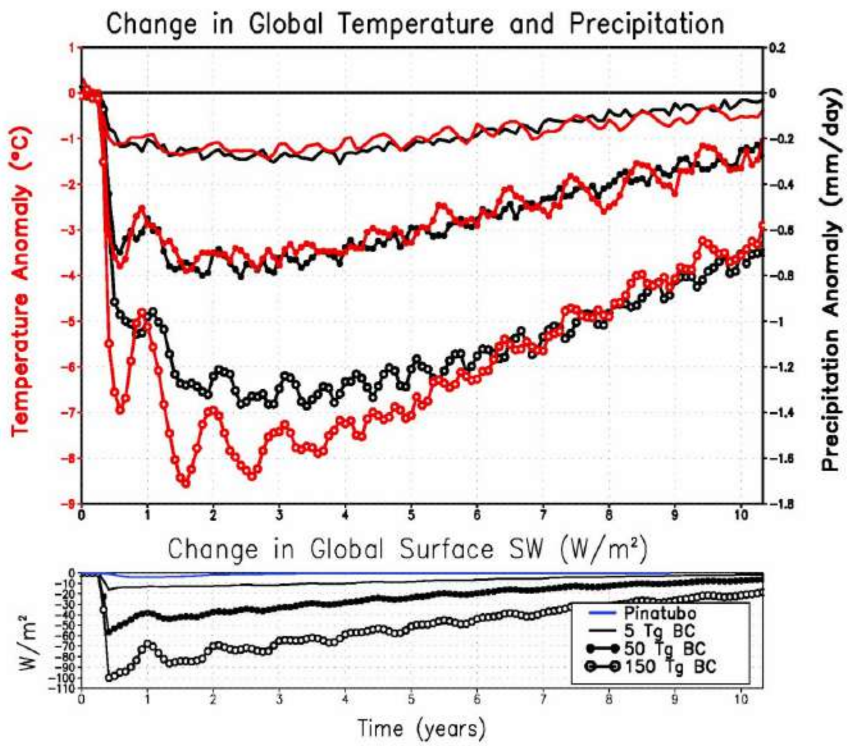


Figure 7.18: **Recent studies by atmospheric scientists have shown that the smoke from burning cities produced by even a limited nuclear war would have a devastating effect on global agriculture. The studies show that the smoke would rise to the stratosphere, where it would spread globally and remain for a decade, blocking sunlight and destroying the ozone layer. Because of the devastating effect on global agriculture, darkness from even a small nuclear war (e.g. between India and Pakistan) would result in an estimated billion deaths from famine.** (O. Toon, A. Robock and R. Turco, "The Environmental Consequences of Nuclear War", Physics Today, vol. 61, No. 12, 2008, p. 37-42)

must embrace all other humans as our brothers and sisters. More than that, we must feel that all of nature is part of the same sacred family; meadow flowers, blowing winds, rocks, trees, birds, animals, and other humans, all these are our brothers and sisters, deserving our care and protection. Only in this way can we survive together. Only in this way can we build a happy future.

"But nobody can predict that the fatal accident or unauthorized act will never happen", Fred Ikle of the Rand Corporation has written, "Given the huge and far-flung missile forces, ready to be launched from land and sea on on both sides, the scope for disaster by accident is immense... In a matter of seconds - through technical accident or human failure - mutual deterrence might thus collapse."

Another serious failure of the concept of nuclear deterrence is that it does not take into account the possibility that atomic bombs may be used by terrorists. Indeed, the threat of nuclear terrorism has today become one of the most pressing dangers that the world faces, a danger that is particularly acute in the United States.

Since 1945, more than 3,000 metric tons (3,000,000 kilograms) of highly enriched uranium and plutonium have been produced - enough for several hundred thousand nuclear weapons. Of this, roughly a million kilograms are in Russia, inadequately guarded, in establishments where the technicians are poorly paid and vulnerable to the temptations of bribery. There is a continuing danger that these fissile materials will fall into the hands of terrorists, or organized criminals, or irresponsible governments. Also, an extensive black market for fissile materials, nuclear weapons components etc. has recently been revealed in connection with the confessions of Pakistan's bomb-maker, Dr. A.Q. Khan. Furthermore, if Pakistan's less-than-stable government should be overthrown, complete nuclear weapons could fall into the hands of terrorists.

On November 3, 2003, Mohamed ElBaradei, Director General of the International Atomic Energy Agency, made a speech to the United Nations in which he called for "limiting the processing of weapons-usable material (separated plutonium and high enriched uranium) in civilian nuclear programmes - as well as the production of new material through reprocessing and enrichment - by agreeing to restrict these operations to facilities exclusively under international control." It is almost incredible, considering the dangers of nuclear proliferation and nuclear terrorism, that such restrictions were not imposed long ago. Nuclear reactors used for "peaceful" purposes unfortunately also generate fissionable isotopes of plutonium, neptunium and americium. Thus all nuclear reactors must be regarded as ambiguous in function, and all must be put under strict international control. One might ask, in fact, whether globally widespread use of nuclear energy is worth the danger that it entails.

The Italian nuclear physicist Francesco Calogero, who has studied the matter closely, believes that terrorists could easily construct a simple gun-type nuclear bomb if they were in possession of a critical mass of highly enriched uranium. In such a simple atomic bomb, two grapefruit-sized subcritical portions of HEU are placed at opposite ends of the barrel of an artillery piece and are driven together by means of a conventional explosive. Prof. Calogero estimates that the fatalities produced by the explosion of such a device in the center of a large city could exceed 100,000.

We must remember the remark of U.N. Secretary General Kofi Annan after the 9/11/2001 attacks on the World Trade Center. He said, "*This time* it was not a nuclear explosion". The meaning of his remark is clear: If the world does not take strong steps to eliminate fissionable materials and nuclear weapons, it will only be a matter of time before they will be used in terrorist attacks on major cities. Neither terrorists nor organized criminals can be deterred by the threat of nuclear retaliation, since they have no territory against which such retaliation could be directed. They blend invisibly into the general population. Nor can a "missile defense system" prevent terrorists from using nuclear weapons, since the weapons can be brought into a port in any one of the hundreds of thousands of containers that enter on ships each year, a number far too large to be checked exhaustively.

In this dangerous situation, the only logical thing for the world to do is to get rid of both fissile materials and nuclear weapons as rapidly as possible. We must acknowledge that the idea of nuclear deterrence is a dangerous fallacy, and acknowledge that the development of military systems based on nuclear weapons has been a terrible mistake, a false step that needs to be reversed. If the most prestigious of the nuclear weapons states can sincerely acknowledge their mistakes and begin to reverse them, nuclear weapons will seem less glamorous to countries like India, Pakistan, North Korea and Iran, where they now are symbols of national pride and modernism.

Civilians have for too long played the role of passive targets, hostages in the power struggles of politicians. It is time for civil society to make its will felt. If our leaders continue to enthusiastically support the institution of war, if they will not abolish nuclear weapons, then let us have new leaders.

Establishment opinion shifts towards nuclear abolition

Today there are indications that the establishment is moving towards the point of view that the peace movement has always held: - that nuclear weapons are essentially genocidal, illegal and unworthy of civilization; and that they must be completely abolished as quickly as possible. There is a rapidly-growing global consensus that a nuclear-weapon-free world can and must be achieved in the very near future.

One of the first indications of the change was the famous Wall Street Journal article by Schultz, Perry, Kissinger and Nunn advocating complete abolition of nuclear arms [1]. This was followed quickly by Mikhail Gorbachev's supporting article, published in the same journal [2], and a statement by distinguished Italian statesmen [3]. Meanwhile, in October 2007, the Hoover Institution had arranged a symposium entitled "Reykjavik Revisited; Steps Towards a World Free of Nuclear Weapons" [4].

In Britain, Sir Malcolm Rifkind, Lord Hurd and Lord Owen (all former Foreign Secretaries) joined the former NATO Secretary General Lord Robertson as authors of an article in The Times advocating complete abolition of nuclear weapons [5]. The UK's Secretary of State for Defense, Des Brown, speaking at a disarmament conference in Geneva, proposed that the UK "host a technical conference of P5 nuclear laboratories on the verification of nuclear disarmament before the next NPT Review Conference in 2010" to enable the nuclear weapon states to work together on technical issues.

In February, 2008, the Government of Norway hosted an international conference on "Achieving the Vision of a World Free of Nuclear Weapons" [7]. A week later, Norway's Foreign Minister, Jonas Gahr Støre, reported the results of the conference to a disarmament meeting in Geneva [8]. On July 11, 2008 , speaking at a Pugwash Conference in Canada, Norway's Defense Minister, Anne-Grete Strøm-Erichsen, reiterated her country's strong support for the complete abolition of nuclear weapons [9].

In July 2008, Barack Obama said in his Berlin speech, "It is time to secure all loose nuclear materials; to stop the spread of nuclear weapons; and to reduce the arsenals from another era. This is the moment to begin the work of seeking the peace of a world without nuclear weapons."

Later that year, in September, Vladimir Putin said, "Had I been told just two or three years ago I wouldn't believe that it would be possible, but I believe that it is now quite possible to liberate humanity from nuclear weapons..."

Other highly-placed statesmen added their voices to the growing consensus: Australia's Prime Minister, Kevin Rudd, visited the Peace Museum at Hiroshima, where he made a strong speech advocating nuclear abolition. He later set up an International Commission on Nuclear Non-Proliferation and Disarmament co-chaired by Australia and Japan [10].

On January 9, 2009, four distinguished German statesmen (Richard von Weizäcker, Helmut Schmidt, Egon Bahr and Hans-Dietrich Genscher) published an article entitled "Towards a Nuclear-Free World: a German View" in the International Herald Tribune [12]. Among the immediate steps recommended in the article are the following:

- The vision of a nuclear-weapon-free world... must be rekindled.
- Negotiations aimed at drastically reducing the number of nuclear weapons must begin...
- The Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (NPT) must be greatly reinforced.
- America should ratify the Comprehensive Nuclear Test-Ban Treaty.
- All short-range nuclear weapons must be destroyed.
- The Anti-Ballistic Missile (ABM) Treaty must be restored. Outer space may only be used for peaceful purposes.

Going to zero

On December 8-9, 2008, approximately 100 international leaders met in Paris to launch the Global Zero Campaign [11]. They included Her Majesty Queen Noor of Jordan, Norway's former Prime Minister Gro Harlem Brundtland, former UK Foreign Secretaries Sir Malcolm Rifkind, Margaret Beckett and David Owen, Ireland's former Prime Minister Mary Robinson, UK philanthropist Sir Richard Branson, former UN Under-Secretary-General Jayantha Dhanapala, and Nobel Peace Prize winners President Jimmy Carter, President Mikhail Gorbachev, Archbishop Desmond Tutu and Prof. Muhammad Yunus. The concrete steps advocated by Global Zero include:

- Deep reductions to Russian-US arsenals, which comprise 96% of the worlds 27,000 nuclear weapons.
- Russia and the United States, joined by other nuclear weapons states, cutting arsenals to zero in phased and verified reductions.
- Establishing verification systems and international management of the fuel cycle to prevent future development of nuclear weapons.

The Global Zero website [11] contains a report on a new public opinion poll covering 21 nations, including all of the nuclear weapons states.The poll showed that public opinion overwhelmingly favors an international agreement for eliminating all nuclear weapons according to a timetable. It was specified that the agreement would include monitoring. The average in all countries of the percent favoring such an agreement was 76%. A few results of special interest mentioned in the report are Russia 69%; the United States, 77%; China, 83%; France, 86%, and Great Britain, 81%.

In his April 5, 2009 speech in Prague the newly-elected U.S. President Barack Obama said: "To reduce our warheads and stockpiles, we will negotiate a new strategic arms reduction treaty with Russia this year. President Medvedev and I will begin this process in London, and we will seek an agreement by the end of the year that is sufficiently bold. This will set the stage for further cuts, and we will seek to involve all nuclear weapon states in this endeavor... To achieve a global ban on nuclear testing, my administration will immediately and aggressively pursue U.S. ratification of the Comprehensive Test Ban Treaty."

A few days later, on April 24, 2009, the European Parliament recommended complete nuclear disarmament by 2020. An amendment introducing the "Model Nuclear Weapons Convention" and the "Hiroshima-Nagasaki Protocol" as concrete tools to achieve a nuclear weapons free world by 2020 was approved with a majority of 177 votes against 130. The Nuclear Weapons Convention is analogous to the conventions that have successfully banned chemical and biological weapons.

The role of public opinion

Public opinion is extremely important for the actual achievement of complete nuclear abolition. In the first place, the fact that the public is overwhelmingly against the retention of nuclear weapons means that the continuation of nuclear arsenals violates democratic principles. Secondly, the weapons are small enough to be easily hidden. Therefore the help of "whistle-blowers" will be needed to help inspection teams to make sure that no country violates its agreement to irreversibly destroy every atomic bomb. What is needed is a universal recognition that nuclear weapons are an absolute evil, and that their continued existence is a threat to human civilization and to the life of every person on the planet.

Our aim must be to delegitimize nuclear weapons, in much the same way that unnecessary greenhouse gas emissions have recently been delegitimized, or cigarette smoking delegitimized, or racism delegitimized. This should be an easy task because of the essentially genocidal nature of nuclear weapons. For half a century, ordinary people have been held as hostages, never knowing from day to day whether their own lives and the lives of those they love would suddenly be sacrificed on the alter of thermonuclear nationalism and power politics. We must let the politicians know that we are no longer willing to be hostages; and we must also accept individual responsibility for reporting violations of international treaties, although our own nation might be the violator.

Most of us grew up in schools where we were taught that duty to our nation was the highest duty; but the times we live in today demand a change of heart, a higher loyalty

Figure 7.19: **Women Strike for Peace during the Cuban Missile Crisis in 1962.**(Public domain)

to humanity as a whole. If the mass media cooperate in delegitimizing nuclear weapons, if educational systems cooperate and if religions [6] cooperate, the change of heart that we need - the global ethic that we need - can quickly be achieved.

Complete abolition of nuclear weapons

Although the Cold War has ended, the danger of a nuclear catastrophe is greater today than ever before. There are almost 16,000 nuclear weapons in the world today, of which more than 90 percent are in the hands of Russia and the United States. About 2,000 of these weapons are on hair-trigger alert, meaning that whoever is in charge of them has only a few minutes to decide whether the signal indicating an attack is real, or an error.

[6] As an example of the role that religions can play, we can consider the Buddhist organization Soka Gakkai International (SGI), which has 12 million members throughout the world. SGIs President Daisaku Ikeda has declared nuclear weapons to be an absolute evil and for more than 50 years the organization has worked for their abolition.

The most important single step in reducing the danger of a disaster would be to take all weapons off hair-trigger alert.

Bruce G. Blair, Brookings Institute, has remarked “It is obvious that the rushed nature of the process, from warning to decision to action, risks causing a catastrophic mistake... This system is an accident waiting to happen.” Fred Ikle of the Rand Corporation has written,‘ ‘But nobody can predict that the fatal accident or unauthorized act will never happen. Given the huge and far-flung missile forces, ready to be launched from land and sea on on both sides, the scope for disaster by accident is immense... In a matter of seconds, through technical accident or human failure, mutual deterrence might thus collapse.”

Although their number has been substantially reduced from its Cold War maximum, the total explosive power of todays weapons is equivalent to roughly half a million Hiroshima bombs. To multiply the tragedy of Hiroshima and Nagasaki by a factor of half a million changes the danger qualitatively. What is threatened today is the complete breakdown of human society.

There is no defense against nuclear terrorism. We must remember the remark of U.N. Secretary General Kofi Annan after the 9/11/2001 attacks on the World Trade Center. He said, ‘ ‘This time it was not a nuclear explosion”. The meaning of his remark is clear: If the world does not take strong steps to eliminate fissionable materials and nuclear weapons, it will only be a matter of time before they will be used in terrorist attacks on major cities. Neither terrorists nor organized criminals can be deterred by the threat of nuclear retaliation, since they have no territory against which such retaliation could be directed. They blend invisibly into the general population. Nor can a “missile defense system” prevent terrorists from using nuclear weapons, since the weapons can be brought into a port in any one of the hundreds of thousands of containers that enter on ships each year, a number far too large to be checked exhaustively.

As the number of nuclear weapon states grows larger, there is an increasing chance that a revolution will occur in one of them, putting nuclear weapons into the hands of terrorist groups or organized criminals. Today, for example, Pakistans less-than-stable government might be overthrown, and Pakistans nuclear weapons might end in the hands of terrorists. The weapons might then be used to destroy one of the worlds large coastal cities, having been brought into the port by one of numerous container ships that dock every day. Such an event might trigger a large-scale nuclear conflagration.

Today, the world is facing a grave danger from the reckless behavior of the government of the United States, which recently arranged a coup that overthrew the elected government of Ukraine. Although Victoria Nulands December 13, 2013 speech talks much about democracy, the people who carried out the coup in Kiev can hardly be said to be democracy’s best representatives. Many belong to the Svoboda Party, which had its roots in the Social-National Party of Ukraine (SNPU). The name was an intentional reference to the Nazi Party in Germany.

It seems to be the intention of the US to establish NATO bases in Ukraine, no doubt armed with nuclear weapons. In trying to imagine how the Russians feel about this, we might think of the US reaction when a fleet of ships sailed to Cuba in 1962, bringing Soviet nuclear weapons. In the confrontation that followed, the world was bought very close indeed to an all-destroying nuclear war. Does not Russia feel similarly threatened by the thought of hostile nuclear weapons on its very doorstep? Can we not learn from the past, and avoid the extremely high risks associated with the similar confrontation in Ukraine today?

In general, aggressive interventions, in Iran, Syria, Ukraine, the Korean Peninsula and elsewhere, all present dangers for uncontrollable escalation into large and disastrous conflicts, which might potentially threaten the survival of human civilization.

Few politicians or military figures today have any imaginative understanding of what a war with thermonuclear weapons would be like. Recent studies have shown that in a nuclear war, the smoke from firestorms in burning cities would rise to the stratosphere where it would remain for a decade, spreading throughout the world, blocking sunlight, blocking the hydrological cycle and destroying the ozone layer. The effect on global agriculture would be devastating, and the billion people who are chronically undernourished today would be at risk. Furthermore, the tragedies of Chernobyl and Fukushima remind us that a nuclear war would make large areas of the world permanently uninhabitable because of radioactive contamination. A full-scale thermonuclear war would be the ultimate ecological catastrophe. It would destroy human civilization and much of the biosphere.

One can gain a small idea of the terrible ecological consequences of a nuclear war by thinking of the radioactive contamination that has made large areas near to Chernobyl and Fukushima uninhabitable, or the testing of hydrogen bombs in the Pacific, which continues to cause cancer, leukemia and birth defects in the Marshall Islands more than half a century later.

The United States tested a hydrogen bomb at Bikini in 1954. Fallout from the bomb contaminated the island of Rongelap, one of the Marshall Islands 120 kilometers from Bikini. The islanders experienced radiation illness, and many died from cancer. Even today, half a century later, both people and animals on Rongelap and other nearby islands suffer from birth defects. The most common defects have been ' 'jelly fish babies", born with no bones and with transparent skin. Their brains and beating hearts can be seen. The babies usually live a day or two before they stop breathing.

A girl from Rongelap describes the situation in the following words: ' 'I cannot have children. I have had miscarriages on seven occasions... Our culture and religion teach us that reproductive abnormalities are a sign that women have been unfaithful. For this reason, many of my friends keep quiet about the strange births that they have had. In privacy they give birth, not to children as we like to think of them, but to things we could only describe as octopuses, apples, turtles and other things in our experience. We do not have Marshallese words for these kinds of babies, because they were never born before the radiation came."

The Republic of the Marshall Islands is suing the nine countries with nuclear weapons at the International Court of Justice at The Hague, arguing they have violated their legal obligation to disarm. The Guardian reports that ' 'In the unprecedented legal action, comprising nine separate cases brought before the ICJ on Thursday, the Republic of the Marshall Islands accuses the nuclear weapons states of a 'flagrant denial of human justice. It argues it is justified in taking the action because of the harm it suffered as a result of the nuclear arms race.

The Pacific chain of islands, including Bikini Atoll and Enewetak, was the site of 67 nuclear tests from 1946 to 1958, including the Bravo shot, a 15-megaton device equivalent to a thousand Hiroshima blasts, detonated in 1954. The Marshallese islanders say they have been suffering serious health and environmental effects ever since.

The island republic is suing the five 'established nuclear weapons states recognized in the 1968 nuclear non-proliferation treaty (NPT), the US, Russia (which inherited the Soviet arsenal), China, France and the UK, as well as the three countries outside the NPT who have declared nuclear arsenals: India, Pakistan and North Korea, and the one undeclared nuclear weapons state, Israel. The Republic of the Marshall Islands is not seeking monetary compensation, but instead it seeks to make the nuclear weapon states comply with their legal obligations under Article VI of the Nuclear Nonproliferation Treaty and the 1996 ruling of the International Court of Justice.

The Nuclear Age Peace Foundation (NAPF) is a consultant to the Marshall Islands on the legal and moral issues involved in bringing this case. David Krieger, President of NAPF, upon hearing of the motion to dismiss the case by the U.S. responded, ' 'The U.S. government is sending a terrible message to the world, that is, that U.S. courts are an improper venue for resolving disputes with other countries on U.S. treaty obligations. The U.S. is, in effect, saying that whatever breaches it commits are all right if it says so. That is bad for the law, bad for relations among nations, bad for nuclear non-proliferation and disarmament, and not only bad, but extremely dangerous for U.S. citizens and all humanity."

The RMI has appealed the U.S. attempt to reject its suit in the U.S, Federal Court, and it will continue to sue the nine nuclear nations in the International Court of Justice. Whether or not the suits succeed in making the nuclear nations comply with international law, attention will be called to the fact the nine countries are outlaws. In vote after vote in the United Nations General Assembly, the peoples of the world have shown how deeply they long to be free from the menace of nuclear weapons. Ultimately, the tiny group of power-hungry politicians must yield to the will of the citizens whom they are at present holding as hostages.

It is a life-or-death question. We can see this most clearly when we look far ahead. Suppose that each year there is a certain finite chance of a nuclear catastrophe, let us say 2 percent. Then in a century the chance of survival will be 13.5 percent, and in two centuries, 1.8 percent, in three centuries, 0.25 percent, in 4 centuries, there would only be a 0.034 percent chance of survival and so on. Over many centuries, the chance of survival would shrink almost to zero. Thus by looking at the long-term future, we can clearly see that if nuclear weapons are not entirely eliminated, civilization will not survive.

Civil society must make its will felt. A thermonuclear war today would be not only genocidal but also omnicidal. It would kill people of all ages, babies, children, young people, mothers, fathers and grandparents, without any regard whatever for guilt or innocence. Such a war would be the ultimate ecological catastrophe, destroying not only human civilization but also much of the biosphere. Each of us has a duty to work with dedication to prevent it.

When the will of the majority of the worlds peoples is clearly expressed in an international treaty, even if the treaty functions imperfectly, the question of legality is clear. Everyone can see which states are violating international law. In time, world public opinion will force the criminal states to conform with international law.

In the case of nuclear weapons, world public opinion would have especially great force. It is generally agreed that a full-scale nuclear war would have disastrous effects, not only on belligerent nations but also on neutral countries. Mr. Javier Pérez de Cuéllar , former Secretary-General of the United Nations, emphasized this point in one of his speeches: "I feel", he said, ' 'that the question may justifiably be put to the leading nuclear powers: by what right do they decide the fate of humanity? From Scandinavia to Latin America, from Europe and Africa to the Far East, the destiny of every man and woman is affected by their actions. No one can expect to escape from the catastrophic consequences of a nuclear war on the fragile structure of this planet. ..."

' 'No ideological confrontation can be allowed to jeopardize the future of humanity. Nothing less is at stake: todays decisions affect not only the present; they also put at risk succeeding generations. Like supreme arbiters, with our disputes of the moment, we threaten to cut off the future and to extinguish the lives of innocent millions yet unborn. There can be no greater arrogance. At the same time, the lives of all those who lived before us may be rendered meaningless; for we have the power to dissolve in a conflict of hours or minutes the entire work of civilization, with all the brilliant cultural heritage of humankind.

"...In a nuclear age, decisions affecting war and peace cannot be left to military strategists or even to governments. They are indeed the responsibility of every man and woman. And it is therefore the responsibility of all of us... to break the cycle of mistrust and insecurity and to respond to humanity's yearning for peace."

The eloquent words of Javier Pérez de Cuéllar express the situation in which we now find ourselves: Accidental nuclear war, nuclear terrorism, insanity of a person in a position of power, or unintended escalation of a conflict, could at any moment plunge our beautiful world into a catastrophic thermonuclear war which might destroy not only human civilization but also much of the biosphere.

We can expect that the adoption of a Nuclear Weapons Convention will be opposed by the states that currently possess these weapons. One reason for this is the immense profits that suppliers make by ' 'modernizing" nuclear arsenals. For example, the Arms Control Association states ' 'The U.S. military is in the process of modernizing all of its existing strategic delivery systems and refurbishing the warheads they carry to last for the next 30-50 years." It adds ' 'Three independent estimates put the expected total cost over the next 30 years at as much as $1 trillion." We should notice that these plans for long-term retention of nuclear weapons are blatant violations of Article VI of the NPT.

Money is often the motive for crimes, and in this case, a vast river of money is driving us in the direction of a catastrophic nuclear war. If we wait for the approval of the nuclear weapon states, we will have to wait forever, and the general public, whose active help we need in abolishing nuclear weapons, will feel more and more helpless and powerless. To prevent this, we need concrete progress rather than endless delay.

Figure 7.20: **Fireball of the Tsar Bomba (RDS-220), the largest weapon ever detonated (1961). Fission-fusion-fission bombs of almost unlimited power can be constructed by adding a layer of inexpensive ordinary uranium outside a core containing a fission-fusion bomb. Such a bomb would completely destroy a city even if it missed the target by 50 kilometers.**

7.10 The Russell-Einstein Manifesto

The year 2015 marked the 60th anniversary of the Russell-Einstein Manifesto, which contains the following words: "There lies before us, if we choose, continual progress in happiness, knowledge and wisdom. Shall we, instead, choose death, because we cannot forget our quarrels? Remember your humanity, and forget the rest. If you can do so, the way lies open to a new Paradise. If you cannot, there lies before you the risk of universal death."

The background for the Russell-Einstein Manifesto is as follows: In March, 1954, the United States had tested a hydrogen bomb at the Bikini Atoll in the Pacific Ocean. It was 1,000 times more powerful than the Hiroshima bomb. The Japanese fishing boat, the Lucky Dragon, was 130 kilometers from the Bikini explosion, but the radioactive fallout from the test killed one crew member, and made all the others seriously ill.

In England, Professor Joseph Rotblat, a Polish scientist who had resigned from the Manhattan Project for moral reasons when it became clear that Germany would not develop nuclear weapons, was asked to appear on a BBC program to discuss the Bikini test. He was asked to discuss the technical aspects of H-bombs, while the Archbishop of Canterbury and the philosopher, Lord Bertrand Russell, were asked to discuss the moral aspects.

Rotblat had become convinced that the Bikini bomb must have involved a third stage, in which fast neutrons from the hydrogen thermonuclear reaction produced fission in an outer casing of ordinary uranium. Such a bomb would produce enormous amounts of highly dangerous fallout, and Rotblat became extremely worried about the possibly fatal effects on all living things if large numbers of such bombs were ever used in a war. He confided his worries to Bertrand Russell, whom he had met on the BBC program.

After discussing the Bikini test and its radioactive fallout with Joseph Rotblat, Lord Russell became concerned for the future of the human gene pool. After consulting a number of leading physicists, including Albert Einstein, he wrote what came to be known as the Russell-Einstein Manifesto.

Russell was convinced that in order for the Manifesto to have maximum impact, Einstein's signature would be absolutely necessary; but as Russell was flying from Italy to France, the pilot announced to the passengers that Einstein had just died. Russell was crushed by the news, but when he arrived at his hotel in Paris, he found waiting for him a letter from Einstein and his signature on the document. Signing the Manifesto had been the last act of Einstein's life. Others who signed were Max Born, Percy W. Bridgman, Leopold Infeld, Frederic Joliot-Curie, Hermann J. Muller, Linus Pauling, Cecil F. Powell, Joseph Rotblat, Hideki Yukawa and Bertrand Russell. All of them, except Infeld and Rotblat, were Nobel Laureates.

On July 9, 1955, with Rotblat in the chair, Russell read the Manifesto to a packed press conference. The document contains the words: "Here then is the problem that we present to you, stark and dreadful and inescapable: Shall we put an end to the human race, or shall mankind renounce war?... There lies before us, if we choose, continual progress in happiness, knowledge and wisdom. Shall we, instead, choose death because we cannot forget our quarrels?..." Lord Russell devoted much of the remainder of his life to working for the abolition of nuclear weapons.[7]

In 1957, with the Russell-Einstein Manifesto as a background, a group of scientists from both sides of the Cold War met in the small village of Pugwash, Nova Scotia. The meeting was held at the summer residence of the Canadian-American financier and philanthropist Cyrus Eaton, who had given money for the conference. The aim of the assembled scientists was to reduce the danger of a catastrophic nuclear war.

From this small beginning, a series of conferences developed, in which scientists, especially physicists, attempted to work for peace, and tried to address urgent problems related to science. These conferences were called Pugwash Conferences on Science and World Affairs, taking their name from the small village in Nova Scotia where the first meeting was held. From the start, the main aim of the meetings was to reduce the danger that civilization would be destroyed in a thermonuclear war.

It can be seen from what has been said that the Pugwash Conferences began during one of the tensest periods of the Cold War, when communication between the Communist and Anti-communist blocks was difficult. During this period, the meetings served the important purpose of providing a forum for informal diplomacy. The participants met, not as representatives of their countries, but as individuals, and the discussions were confidential.

This method of operation proved to be effective, and the initial negotiations for a number of important arms control treaties were aided by Pugwash Conferences. These include

[7] http://www.umich.edu/ pugwash/Manifesto.html

the START treaties, the treaties prohibiting chemical and biological weapons, the Nuclear Nonproliferation Treaty (NPT), and the Comprehensive Test Ban Treaty (CTBT). Former Soviet President Gorbachev has said that discussions with Pugwash scientists helped him to conclude that the policy of nuclear confrontation was too dangerous to be continued.

Over the years, the number of participants attending the annual Pugwash Conference has grown, and the scope of the problems treated has broadened. Besides scientists, the participants now include diplomats, politicians, economists, social scientists and military experts. Normally the number attending the yearly conference is about 150.

Besides plenary sessions, the conferences have smaller working groups dealing with specific problems. There is always a working group aimed at reducing nuclear dangers, and also groups on controlling or eliminating chemical and biological weapons. In addition, there may now be groups on subjects such as climate change, poverty, United Nations reform, and so on.

Invitations to the conferences are issued by the Secretary General to participants nominated by the national groups. The host nation usually pays for the local expenses, but participants finance their own travel. Besides the large annual meeting, the Pugwash organization also arranges about ten specialized workshops per year, with 30-40 participants each. Although attendance at the conferences and workshops is by invitation, everyone is very welcome to join one of the national Pugwash groups. The international organization's website is at www.pugwash.org.

In 1995, the Nobel Peace Prize was awarded jointly to Prof. Joseph Rotblat and to Pugwash Conferences on Science and World Affairs as an organization, " ...for their efforts to diminish the part played by nuclear arms in international politics and in the longer run to eliminate such arms." The award was made 50 years after the tragic destruction of Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

In his acceptance speech, Sir Joseph Rotblat (as he soon became) emphasized the same point that has been made by the Russell-Einstein Manifesto, that war itself must be eliminated in order to free civilization from the danger of nuclear destruction. The reason for this is that knowledge of how to make nuclear weapons can never be forgotten. Even if they were eliminated, these weapons could be rebuilt during a major war. Thus the final abolition of nuclear weapons is linked to a change of heart in world politics and to the abolition of war.

"The quest for a war-free world", Sir Joseph concluded, "has a basic purpose: survival. But if, in the process, we can learn to achieve it by love rather than by fear, by kindness rather than compulsion; if in the process we can learn to combine the essential with the enjoyable, the expedient with the benevolent, the practical with the beautiful, this will be an extra incentive to embark on this great task. Above all, remember your humanity"

I vividly remember the ceremony in Oslo when the 1995 Nobel Peace Prize was awarded jointly to Sir Joseph and to Pugwash Conferences. About 100 people from the Pugwash organization were invited, and I was included because I was the chairman of the Danish National Pugwash Group. After the ceremony and before the dinner, local peace groups had organized a torchlight parade. It was already dark, because we were so far to the north, and snow was falling. About 3,000 people carrying torches marched through the city and assembled under Sir Joseph's hotel window, cheering and shouting "Rotblat! Rotblat! Rotblat!". Finally he appeared at the hotel widow, waved to the crowd and tried to say a few words. This would have been the moment for a memorable speech, but the acoustics were so terrible that we could not hear a word that he said. I later tried (without success) to persuade the BBC to make a program about nuclear weapons and about Sir Joseph's life, ending with the falling snow and the torch-lit scene.

7.11 Against the Institution of War

As we start the 21st century and the new millennium, our scientific and technological civilization seems to be entering a period of crisis. Today, for the first time in history, science has given to humans the possibility of a life of comfort, free from hunger and cold, and free from the constant threat of infectious disease. At the same time, science has given us the power to destroy civilization through thermonuclear war, as well as the power to make our planet uninhabitable through pollution and overpopulation. The question of which of these alternatives we choose is a matter of life or death to ourselves and our children.

Science and technology have shown themselves to be double-edged, capable of doing great good or of producing great harm, depending on the way in which we use the enormous power over nature, which science has given to us. For this reason, ethical thought is needed now more than ever before. The wisdom of the world's religions, the traditional wisdom of humankind, can help us as we try to insure that our overwhelming material progress will be beneficial.

The crisis of civilization, which we face today, has been produced by the rapidity with which science and technology have developed. Our institutions and ideas adjust too slowly to the change. The great challenge which history has given to our generation is the task of building new international political structures, which will be in harmony with modern technology. At the same time, we must develop a new global ethic, which will replace our narrow loyalties by loyalty to humanity as a whole.

In the long run, because of the enormously destructive weapons, which have been produced through the misuse of science, the survival of civilization can only be insured if we are able to abolish the institution of war.

While in earlier epochs it may have been possible to confine the effects of war mainly to combatants, in our own century the victims of war have increasingly been civilians, and especially children. For example, according to Quincy Wright's statistics, the First and Second World Wars together cost the lives of 26 million soldiers, but the toll in civilian lives was much larger: 64 million.

Since the Second World War, despite the best efforts of the U. N., there have been over 150 armed conflicts; and, if civil wars are included, there are on any given day an average of 12 wars somewhere in the world. In the conflicts in Indo-China, the proportion of civilian victims was between 80% and 90%, while in the Lebanese civil war some sources state that the proportion of civilian casualties was as high as 97%.

Figure 7.21: **The World Health Organization could carry out its vitally important work much more effectively if it were given more money.**

Civilian casualties often occur through malnutrition and through diseases, which would be preventable in normal circumstances. Because of the social disruption caused by war, normal supplies of food, safe water and medicine are interrupted, so that populations become vulnerable to famine and epidemics. In the event of a catastrophic nuclear war, starvation and disease would add greatly to the loss of life caused by the direct effects of nuclear weapons.

The indirect effects of war are also enormous. Globally, preparations for war interfere seriously with the use of tax money for constructive and peaceful purposes. Today, despite the end of the Cold War, the world spends roughly a trillion (i.e. a million million) US dollars each year on armaments. This enormous flood of money, which is almost too large to imagine, could have been used instead for urgently needed public health measures.

The World Health Organization lacks funds to carry through an anti-malarial program on as large a scale as would be desirable, but the entire program could be financed for less than the world spends on armaments in a single day. Five hours of world arms spending is equivalent to the total cost of the 20-year WHO campaign, which resulted in the eradication of smallpox. For every 100,000 people in the world, there are 556 soldiers, but only 85 doctors. Every soldier costs an average of 20,000 US dollars per year, while the average spent per year on education is only 380 US dollars per school-aged child. With a diversion of funds consumed by three weeks of military spending, the world could create a sanitary water supply for all its people, thus eliminating the cause of almost half of all human illness.

A new and drug-resistant form of tuberculosis has recently become widespread, and is increasing rapidly in the former Soviet Union. In order to combat this new form of tuberculosis, and in order to prevent its spread to Western Europe, WHO needs 450 million US dollars, an amount equivalent to 4 hours of world arms spending. By using this money to combat tuberculosis in the former Soviet Union, WHO would be making a far greater contribution to global peace and stability than is made by spending the money on armaments.

Today's world is one in which roughly ten million children die each year from diseases related to poverty. Besides this enormous waste of young lives through malnutrition and preventable disease, there is a huge waste of opportunities through inadequate education. The rate of illiteracy in the 25 least developed countries is 80%, and the total number of illiterates in the world is estimated to be 800 million. Meanwhile every 60 seconds the world spends roughly 2 million U. S. dollars on armaments.

It is plain that if the almost unbelievable sums now wasted on armaments were used constructively, most of the pressing problems now facing humanity could be solved, but today the world spends more than 20 times as much per year on weapons as it does on development.

Because the world spends 1.7 thousand billion dollars each year on armaments, it follows that very many people make their living from war. This is the reason why it is correct to speak of war as a social institution, and also the reason why war persists, although everyone realizes that it is the cause of much of the suffering that inflicts humanity. We know that war is madness, but it persists. We know that it threatens the future survival of our species, but it persists, entrenched in the attitudes of historians, newspaper editors and television producers, entrenched in the methods by which politicians finance their campaigns, and entrenched in the financial power of arms manufacturers, entrenched also in the ponderous and costly hardware of war, the fleets of warships, bombers, tanks, nuclear missiles and so on.

Science cannot claim to be guiltless: In Eisenhower's farewell address, he warned of the increasing power of the industrial-military complex, a threat to democratic society. If he were making the same speech today, he might speak of the industrial-military-scientific complex. Since Hiroshima, we have known that new knowledge is not always good. There is a grave danger that nuclear weapons will soon proliferate to such an extent that they will be available to terrorists and even to the Mafia. Chemical and biological weapons also constitute a grave threat. The eradication of smallpox in 1979 was a triumph of medical science combined with international cooperation. How sad it is to think that military laboratories cultivate smallpox and that the disease may soon be reintroduced as a biological weapon!

The institution of war seems to be linked to a fault in human nature, to our tendency to exhibit altruism towards members of our own group but aggression towards other groups if we perceive them to be threatening our own community. This tendency, which might be called "tribalism", was perhaps built into human nature by evolution during the long pre-history of our species, when we lived as hunter-gatherers in small genetically homogeneous tribes, competing for territory on the grasslands of Africa. However, in an era of nerve gas and nuclear weapons, the anachronistic behavior pattern of tribal altruism and intertribal aggression now threatens our survival.

Fortunately, our behavior is only partly determined by inherited human nature. It is also, and perhaps to a larger extent, determined by education and environment; and in spite of all the difficulties just mentioned, war has been eliminated locally in several large regions of the world. Taking these regions as models, we can attempt to use the same methods to abolish war globally. For example, war between the Scandinavian nations would be unthinkable today, although the region once was famous for its violence. Scandinavia is especially interesting as a model for what we would like to achieve globally, because it is a region in which it has been possible not only to eradicate war, but also poverty; and at the same time, death from infectious disease has become a rarity in this region.

If we consider the problem of simultaneously eliminating poverty, war and frequent death from infectious disease, we are lead inevitably to the problem of population stabilization. At the time when poverty, disease and war characterized Scandinavia, the average fertility in the region was at least 6 children per woman-life. Equilibrium was maintained at this high rate of fertility, because some of the children died from disease without leaving progeny, and because others died in war. Today, poverty and war are gone from the Nordic countries, and the rate of premature death from infectious disease is very low. The simultaneous elimination of poverty, disease and war would have been impossible in Scandinavia if the rate of fertility had not fallen to the replacement level. There would then have been no alternative except for the population to grow, which it could not have continued to do over many centuries without environmental degradation, bringing with it the recurrence of poverty, disease and war.

In Scandinavia today, democratic government, a high level of education, economic prosperity, public health, high social status for women, legal, economic and educational equality for women, a low birth rate, and friendly cooperation between the nations of the region are mutually linked in loops of cause and effect. By contrast, we can find other regions of the world where low status of women, high birth rates, rapidly increasing population, urban slums, low educational levels, high unemployment levels, poverty, ethnic conflicts and the resurgence of infectious disease are equally linked, but in a vicious circle. The three age-old causes of human suffering, poverty, infectious disease and war are bound together by complex causal relationships involving also the issues of population stabilization and woman's rights. The example of Scandinavia shows us that it is possible to cure all these diseases of society; but to do so we must address all of the problems simultaneously.

Scandinavia was once a region that was famous for its violence. Today, war within Scandinavia would be unthinkable. This fact demonstrates the maliability of human nature. Under changed circumstances, and with changed education, people who were once extremely violent have become very peaceful. Scandinavia's low birth-rate has contributed to this transition.

Abolition of the institution of war will require the construction of structures of international government and law to replace our present anarchy at the global level. Today's technology has shrunken the distances, which once separated nations; and our present system of absolutely sovereign nation-states has become both obsolete and dangerous.

Professor Elie Kedourie of the University of London has given the following definition of nationalism: "..a doctrine invented in Europe at the beginning of the 19th century. It pretends to supply a criterion for the determination of the unit of population proper to enjoy a government exclusively its own, for the legitimate exercise of power in the state, and for the right organization of a society of states. Briefly, the doctrine holds that humanity is naturally divided into nations, that nations are known by certain characteristics which can be ascertained, and that the only legitimate type of government is national self-government."

A basic problem with this doctrine is that throughout most of the world, successive waves of migration, conquest and intermarriage have left such a complicated ethnic mosaic that attempts to base political divisions on ethnic homogeneity often meet with trouble. In Eastern Europe, for example, German-speaking and Slavic-speaking peoples are mixed together so closely that the Pan-German and Pan-Slavic movements inevitably clashed over the question of who should control the regions where the two populations lived side by side. This clash was one of the main causes of the First World War.

Similarly, when India achieved independence from England, a great problem arose in the regions where Hindus and Moslems lived side by side; and even Gandhi was unable to prevent terrible violence from taking place between the two communities. This problem is still present, and it has been made extremely dangerous by the acquisition of nuclear weapons by India and Pakistan.

More recently, nationalist movements in Asia and Africa have derived their force and popularity from a reaction against the years of European political and economic domination. Thus, at first sight, they seem to deserve our sympathy and support. However, in building states, the new nationalists have often used hate for outsiders as mortar. For example, Israel is held together by hostility towards its Arab neighbors, while the Pan-Arab movement is held together by hostility towards Israel; and in this inflamed political climate of mutual fear and hatred, even clandestine nuclear weapons appear to either side to be justified.

A basic problem rooted in nationalist mythology exists in the concept of sanctions, which treat nations as if they were individuals. We punish nations as a whole by sanctions, even when only the leaders are guilty, even though the burdens of the sanctions often fall most heavily on the weakest and least guilty of the citizens, and even though sanctions often have the effect of uniting the citizens of a country behind the guilty leaders.

It is becoming increasingly clear that the concept of the absolutely sovereign nation-state is an anachronism in a world of thermonuclear weapons, instantaneous communication and economic interdependence. Probably our best hope for the future lies in developing the United Nations into a World Federation. The strengthened United Nations should have a legislature with the power to make laws which are binding on individuals, and the ability to arrest and try individual political leaders for violations of these laws. The World Federation should also have the military and legal powers necessary to guarantee the human rights of ethnic minorities within nations.

A strengthened UN would need a reliable source of income to make the organization less dependent on wealthy countries, which tend to give support only to those interventions of which they approve. A promising solution to this problem is the so-called "Tobin tax", named after the Nobel-laureate economist James Tobin of Yale University. Tobin proposed that international currency exchanges should be taxed at a rate between 0.1 and 0.25%. He believed that even this extremely low rate of taxation would have the effect of damping speculative transactions, thus stabilizing the rates of exchange between

Figure 7.22: **Today, the existence of all-destroying modern weapons makes war prohibitively dangerous. If human civilization is to survive, the institution of war must be abolished. This will require effective governance at the global level. The United Nations must be strengthened and given many times the amount of money that it presently has. The UN must also be given the power to make laws that are binding on individuals.**

currencies. When asked what should be done with the proceeds of the tax, Tobin said, almost as an afterthought, "Let the United Nations have it". The volume of money involved in international currency transactions is so enormous that even the tiny tax proposed by Tobin would provide the World Federation with between 100 billion and 300 billion dollars annually. By strengthening the activities of various UN agencies, such as WHO, UNESCO and FAO, the additional income would add to the prestige of the United Nations and thus make the organization more effective when it is called upon to resolve international political conflicts.

A federation is, by definition, a limited union of states, where the federal government has the power to make laws which are binding on individuals, but where the laws are confined to interstate matters, and where all powers not expressly delegated to the federal government are reserved for the several states. In other words, in a federation, each of the member states runs its own internal affairs according to its own laws and customs; but in certain agreed-on matters, where the interests of the states overlap, authority is specifically delegated to the federal government.

For example, if the nations of the world considered the control of narcotics to be a matter of mutual concern; if they agreed to set up a commission with the power to make laws preventing the growing, refinement and distribution of harmful drugs, and with the power to arrest individuals for violating those laws, then we would have a world federation in the area of narcotics control.

If, in addition, the world community considered terrorism to be a matter of mutual concern; if an international commission were also set up with the power to make global anti-terrorist laws, and to arrest individuals violating those laws, then we would have a world federation with somewhat broader powers. If the community of nations decided to give the federal authority the additional power to make laws defining the rights and obligations of multinational corporations, and the power to arrest individuals violating those laws, then we would have a world federation with still broader powers; but these powers would still be carefully defined and limited.

In 1998, in Rome, representatives of 120 countries signed a statute establishing a Permanent International Court, with jurisdiction over war crimes and genocide. Four years were to pass before the necessary ratifications were gathered, but by Thursday, April 11, 2002, 66 nations had ratified the Rome agreement, 6 more than the 60 needed to make the court permanent. The jurisdiction of the Permanent International Court is at present limited to a very narrow class crimes. The global community will have a chance to see how the court works in practice, and in the future, the community may decide to broaden its jurisdiction.

In setting up a federation, the member states can decide which powers they wish to delegate to it; and all powers not expressly delegated are retained by the individual states. We are faced with the problem of constructing a new world order which will preserve the advantages of local self-government while granting certain carefully-chosen powers to larger regional or global authorities. Which things should be decided locally, or regionally, and which globally?

In the future, overpopulation and famine are likely to become increasingly difficult and painful problems in several parts of the world. Since various cultures take widely different attitudes towards birth control and family size, the problem of population stabilization seems to be one which should be solved locally. At the same time, aid for local family planning programs, as well as famine relief, might appropriately come from global agencies, such as WHO and FAO. With respect to large-scale migration, it would be unfair for a country which has successfully stabilized its own population, and which has eliminated poverty within its own borders, to be forced to accept a flood of migrants from regions of high fertility. Therefore the extent of immigration should be among the issues to be decided locally.

Security, and controls on the manufacture and export of armaments will require an effective authority at the global level. It should also be the responsibility of the international community to intervene to prevent gross violations of human rights. Since the end of the Cold War, the United Nations has more and more frequently been called upon to send armed forces to troubled parts of the world. In many instances, these calls for U. N. intervention have been prompted by clear and atrocious violations of human rights, for example by "ethnic cleansing" in Bosnia and by genocide in Rwanda. In the examples just named, the response of the United Nations would have been much more effective, and many lives would have been saved, if the action which was finally taken had come sooner. Long and complex diplomatic negotiations were required to muster the necessary political and physical forces needed for intervention, by which time the original problems had become much more severe. For this reason, it has been suggested that the U. N. Secretary General, the Security Council and the General Assembly ought to have at their disposal a permanent, highly trained and highly mobile emergency force, composed of volunteers from all nations. Such an international police force would be able to act rapidly to prevent gross violations of human rights or other severe breaches of international law.

In evaluating the concept of an international police force directly responsible to the United Nations, it is helpful to examine the way in which police act to enforce laws and to prevent violence and crime at local and national levels. Within a community which is characterized by good government, police are not highly armed, nor are they very numerous. Law and order are not maintained primarily by the threat of force, but by the opinion of the vast majority of the citizens that the system of laws is both just and necessary. Traffic stops when the signal light is red and moves when it is green whether or not a policeman is present, because everyone understands why such a system is necessary. Nevertheless, although the vast majority of the citizens in a well-governed community support the system of laws and would never wish to break the law, we all know that the real world is not heaven. The total spectrum of human nature includes evil as well as a good. If there were no police at all, and if the criminal minority were completely unchecked, every citizen would be obliged to be armed. No one's life or property would be safe. Robbery, murder and rape would flourish.

Within a society with a democratic and just government, whose powers are derived from the consent of the governed, a small and lightly armed force of police is able to maintain the system of laws. One reason why this is possible has just been mentioned - the force of public opinion. A second reason is that the law acts on individuals. Since obstruction of justice and the murder of policemen both rank as serious crimes, an individual criminal is usually not able to organize massive resistance against police action.

Edith Wynner, one of the pioneers of the World Federalist movement, lists the following characteristics of police power in a well-governed society:

1. "A policeman operates within a framework of organized government having legislative, executive and judicial authority operating on individuals. His actions are guided by a clearly stated criminal code that has the legislative sanction of the community. Should he abuse the authority vested in him, he is subject to discipline and court restraint."

2. "A policeman seeing a fight between two men does not attempt to determine which of them is in the right and then help him beat up the one he considers wrong. His function is to restrain violence by both, to bring them before a judge who has authority to determine the rights of the dispute, and to see that the court's decision is carried out."

3. "In carrying out his duties, the policeman must apprehend the suspected individual without jeopardizing either the property or the lives of the community where the suspect is to be arrested. And not only is the community safeguarded against destruction of property and loss of life but the rights of the suspect are also carefully protected by an elaborate network of judicial safeguards."

Edith Wynner also discusses the original union of the thirteen American colonies, which was a confederation, analogous to the present United Nations. This confederation was found to be too weak, and after eleven years it was replaced by a federation, one of whose key powers was the power to make and enforce laws which acted on individuals. George Mason, one of the architects of the federal constitution of the United States, believed that "such a government was necessary as could directly operate on individuals, and would punish those only whose guilt required it", while James Madison (another drafter of the U. S. federal constitution) remarked that the more he reflected on the use of force, the more he doubted "the practicability, the justice and the efficacy of it when applied to people collectively, and not individually". Finally, Alexander Hamilton, in his "Federalist Papers", discussed the confederation with the following words: "To coerce the states is one of the maddest projects that was ever devised... Can any reasonable man be well disposed towards a government, which makes war and carnage the only means of supporting itself - a government that can exist only by the sword? Every such war must involve the innocent with the guilty. This single consideration should be enough to dispose every peaceable citizen against such a government... What is the cure for this great evil? Nothing, but to enable the... laws to operate on individuals, in the same manner as those of states do."

The United Nations is at present a confederation rather than a federation, and thus it acts by attempting to coerce states, a procedure which Alexander Hamilton characterized as "one of the maddest projects that was ever devised". Whether this coercion takes the form of economic sanctions, or whether it takes the form of military intervention, the practicability, the justice and the efficacy of the UN's efforts are hampered because they are applied to people collectively and not individually. It is obvious that the United Nations actions to stop aggression of one state against another in the Korean War and in the Gulf War fail to match the three criteria for police action listed above. What is the cure for this great evil? "Nothing", Hamilton tells us, "but to enable the laws to act on individuals, in the same manner as those of states do."

Historically, confederations have always proved to be too weak; but federations have on the whole been very successful, mainly because a federation has the power to make laws which act on individuals. At the same time, a federation aims at leaving as many powers as possible in the hands of local authorities. Recent examples of federations include the United States of America, the United States of Brazil, the United States of Mexico, the United States of Venezuela, the Argentine Nation, the Commonwealth of Australia, the Dominion of Canada, the Union of South Africa, Switzerland, the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics and the European Federation. Thus we are rich in historical data on the strengths and weaknesses of federations, and we can make use of this data as we attempt to construct good government at the global level.

Looking towards the future, we can perhaps foresee a time when the United Nations will have been converted to a federation and given the power to make international laws which are binding on individuals. Under such circumstances, true international law enforcement will be possible, incorporating all of the needed safeguards for lives and property of the innocent. One can hope for a future world where the institution of war will be abolished, and where public opinion will support international law to such an extent that a new

Figure 7.23: **This painting shows a debate during the drafting of the Constitution of the United States. After achieving independence from England, the 13 former colonies became a confederation. However, this proved to be too weak, and in 1788, a federal constitution was ratified. Under the Federal Constitution of the United States, Congress has the power to make laws that are binding on individuals. This is th most important power of federations, and the reason why they are so successful.**

Hitler or a future Melosovic will not be able to organize large-scale resistance to arrest, a world where international law will be seen by all to be just, impartial and necessary, a well-governed global community within which each person will owe his or her ultimate loyalty to humanity as a whole.

Besides a humane, democratic and just framework of international law and governance, we urgently need a new global ethic, - an ethic where loyalty to family, community and nation will be supplemented by a strong sense of the brotherhood of all humans, regardless of race, religion or nationality. Schiller expressed this feeling in his "Ode to Joy", the text of Beethoven's Ninth Symphony. Hearing Beethoven's music and Schiller's words, most of us experience an emotion of resonance and unity with its message: All humans are brothers and sisters - not just some - all! It is almost a national anthem of humanity. The feelings which the music and words provoke are similar to patriotism, but broader. It is this sense of a universal human family, which we need to cultivate in education, in the mass media, and in religion.

Educational reforms are urgently needed, particularly in the teaching of history. As it is taught today, history is a chronicle of power struggles and war, told from a biased national standpoint. Our own race or religion is superior; our own country is always heroic and in the right.

We urgently need to replace this indoctrination in chauvinism by a reformed view of history, where the slow development of human culture is described, giving adequate credit to all those who have contributed. Our modern civilization is built on the achievements of ancient cultures. China, India, Mesopotamia, ancient Egypt, Greece, the Islamic world, Christian Europe, and Jewish intellectual traditions all have contributed. Potatoes, corn and squash are gifts from the American Indians. Human culture, gradually built up over thousands of years by the patient work of millions of hands and minds, should be presented to students of history as a precious heritage - far too precious to be risked in a thermonuclear war.

In the teaching of science too, reforms are needed. Graduates in science and technology should be conscious of their responsibilities. They must resolve never to use their education in the service of war, or in any way which might be harmful to society or to the environment.

In modern societies, mass media play an extremely important role in determining behavior and attitudes. This role can be a negative one when the media show violence and enemy images, but if used constructively, the mass media can offer a powerful means for creating international understanding. If it is indeed true that tribalism is part of human nature, it is extremely important that the mass media be used to the utmost to overcome the barriers between nations and cultures. Through increased communication, the world's peoples can learn to accept each other as members of a single family.

Finally, let us turn to religion, with its enormous influence on human thought and behavior. Christianity, for example, offers a strongly stated ethic, which, if practiced, would make war impossible. In Mathew, the following passage occurs: "Ye have heard it said: Thou shalt love thy neighbor and hate thy enemy. But I say unto you: Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them that spitefully use you and persecute you."

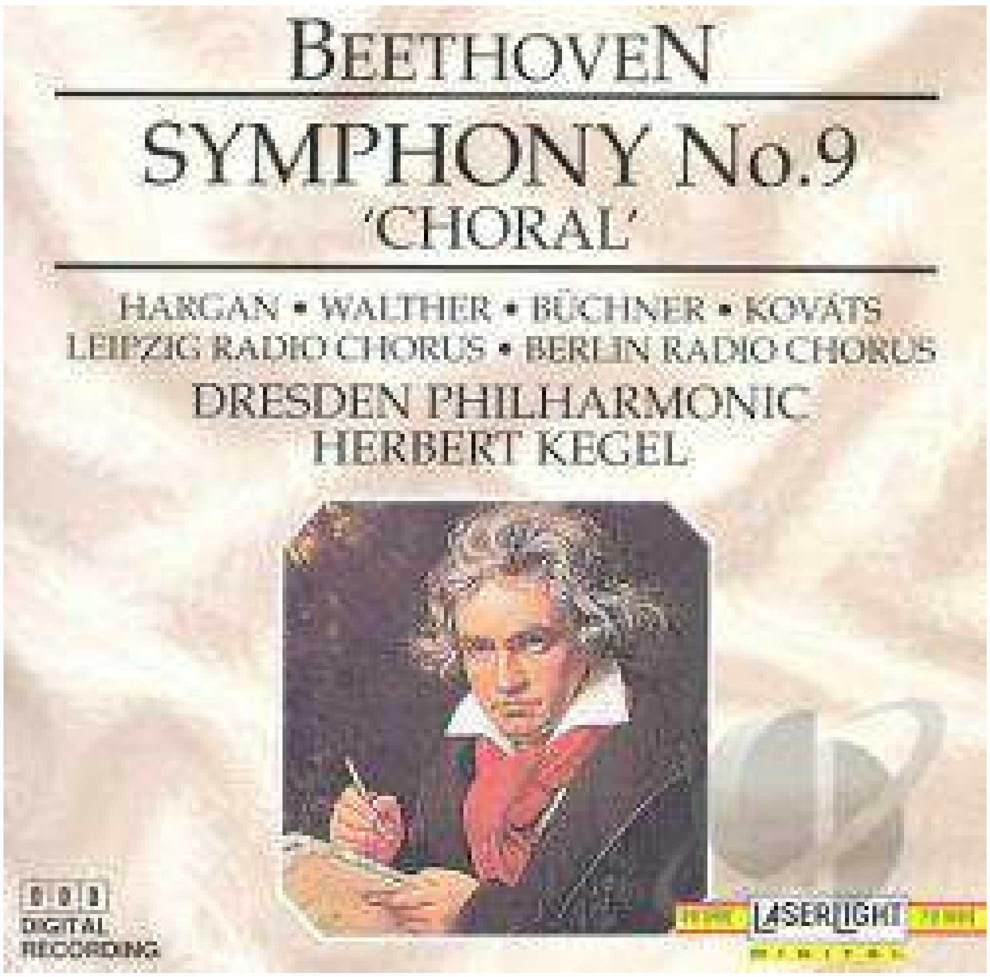


Figure 7.24: **Beethoven's 9th symphony is almost a national anthem of humanity, All people belong to a great family. Not just some. ALL!.**

This seemingly impractical advice, that we should love our enemies, is in fact of the greatest practicality, since acts of unilateral kindness and generosity can stop escalatory cycles of revenge and counter-revenge such as those which characterize the present conflict in the Middle East and the recent troubles of Northern Ireland. However, Christian nations, while claiming to adhere to the ethic of love and forgiveness, have adopted a policy of "massive retaliation", involving systems of thermonuclear missiles whose purpose is to destroy as much as possible of the country at which the retaliation is aimed. It is planned that entire populations shall be killed in a "massive retaliation", innocent children along with the guilty politicians. The startling contradiction between what the Christian nations profess and what they do was obvious even before the advent of nuclear weapons, at the time when Leo Tolstoy, during his last years, was exchanging letters with a young Indian lawyer in South Africa. In one of his letters to Gandhi, Tolstoy wrote:

"The whole life of the Christian peoples is a continuous contradiction between that which they profess and the principles on which they order their lives, a contradiction between love accepted as the law of life, and violence, which is recognized and praised, acknowledged even as a necessity."

"This year, in the spring, at a Scripture examination at a girls' high school in Moscow, the teacher and the bishop present asked the girls questions on the Commandments, and especially on the sixth. After a correct answer, the bishop generally put another question, whether murder was always in all cases forbidden by God's law; and the unhappy young ladies were forced by previous instruction to answer 'Not always' - that murder was permitted in war and in the execution of criminals. Still, when one of these unfortunate young ladies (what I am telling is not an invention but a fact told to me by an eye witness) after her first answer, was asked the usual question, if killing was always sinful, she, agitated and blushing, decisively answered 'Always', and to the usual sophisms of the bishop, she answered with decided conviction that killing was always forbidden in the Old Testament and forbidden by Christ, not only killing but every wrong against a brother. Notwithstanding all his grandeur and arts of speech, the bishop became silent and the girl remained victorious."

As everyone knows, Gandhi successfully applied the principle of non-violence to the civil rights struggle in South Africa, and later to the political movement, which gave India its freedom and independence. The principle of non-violence was also successfully applied by Martin Luther King, and by Nelson Mandela. It is perhaps worthwhile to consider Gandhi's comment on the question of whether the end justifies the means: "The means may be likened to a seed", Gandhi wrote, "and the end to a tree; and there is the same inviolable connection between the means and the end as there is between the seed and the tree." In other words, a dirty method produces a dirty result; killing produces more killing; hate leads to more hate. Everyone who reads the newspapers knows that this is true. But there are positive feedback loops as well as negative ones. A kind act produces a kind response; a generous gesture is returned; hospitality results in reflected hospitality. Buddhists call this principle of reciprocity "the law of karma".

The religious leaders of the world have the opportunity to contribute importantly to the solution of the problem of war. They have the opportunity to powerfully support the

Figure 7.25: **Count Leo Tolstoy said "The sharpest of all contradictions can be seen between the government's professed faith in the Christian law of the brotherhood of all humankind, and the military laws of the state, which force each young man to prepare himself for enmity and murder, so that each must be simultaneously a Christian and a gladiator."**

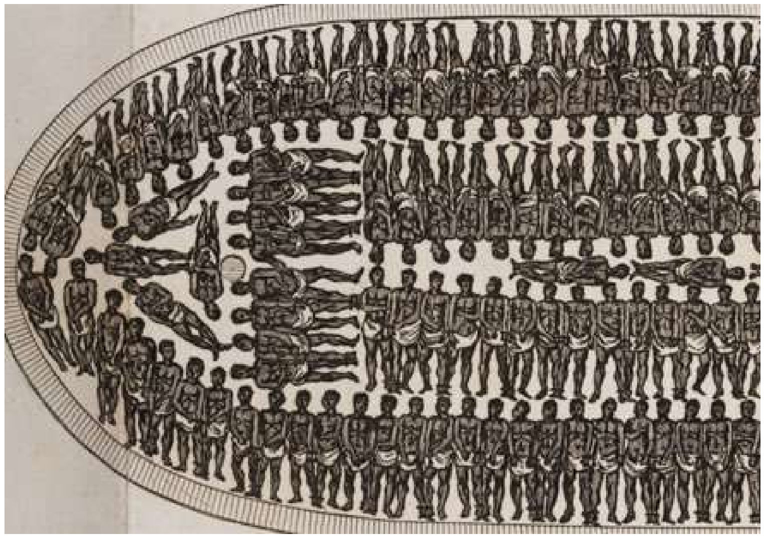


Figure 7.26: **Diagram of a slave shop. We can hope and work for a time when war, like slavery, will exist only as a dark memory, fading into the past.**

concept of universal human brotherhood, to build bridges between religious groups, to make intermarriage across ethnic boundaries easier, and to soften the distinctions between communities. If they fail to do this, they will have failed humankind at a time of crisis.

It is useful to consider the analogy between the institution of war and the institution of slavery. We might be tempted to say, "There has always been war, throughout human history; and war will always continue to exist." As an antidote for this kind of pessimism, we can think of slavery, which, like war, has existed throughout most of recorded history. The cultures of ancient Egypt, Greece and Rome were all based on slavery, and, in more recent times, 13 million Africans were captured and forced into a life of slavery in the New World. Slavery was as much an accepted and established institution as war is today. Many people made large profits from slavery, just as arms manufacturers today make enormous profits. Nevertheless, in spite of the weight of vested interests, slavery has now been abolished throughout most of the world.

7.12 Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons, 2017

A Treaty banning nuclear weapons was adopted by an overwhelming majority vote on the floor of the UN General Assembly, following the precedent set by the Arms Trade Treaty. The Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons was passed on 7 July, 2017. It prohibits the development, testing, production, stockpiling, stationing, transfer, use and threat of use of nuclear weapons, as well as assistance and encouragement to the prohibited activities. For nuclear armed states joining the treaty, it provides for a time-bound framework for negotiations leading to the verified and irreversible elimination of its nuclear weapons programme. The International Campaign to Abolish Nuclear Weapons (ICAN) campaigned vigorously for the adoption of the Treaty, and was awarded the 2017 Nobel Peace Prize for its efforts. Although bitterly opposed by nuclear weapons states, the Treaty has great normative value, and one fervently hopes that the force of public opinion will eventually force all governments to give their citizens what the vast majority long for: a nuclear-weapon-free world.

It is generally agreed that a full-scale nuclear war would have disastrous effects, not only on belligerent nations but also on neutral countries.

7.13 Hope for the future, and responsibility for the future

Can we abolish the institution of war? Can we hope and work for a time when the terrible suffering inflicted by wars will exist only as a dark memory fading into the past? I believe that this is really possible. The problem of achieving internal peace over a large geographical area is not insoluble. It has already been solved. There exist today many nations or regions within each of which there is internal peace, and some of these are so large that they are almost worlds in themselves. One thinks of China, India, Brazil, the Russian Federation, the United States, and the European Union. Many of these enormous societies contain a variety of ethnic groups, a variety of religions and a variety of languages, as well as striking contrasts between wealth and poverty. If these great land areas have been forged into peaceful and cooperative societies, cannot the same methods of government be applied globally?

Today, there is a pressing need to enlarge the size of the political unit from the nation-state to the entire world. The need to do so results from the terrible dangers of modern weapons and from global economic interdependence. The progress of science has created this need, but science has also given us the means to enlarge the political unit: Our almost miraculous modern communications media, if properly used, have the power to weld all of humankind into a single supportive and cooperative society.

We live at a critical time for human civilization, a time of crisis. Each of us must accept his or her individual responsibility for solving the problems that are facing the world today. We cannot leave this to the politicians. That is what we have been doing until now, and the results have been disastrous. Nor can we trust the mass media to give us adequate public discussion of the challenges that we are facing. We have a responsibility towards future generations to take matters into our own hands, to join hands and make our own alternative media, to work actively and fearlessly for better government and for a better society.

We, the people of the world, not only have the facts on our side; we also have numbers on our side. The vast majority of the world's peoples long for peace. The vast majority long for abolition of nuclear weapons, and for a world of kindness and cooperation, a world of respect for the environment. No one can make these changes alone, but together we can do it.

Together, we have the power to choose a future where international anarchy, chronic war and institutionalized injustice will be replaced by democratic and humane global governance, a future where the madness and immorality of war will be replaced by the rule of law.

We need a sense of the unity of all mankind to save the future, a new global ethic for a united world. We need politeness and kindness to save the future, politeness and kindness not only within nations but also between nations. To save the future, we need a just and democratic system of international law; for with law shall our land be built up, but with lawlessness laid waste.

Today we look with horror at drawings of slave ships, where human beings were packed together like cord-wood; and we are amazed that such cruelty could have been possible. Can we not hope for a time when our descendants, reading descriptions of the wars of the twentieth century, will be equally amazed that such cruelty could have been possible? If we use them constructively, the vast resources now wasted on war can initiate a new era of happiness and prosperity for the family of man. It is within our power to let this happen. The example of the men and women who worked to rid the world of slavery can give us courage as we strive for a time when war will exist only as a dark memory fading into the past.

Suggestions for further reading

1. Lynda Mahood, Vic Satzewich, *The Save the Children Fund and the Russian Famine of 1921-23: Claims and Counter-Claims about Feeding 'Bolshevik' Children*, Journal of Historical Sociology, 22,1 (2009), 55-83.
2. Clare Mulley, *The Woman Who Saved the Children: A biography of Eglantyne Jebb, Founder of Save the Children* (Oneworld Publications, 2009)
3. Rory O'Keeffe, *The Toss of a Coin: 'voices from a modern crisis'*. Hygge Media. 22 September 2015.
4. A. Robock, L. Oman, G. L. Stenchikov, O. B. Toon, C. Bardeen, and R. Turco, "Climatic consequences of regional nuclear conflicts", Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics, Vol. 7, p. 2003-2012, 2007.
5. M. Mills, O. Toon, R. Turco, D. Kinnison, R. Garcia, "Massive global ozone loss predicted following regional nuclear conflict", Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences (USA), vol. 105(14), pp. 5307-12, Apr 8, 2008.
6. O. Toon , A. Robock, and R. Turco, "The Environmental Consequences of Nuclear War", Physics Today, vol. 61, No. 12, p. 37-42, 2008.
7. R. Turco, O. Toon, T. Ackermann, J. Pollack, and C. Sagan, "Nuclear Winter: Global consequences of multiple nuclear explosions", Science, Vol. 222, No. 4630, pp. 1283-1292, December 1983.

8. A. Robock, L. Oman, G. Stenchikov, “Nuclear winter revisited with a modern climate model and current nuclear arsenals: Still catastrophic consequences”, Journal of Geophysical Research - Atmospheres, Vol. 112, No. D13, p. 4 of 14, 2007.
9. I. Helfand, “An Assessment of the Extent of Projected Global Famine Resulting From Limited, Regional Nuclear War”, International Physicians for the Prevention of Nuclear War, Physicians for Social Responsibility, Leeds, MA, 2007.
10. George P. Schultz, William J. Perry, Henry A. Kissinger and Sam Nunn, “A World Free of Nuclear Weapons”, The Wall Street Journal, January 4, 2007, page A15 and January 15, 2008, page A15.
11. Mikhail Gorbachev, “The Nuclear Threat”, The Wall Street Journal, January 30, 2007, page A15.
12. Massimo DAlema, Gianfranco Fini, Giorgio La Malfa, Arturo Parisi and Francesco Calogero, “For a World Free of Nuclear Weapons”, Corriere Della Sera, July 24, 2008.
13. Hoover Institution, “Reykjavik Revisited; Steps Towards a World Free of Nuclear Weapons”, October, 2007.
14. Douglas Hurd, Malcolm Rifkind, David Owen and George Robertson, “Start Worrying and Learn to Ditch the Bomb”, The Times, June 30, 2008.
15. Des Brown, Secretary of State for Defense, UK, “Laying the Foundations for Multilateral Disarmament”, Geneva Conference on Disarmament, February 5, 2008.
16. Government of Norway, International Conference on “Achieving the Vision of a World Free of Nuclear Weapons”, Oslo, Norway, February 26-27, 2008.
17. Jonas Gahr Støre, Foreign Minister, Norway, “Statement at the Conference on Disarmament”, Geneva, March 4, 2008.
18. Anne-Grete Strøm-Erichsen, Defense Minister, Norway, “Emerging Opportunities for Nuclear Disarmament”, Pugwash Conference, Canada, July 11, 2008.
19. Kevin Rudd, Prime Minister, Australia, “International Commission on Nuclear Non-Proliferation and Disarmament”, Media Release, July 9, 2008.
20. Global Zero, www.globalzero.org/paris-conference
21. Helmut Schmidt, Richard von Weizäcker, Egon Bahr and Hans-Dietrich Genscher, “Towards a Nuclear-Free World: a German View”, International Herald Tribune, January 9, 2009.
22. Hans M. Kristensen and Elliot Negin, “Support Growing for Removal of U.S. Nuclear Weapons from Europe”, Common Dreams Newscenter, first posted May 6, 2005.
23. David Krieger, “President-elect Obama and a World Free of Nuclear Weapons”, Nuclear Age Peace Foundation Website, 2008.
24. J.L. Henderson, *Hiroshima*, Longmans (1974).
25. A. Osada, *Children of the A-Bomb, The Testament of Boys and Girls of Hiroshima*, Putnam, New York (1963).
26. M. Hachiya, M.D., *Hiroshima Diary*, The University of North Carolina Press, Chapel Hill, N.C. (1955).
27. M. Yass, *Hiroshima*, G.P. Putnams Sons, New York (1972).
28. R. Jungk, *Children of the Ashes*, Harcourt, Brace and World (1961).
29. B. Hirschfield, *A Cloud Over Hiroshima*, Baily Brothers and Swinfin Ltd. (1974).

30. J. Hersey, *Hiroshima*, Penguin Books Ltd. (1975).
31. R. Rhodes, *Dark Sun: The Making of the Hydrogen Bomb*, Simon and Schuster, New York, (1995)
32. R. Rhodes, *The Making of the Atomic Bomb*, Simon and Schuster, New York, (1988).
33. D.V. Babst et al., *Accidental Nuclear War: The Growing Peril*, Peace Research Institute, Dundas, Ontario, (1984).
34. S. Britten, *The Invisible Event: An Assessment of the Risk of Accidental or Unauthorized Detonation of Nuclear Weapons and of War by Miscalculation*, Menard Press, London, (1983).
35. M. Dando and P. Rogers, *The Death of Deterrence*, CND Publications, London, (1984).
36. N.F. Dixon, *On the Psychology of Military Incompetence*, Futura, London, (1976).
37. D. Frei and C. Catrina, *Risks of Unintentional Nuclear War*, United Nations, Geneva, (1982).
38. H. LEtang, *Fit to Lead?*, Heinemann Medical, London, (1980).
39. SPANW, *Nuclear War by Mistake - Inevitable or Preventable?*, Swedish Physicians Against Nuclear War, Lulea, (1985).
40. J. Goldblat, *Nuclear Non-proliferation: The Why and the Wherefore*, (SIPRI Publications), Taylor and Francis, (1985).
41. IAEA, *International Safeguards and the Non-proliferation of Nuclear Weapons*, International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna, (1985).
42. J. Schear, ed., *Nuclear Weapons Proliferation and Nuclear Risk*, Gower, London, (1984).
43. D.P. Barash and J.E. Lipton, *Stop Nuclear War! A Handbook*, Grove Press, New York, (1982).
44. C.F. Barnaby and G.P. Thomas, eds., *The Nuclear Arms Race: Control or Catastrophe*, Francis Pinter, London, (1982).
45. L.R. Beres, *Apocalypse: Nuclear Catastrophe in World Politics*, Chicago University press, Chicago, IL, (1980).
46. F. Blackaby et al., eds., *No-first-use*, Taylor and Francis, London, (1984).
47. NS, ed., *New Statesman Papers on Destruction and Disarmament* (NS Report No. 3), New Statesman, London, (1981).
48. H. Caldicot, *Missile Envy: The Arms Race and Nuclear War*, William Morrow, New York, (1984).
49. R. Ehrlich, *Waging the Peace: The Technology and Politics of Nuclear Weapons*, State University of New York Press, Albany, NY, (1985).
50. W. Epstein, *The Prevention of Nuclear War: A United Nations Perspective*, Gunn and Hain, Cambridge, MA, (1984).
51. W. Epstein and T. Toyoda, eds., *A New Design for Nuclear Disarmament*, Spokesman, Nottingham, (1975).
52. G.F. Kennan, *The Nuclear Delusion*, Pantheon, New York, (1983).
53. R.J. Lifton and R. Falk, *Indefensible Weapons: The Political and Psychological Case Against Nuclearism*, Basic Books, New York, (1982).

54. J.R. Macy, *Despair and Personal Power in the Nuclear Age*, New Society Publishers, Philadelphia, PA, (1983).
55. A.S. Miller et al., eds., *Nuclear Weapons and Law*, Greenwood Press, Westport, CT, (1984).
56. MIT Coalition on Disarmament, eds., *The Nuclear Almanac: Confronting the Atom in War and Peace*, Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, (1984).
57. UN, *Nuclear Weapons: Report of the Secretary-General of the United Nations*, United Nations, New York, (1980).
58. IC, *Proceedings of the Conference on Understanding Nuclear War*, Imperial College, London, (1980).
59. B. Russell, *Common Sense and Nuclear Warfare*, Allen and Unwin, London, (1959).
60. F. Barnaby, *The Nuclear Age*, Almqvist and Wiksell, Stockholm, (1974).
61. D. Albright, F. Berkhout and W. Walker, *Plutonium and Highly Enriched Uranium 1996: World Inventories, Capabilities and Policies*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, (1997).
62. G.T. Allison et al., *Avoiding Nuclear Anarchy: Containing the Threat of Loose Russian Nuclear Weapons and Fissile Material*, MIT Press, Cambridge MA, (1996).
63. B. Bailin, *The Making of the Indian Atomic Bomb: Science, Secrecy, and the Post-colonial State*, Zed Books, London, (1998).
64. G.K. Bertsch and S.R. Grillot, (Eds.), *Arms on the Market: Reducing the Risks of Proliferation in the Former Soviet Union*, Routledge, New York, (1998).
65. P. Bidawi and A. Vanaik, *South Asia on a Short Fuse: Nuclear Politics and the Future of Global Disarmament*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, (2001).
66. F.A. Boyle, *The Criminality of Nuclear Deterrence: Could the U.S. War on Terrorism Go Nuclear?*, Clarity Press, Atlanta GA, (2002).
67. G. Burns, *The Atomic Papers: A Citizens Guide to Selected Books and Articles on the Bomb, the Arms Race, Nuclear Power, the Peace Movement, and Related Issues*, Scarecrow Press, Metuchen NJ, (1984).
68. L. Butler, *A Voice of Reason*, The Bulletin of Atomic Scientists, **54**, 58-61, (1998).
69. R. Butler, *Fatal Choice: Nuclear Weapons and the Illusion of Missile Defense*, Westview Press, Boulder CO, (2001).
70. R.P. Carlisle (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of the Atomic Age*, Facts on File, New York, (2001).
71. G.A. Cheney, *Nuclear Proliferation: The Problems and Possibilities*, Franklin Watts, New York, (1999).
72. A. Cohen, *Israel and the Bomb*, Colombia University Press, New York, (1998).
73. S.J. Diehl and J.C. Moltz, *Nuclear Weapons and Nonproliferation: A Reference Handbook*, ABC-Clio Information Services, Santa Barbara CA, (2002).
74. H.A. Feiveson (Ed.), *The Nuclear Turning Point: A Blueprint for Deep Cuts and De-Alerting of Nuclear Weapons*, Brookings Institution Press, Washington D.C., (1999).
75. R. Forsberg et al., *Nonproliferation Primer: Preventing the Spread of Nuclear, Chemical and Biological Weapons*, MIT Press, Cambridge, (1995).
76. R. Hilsman, *From Nuclear Military Strategy to a World Without War: A History and a Proposal*, Praeger Publishers, Westport, (1999).

77. International Physicians for the Prevention of Nuclear War and The Institute for Energy and Environmental Research *Plutonium: Deadly Gold of the Nuclear Age*, International Physicians Press, Cambridge MA, (1992).
78. R.W. Jones and M.G. McDonough, *Tracking Nuclear Proliferation: A Guide in Maps and Charts, 1998*, The Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, Washington D.C., (1998).
79. R.J. Lifton and R. Falk, *Indefensible Weapons: The Political and Psychological Case Against Nuclearism*, Basic Books, New York, (1982).
80. R.E. Powaski, *March to Armageddon: The United States and the Nuclear Arms Race, 1939 to the Present*, Oxford University Press, (1987).
81. J. Rotblat, J. Steinberger and B. Udgaonkar (Eds.), *A Nuclear-Weapon-Free World: Desirable? Feasible?*, Westview Press, (1993).
82. The United Methodist Council of Bishops, *In Defense of Creation: The Nuclear Crisis and a Just Peace*, Graded Press, Nashville, (1986).
83. U.S. Congress Office of Technology Assessment (Ed.), *Dismantling the Bomb and Managing the Nuclear Materials*, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C., (1993).
84. P. Boyer, *By the Bombs Early Light: American Thought and Culture at the Dawn of the Atomic Age*, University of North Carolina Press, (1985).
85. A. Makhijani and S. Saleska, *The Nuclear Power Deception: Nuclear Mythology From Electricity 'Too Cheap to Meter to 'Inherently Safe Reactors*, Apex Press, (1999).
86. C. Perrow, *Normal Accidents: Living With High-Risk Technologies*, Basic Books, (1984).
87. P. Rogers, *The Risk of Nuclear Terrorism in Britain*, Oxford Research Group, Oxford, (2006).
88. MIT, *The Future of Nuclear Power: An Interdisciplinary MIT Study*, http://web.mit.edu/nuclearpow (2003).
89. Z. Mian and A. Glaser, *Life in a Nuclear Powered Crowd*, INES Newsletter No. 52, 9-13, April, (2006).
90. E. Chivian, and others (eds.), *Last Aid: The Medical Dimensions of Nuclear War*, W.H. Freeman, San Fransisco, (1982).
91. Medical Associations Board of Science and Education, *The Medical Effects of Nuclear War*, Wiley, (1983).
92. Q. Wright, *A Study of War*, Chicago University Press, (1965).
93. M. Kahnert et al., editors, *Children and War*, Peace Union of Finland, (1983).
94. N.A. Guenther, *Children and the Threat of Nuclear War: An Annotated Bibliography*, Compubibs, New York, New York, (1985).
95. D.V. Babst et al, *Accidental Nuclear War: The Growing Peril*, Dundas, Ontario, Peace Research Institute, (1984).
96. J. Schear, editor, *Nuclear Weapons Proliferation and Nuclear Risk*, Gower, London, (1984).

97. E. Chivian et al., editors, (International Physicians for the Prevention of Nuclear War), *Last Aid: The Medical Dimensions of Nuclear War*, W.H. Freeman, San Francisco, (1982).
98. H. Mahler, *World Health is Indivisible*, World Health Organization, Geneva, (1978).
99. E. Kamenka, editor, *Nationalism*, Edward Arnold, London, (1976).
100. Elie Kedourie, *Nationalism in Asia and Africa*, Frank Cass and Company Ltd., London, (1970).
101. S. Freud, *Warum Krieg? Das Bild vom Fiend*, Arbeitsgem. Friedenspedagogik, (1983).
102. R. Levine and D.T. Campbell, *Ethnocentrism: Theories of Conflict, Ethnic Attitudes and Group Behavior*, Wiley, New York, (1972).
103. R.A. Hinde, *Biological Basis of Human Social Behavior*, McGraw-Hill, (1977).
104. R.A. Hinde, *Towards Understanding Human Relationships*, Academic Press, London, (1979).
105. C. Zahn-Waxler, *Altruism and Aggression: Biological and Social Origins*, Cambridge University Press, (1986).
106. R. Axelrod, *The Evolution of Cooperation*, Basic Books, New York, (1984).
107. Arthur Koestler, *The Urge to Self-Destruction*, in *The Place of Values in a World of Facts*, A. Tiselius and S. Nielsson editors, Wiley, New York, (1970).
108. Edith Wynner, *World Federal Government in Maximum Terms: Proposals for United Nations Charter Revision*, Fedonat Press, Afton New York, (1954).

Chapter 8

A SUSTAINABLE AND JUST ECONOMIC SYSTEM

8.1 Madmen and economists

"Anyone who believes in indefinite growth in anything physical, on a physically finite planet, is either mad or an economist". Kenneth E. Boulding (1910-1993)

Why are economists addicted to growth?

Economists (with a few notable exceptions) have long behaved as though growth were synonymous with economic health. If the gross national product of a country increases steadily by 4 percent per year, most economists express approval and say that the economy is healthy. If the economy could be made to grow still faster (they maintain), it would be still more healthy. If the growth rate should fall, economic illness would be diagnosed. However, it is obvious that on a finite Earth, neither population growth nor economic growth can continue indefinitely.

But why do economists cling almost religiously to the idea of growth? In general, growth brings profits to speculators. For example, purchase of land on the outskirts of a growing city will be rewarded as the land increases in value.; and when the economy grows, stocks rise in value. '

Today, as economic growth falters, the defects and injustices of our banking system have come sharply into focus, and light has also been thrown onto the much-too-cozy relationship between banking and government. The collapse of banks during the subprime mortgage crisis of 2008 and their subsequent bailout by means of the taxpayer's money can give us an insight into both phenomena - the faults of our banking system and its infiltration into the halls of government. The same can be said of the present national debt crisis in the Euro zone and elsewhere.

8.2 Fractional reserve banking

One feature of banking that cries out for reform is "fractional reserve banking", i.e. the practice whereby private banks keep only a tiny fraction of the money entrusted to them by their depositors, and lend out all the remaining amount. By doing so, the banks are in effect coining their own money and putting it into circulation, a prerogative that ought to be reserved for governments. Under the system of fractional reserve banking, profits from any expansion of the money supply go to private banks rather than being used by the government to provide social services. This is basically fraudulent and unjust; the banks are in effect issuing their own counterfeit money.

When the economy contracts instead of expanding, the effect of fractional reserve banking is still worse. In that case the depositors ask the banks for their money, which it is their right to do. But the banks do not have the money - they have lent it out, and thus they fail. However, the bankers have insured themselves against this eventuality by buying the votes of government officials. Thus the banks are bailed out and the taxpayers are left with the bill, as in the recent example in which the US Federal Reserve secretly gave 7.7 trillion of the taxpayers' dollars to bail out various banks.

Inside Job

The Academy-Award-Winning documentary film **Inside Job**[1] tells the shocking story of the corruption of the financial sector that led to the 2008 subprime mortgage crisis and bank

[1] https://www.theguardian.com/film/2011/feb/17/inside-job-review
https://topdocumentaryfilms.com/inside-job/

bailout. The film can be seen online free of charge, and is well worth viewing. Of particular interest are discussions of the history of bank deregulation, governmental collusion, and the destabilizing effects of the enormous derivative market.

8.3 Information-driven population growth

Today we are able to estimate the population of the world at various periods in history, and we can also make estimates of global population in prehistoric times. Looking at the data, we can see that the global population of humans has not followed an exponential curve as a function of time, but has instead followed a hyperbolic trajectory.

At the time of Christ, the population of the world is believed to have been approximately 220 million. By 1500, the earth contained 450 million people, and by 1750, the global population exceeded 700 million. As the industrial and scientific revolution has accelerated, global population has responded by increasing at a break-neck speed: In 1930, the population of the world reached two billion; in 1958 three billion; in 1974 four billion; in 1988 five billion, and in 1999, six billion. Today, we have reached 7.6 billion, and roughly a billion people are being added to the world's population every twelve years.

As the physicist Murray Gell-Mann has pointed out, a simple mathematical curve which closely approximates the global population of humans over a period of several thousand years is a hyperbola of the form P = 190,000,000,000/(2025-t). Here P represents the global population of humans and t is the year.

How are we to explain the fact that the population curve is not an exponential? We can turn to Malthus for an answer: According to his model, population does not increase exponentially, except under special circumstances, when the food supply is so ample that the increase of population is entirely unchecked.

Malthus gives us a model of culturally-driven population growth. He tells us that population increase tends to press against the limits of the food supply, and since these limits are culturally determined, population density is also culturally-determined. Hunter-gatherer societies need large tracts of land for their support; and in such societies, the population density is necessarily low. Pastoral methods of food production can support populations of a higher density. Finally, extremely high densities of population can be supported by modern agriculture. Thus, Gell-Mann's hyperbolic curve, should be seen as describing the rapidly-accelerating growth of human culture, this being understood to include methods of food production.

If we look at the curve, P=C/(2025-t), it is obvious that human culture has reached a period of crisis. The curve predicts that the world's population will rise to infinity in the year 2025, which of course is impossible. Somehow the actual trajectory of global population as a function of time must deviate from the hyperbolic curve, and in fact, the trajectory has already begun to fall away from the hyperbola.

Because of the great amount of human suffering which may be involved, and the potentially catastrophic damage to the earth's environment, the question of how the actual trajectory of human population will come to deviate from the hyperbola is a matter of

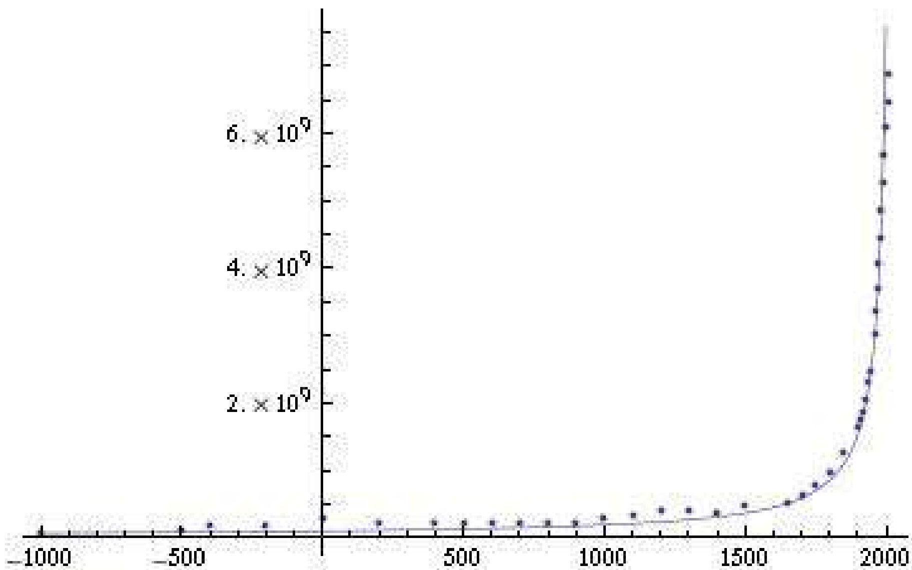


Figure 8.1: **The simple mathematical curve that fits best to human population data over the last 3,000 years is not an exponential increase, but rather a hyperbola of the form P=C/(2025-t). Here P represents population, C=190,000,000,000 and t is the year. The curve goes to infinity at t=2025 (only a few years away), which is of course impossible. Global population has already started to fall away from the hyperbolic trajectory. Will it level off, or will it crash disastrously? Because of the enormous amount of human suffering that would be involved in a population crash, the question has great importance.**

enormous importance. Will population overshoot the sustainable limit, and crash? Or will it gradually approach a maximum? In the case of the second alternative, will the checks which slow population growth be later marriage and family planning? Or will the grim Malthusian forces - famine, disease and war - act to hold the number of humans within the carrying capacity of their environment?

We can anticipate that as the earth's human population approaches 10 billion, severe famines will occur in many developing countries. The beginnings of this tragedy can already be seen. It is estimated that roughly 30,000 children now die every day from starvation, or from a combination of disease and malnutrition.

Beyond the fossil fuel era

An analysis of the global ratio of population to cropland shows that we have probably already exceeded the sustainable limit of population through our dependence on petroleum: Between 1950 and 1982, the use of cheap synthetic fertilizers increased by a factor of 8. Much of our present agricultural output depends on their use, but their production is expensive in terms of energy. Furthermore, petroleum-derived synthetic fibers have reduced the amount of cropland needed for growing natural fibers, and petroleum-driven tractors have replaced draft animals which required cropland for pasturage.

Also, petroleum fuels have replaced fuelwood and other fuels derived for biomass. The reverse transition, from fossil fuels back to renewable energy sources, will require a considerable diversion of land from food production to energy production. For example, 1.1 hectares are needed to grow the sugarcane required for each alcohol-driven Brazilian automobile. This figure may be compared with the steadily falling average area of cropland available to each person in the world: .24 hectares in 1950, .16 hectares in 1982.

Thus there is a danger that just as global population reaches the unprecedented level of 10 billion or more, the agricultural base for supporting it may suddenly collapse. Ecological catastrophe, possibly compounded by war and other disorders, could produce famine and death on a scale unprecedented in history - a disaster of unimaginable proportions, involving billions rather than millions of people.

What would Malthus say today?

What would Malthus tell us if he were alive today? Certainly he would say that we have reached a period of human history where it is vital to stabilize the world's population if catastrophic environmental degradation and famine are to be avoided. He would applaud efforts to reduce suffering by eliminating poverty, widespread disease, and war; but he would point out that, since it is necessary to stop the rapid increase of human numbers, it follows that whenever the positive checks to population growth are removed, it is absolutely necessary to replace them by preventive checks. Malthus' point of view became more broad in the successive editions of his Essay; and if he were alive today, he would probably agree that family planning is the most humane of the preventive checks.

Eliminating poverty and war

In most of the societies which Malthus described, a clear causal link can be seen, not only between population pressure and poverty, but also between population pressure and war. As one reads his Essay, it becomes clear why both these terrible sources of human anguish saturate so much of history, and why efforts to eradicate them have so often met with failure: The only possible way to eliminate poverty and war is to reduce the pressure of population by preventive checks, since the increased food supply produced by occasional cultural advances can give only very temporary relief.

Today, the links between population pressure, poverty, and war are even more pronounced than they were in the past, because the growth of human population has brought us to the absolute limits imposed by ecological constraints. Furthermore, the development of nuclear weapons has made war prohibitively dangerous.

How many people can the earth support in comfort?

The resources of the earth and the techniques of modern science can support a global population of moderate size in comfort and security; but the optimum size is undoubtedly smaller than the world's present population. Given a sufficiently small global population, renewable sources of energy can be found to replace disappearing fossil fuels. Technology may also be able to find renewable substitutes for many disappearing mineral resources for a global population of a moderate size. What technology cannot do, however, is to give a global population of 10 billion people the standard of living which the industrialized countries enjoy today.

8.4 Entropy and economics

We urgently need to shift quickly from fossil fuels to renewable energy if we are to avoid a tipping point after which human efforts to avoid catastrophic climate change will be futile because feedback loops will have taken over. The dangerous methane hydrate feedback loop is discussed in an excellent short video made by Thom Hartmann and the Leonardo DiCaprio Foundation.[2]

Celebrated author and activist Naomi Klein has emphasized the link between need for economic reform and our urgent duty to address climate change.[3]

Rebel economist Prof. Tim Jackson discusses the ways in which our present economic system has failed us, and the specific reforms that are needed. In one of his publications, he says: "The myth of growth has failed us. It has failed the two billion people who still live on 2 dollars a day. It has failed the fragile ecological systems on which we depend for

[2] https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sRGVTK-AAvw
http://lasthours.org/

[3] http://thischangeseverything.org/naomi-klein/
http://www.theguardian.com/profile/naomiklein

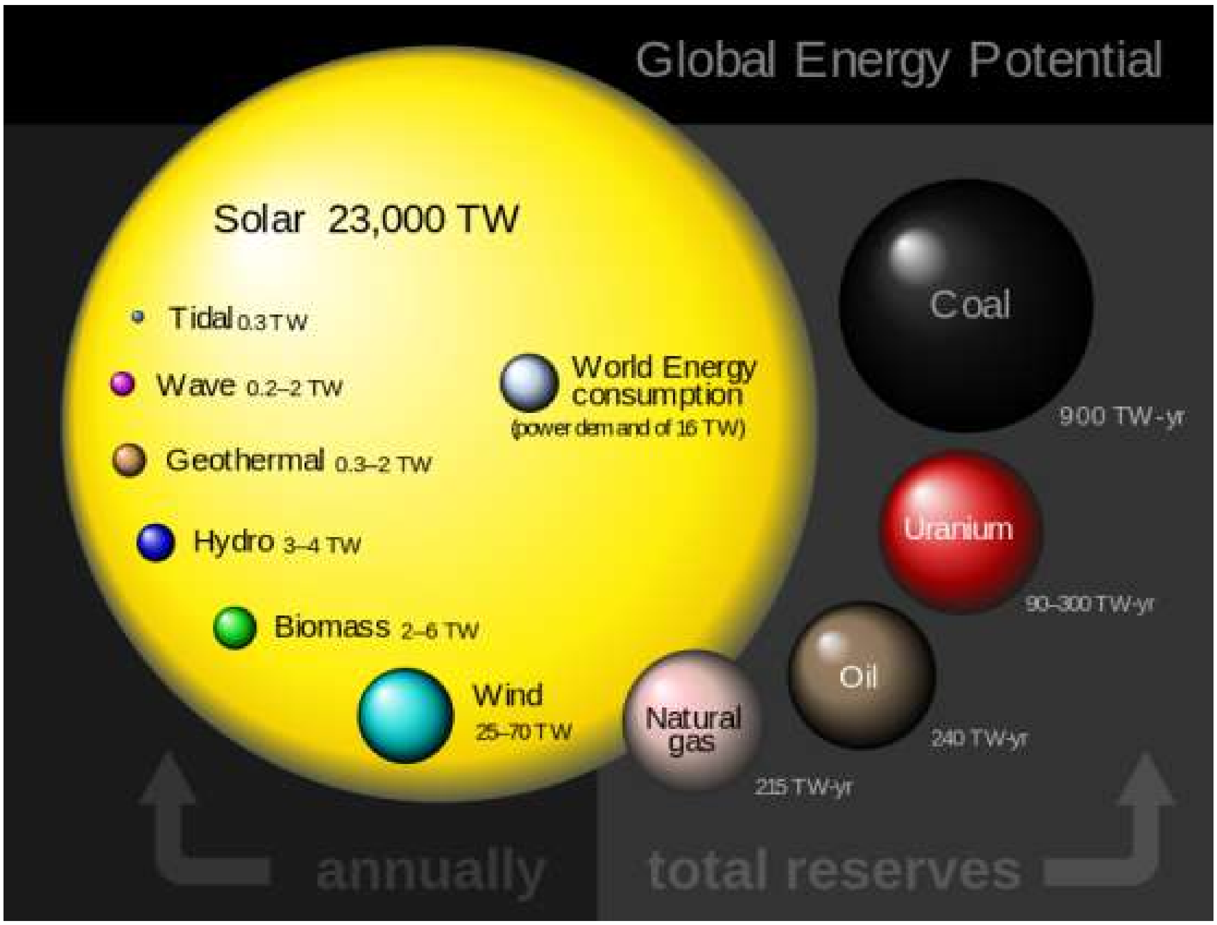


Figure 8.2: **Global energy potential. Comparison of renewable and conventional planetary energy reserves and sources. While renewables display their power potential in terawatts (TW) with the corresponding annual amount of energy, conventional sources display their total recoverable energy reserves in terawatt-years (TW-yr). Author: Rfassbind, Wikimedia Commons**

survival. It has failed, spectacularly, in its own terms, to provide economic stability and secure people's livelihood." [4]

What is entropy?

Entropy is a quantity, originally defined in statistical mechanics and thermodynamics. It is a measure of the statistical probability of any state of a system: The greater the entropy, the greater the probability. The second law of thermodynamics asserts that entropy of the universe always increases with time. In other words, the universe as a whole is constantly moving towards states of greater and greater probability.

For any closed system, the same is true. Such systems move in time towards states of greater and greater probability. However, the earth, with its biosphere, is not a closed system. The earth constantly receives an enormous stream of light from the sun. The radiation which we receive from the sun brings us energy that can be used to perform work, and in physics this is called "free energy". Because of this flood of incoming sunlight, plants, animals and humans are able to create structures which from a statistical point of view are highly unlikely.

The disorder and statistical probability of the universe is constantly increasing, but because the earth is not a closed system, we are able to create local order, and complex, statistically improbable structures, like the works of Shakespeare, the Mona Lisa and the Internet. The human economy is driven by the free energy which we receive as income from the sun. Money is, in fact, a symbol for free energy, and free energy might be thought of as "negative entropy". There is also a link between free energy and information.[5]

Human society as a superorganism, with the global economy as its digestive system

A completely isolated human being would find it as difficult to survive for a long period of time as would an isolated ant or bee or termite. Therefore it seems correct to regard human society as a superorganism. In the case of humans, the analog of the social insects' nest is the enormous and complex material structure of civilization. It is, in fact, what we call the human economy. It consists of functioning factories, farms, homes, transportation links, water supplies, electrical networks, computer networks and much more.

Almost all of the activities of modern humans take place through the medium of these external "exosomatic" parts of our social superorganism. The terms "exosomatic" and "endosomatic" were coined by the American scientist Alfred Lotka (1880-1949). A lobster's claw is endosomatic; it is part of the lobster's body. The hammer used by a human is exosomatic, like a detachable claw. Lotka spoke of "exosomatic evolution", including in

[4] http://www.theguardian.com/sustainable-business/rio-20-tim-jackson-leaders-green-economy?newsfeed=true
http://www.theguardian.com/sustainable-business/consumerism-sustainability-short-termism

[5] http://www.amazon.com/Information-Theory-And-Evolution-Edition/dp/9814401234

this term not only cultural evolution but also the building up of the material structures of civilization.

The economy associated with the human superorganism “eats” resources and free energy. It uses these inputs to produce local order, and finally excretes them as heat and waste. The process is closely analogous to food passing through the alimentary canal of an individual organism. The free energy and resources that are the inputs of our economy drive it just as food drives the processes of our body, but in both cases, waste products are finally excreted in a degraded form.

Almost all of the free energy that drives the human economy came originally from the sun’s radiation, the exceptions being geothermal energy which originates in the decay of radioactive substances inside the earth, and tidal energy, which has its origin in the slowing of the motions of the earth-moon system. However, since the start of the Industrial Revolution, our economy has been using the solar energy stored in of fossil fuels. These fossil fuels were formed over a period of several hundred million years. We are using them during a few hundred years, i.e., at a rate approximately a million times the rate at which they were formed.

The present rate of consumption of fossil fuels is more than 14 terawatts and, if used at the present rate, fossil fuels would last less than a century. However, because of the very serious threats posed by climate change, human society would be well advised to stop the consumption of coal, oil and natural gas within the next two decades.

The rate of growth of of new renewable energy sources is increasing rapidly. These sources include small hydro, modern biomass, solar, wind, geothermal, wave and tidal energy. There is an urgent need for governments to set high taxes on fossil fuel consumption and to shift subsidies from the petroleum and nuclear industries to renewables. These changes in economic policy are needed to make the prices of renewables more competitive.

The shock to the global economy that will be caused by the end of the fossil fuel era will be compounded by the scarcity of other non-renewable resources, such as metals. While it is true (as neoclassical economists emphasize) that “matter and energy can neither be created nor destroyed”, free energy can be degraded into heat, and concentrated deposits of minerals can be dispersed. Both the degradation of free energy into heat and the dispersal of minerals involve increases of entropy.

8.5 Frederick Soddy

One of the first people to call attention to the relationship between entropy and economics was the English radiochemist Frederick Soddy (1877-1956). Soddy won the Nobel Prize for Chemistry in 1921 for his work with Ernest Rutherford demonstrating the transmutation of elements in radioactive decay processes. His concern for social problems then led him to a critical study of the assumptions of classical economics. Soddy believed that there is a close connection between free energy and wealth, but only a very tenuous connection between wealth and money.

Soddy was extremely critical of the system of “fractional reserve banking” whereby private banks keep only a small fraction of the money that is entrusted to them by their depositors and lend out the remaining amount. He pointed out that this system means that the money supply is controlled by the private banks rather than by the government, and also that profits made from any expansion of the money supply go to private corporations instead of being used to provide social services. Fractional reserve banking exists today, not only in England but also in many other countries. Soddy's criticisms of this practice cast light on the subprime mortgage crisis of 2008 and the debt crisis of 2011.

As Soddy pointed out, real wealth is subject to the second law of thermodynamics. As entropy increases, real wealth decays. Soddy contrasted this with the behavior of debt at compound interest, which increases exponentially without any limit, and he remarked:

"You cannot permanently pit an absurd human convention, such as the spontaneous increment of debt [compound interest] against the natural law of the spontaneous decrement of wealth [entropy]". Thus, in Soddy's view, it is a fiction to maintain that being owed a large amount of money is a form of real wealth.

Frederick Soddy's book, "Wealth, virtual wealth and debt: The solution of the economic paradox", published in 1926 by Allen and Unwin, was received by the professional economists of the time as the quixotic work of an outsider. Today, however, Soddy's common-sense economic analysis is increasingly valued for the light that it throws on the problems of our fractional reserve banking system, which becomes more and more vulnerable to failure as economic growth falters.[6]

Currency reform, and nationalization of banks

Frederick Soddy was writing at a time when England's currency was leaving the gold standard, and in order to replace this basis for the currency, he proposed an index system. Soddy's index was to be based on a standard shopping basket containing household items, such as bread, milk, potatoes and so on. If the price of the items in the basket rose, more currency would be issued by the nationalized central bank. If the price fell, currency would be withdrawn.

Nationalization of banks was proposed by Soddy as a means of avoiding the evils of the fractional reserve banking system. Today we see a revival of the idea of nationalized banks, or local user-owned cooperative banks. The Grameen Bank, founded by Prof. Muhammad Yunus, pioneered the idea of socially-motivated banks for the benefit poor people who would ordinarily be unable to obtain loans. The bank and its founder won a Nobel Peace Prize in 2006.[7]

---

[6] www.fadedpage.com/link.php?file=20140873-a5.pdf
http://human-wrongs-watch.net/2015/07/08/debt-slavery/

[7] http://www.grameen-info.org/history/
http://www.ibtimes.com/greece-drawing-contingency-plans-nationalize-banks-bring-parallel-currency-report-1868830
http://www.quora.com/Why-were-banks-nationalized-in-India
http://www.bloomberg.com/news/articles/2015-01-28/greek-bank-investors-hammered-as-3-day-slump-wipes-12-billion
http://www.armstrongeconomics.com/archives/30531

8.6 Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen: Ecological Economics

The incorporation of the idea of entropy into economic thought also owes much to the mathematician and economist Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen (1906-1994), the son a Romanian army officer. Georgescu-Roegen's talents were soon recognized by the Romanian school system, and he was given an outstanding education in mathematics, which later contributed to his success and originality as an economist.

Between 1927 and 1930 the young Georgescu studied at the Institute de Statistique in Paris, where he completed an award-winning thesis: "On the problem of finding out the cyclical components of phenomena". He then worked in England with Karl Pearson from 1930 to 1932, and during this period his work attracted the attention of a group of economists who were working on a project called the Harvard Economic Barometer. He received a Rockefeller Fellowship to join this group, but when he arrived at Harvard, he found that the project had been disbanded.

In desperation, Georgescu-Roegen asked the economist Joseph Schumpeter for an appointment to his group. Schumpeter's group was in fact a remarkably active and interesting one, which included the future Nobel laureate Wassely Leontief; and there followed a period of intense intellectual activity during which Georgescu-Roegen became an economist.

Despite offers of a permanent position at Harvard, Georgescu-Roegen returned to his native Romania in the late 1930's and early 1940's in order to help his country. He served as a member of the Central Committee of the Romanian National Peasant Party. His experiences at this time led to his insight that economic activity involves entropy. He was also helped to this insight by Borel's monograph on Statistical Mechanics, which he had read during his Paris period.

Georgescu-Roegen later wrote: "The idea that the economic process is not a mechanical analogue, but an entropic, unidirectional transformation began to turn over in my mind long ago, as I witnessed the oil wells of the Plosti field of both World Wars' fame becoming dry one by one, and as I grew aware of the Romanian peasants' struggle against the deterioration of their farming soil by continuous use and by rains as well. However it was the new representation of a process that enabled me to crystallize my thoughts in describing the economic process as the entropic transformation of valuable natural resources (low entropy) into valueless waste (high entropy)."

After making many technical contributions to economic theory, Georgescu-Roegen returned to this insight in his important 1971 book, "The Entropy Law and the Economic Process" (Harvard University Press), where he outlines his concept of bioeconomics. In a later book, "Energy and Economic Myths" (Pergamon Press, New York, 1976), he offered the following recommendations for moving towards a bioeconomic society:

1. The complete prohibition of weapons production, thereby releasing productive forces

---

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nationalization
http://www.theguardian.com/world/2015/jul/23/beppe-grillo-calls-for-nationalisation-of-italian-banks-and-exit-from-euro
http://dissidentvoice.org/2015/07/whats-wrong-with-our-monetary-system-and-how-to-fix-it/

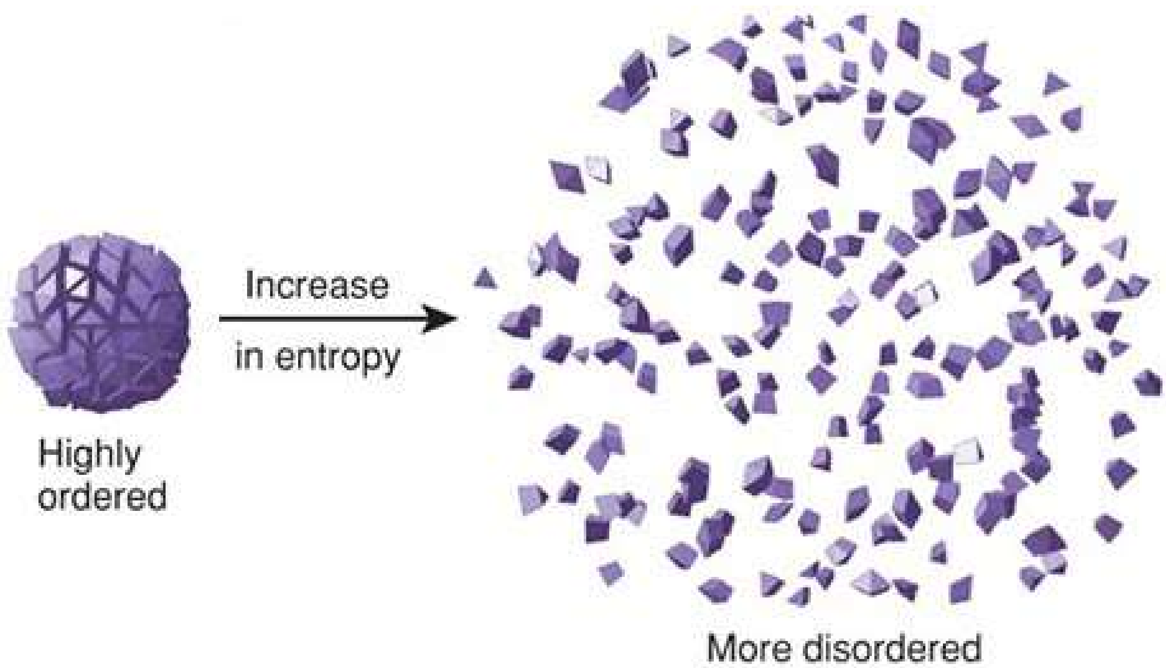


Figure 8.3: **According to the second law of thermodynamics, the entropy of the universe constantly increases. Increase of entropy corresponds to increase of disorder, and also to increase of statistical probability. Living organisms on the earth are able to achieve a high degree of order and highly improbable structures because the earth is not a closed system. It constantly receives free energy (i.e. energy capable of doing work) from the sun, and this free energy can be thought of as carrying thermodynamic information, or "negative entropy". Source: flowchainsensel.wordpress.co,**

Figure 8.4: **Wind, solar, and biomass are three emerging renewable sources of energy. Wind turbines in a rapeseed field in Sandesneben, Germany. Author: Jürgen from Sandesneben, Germany, Wikimedia Commons**

for more constructive purposes;

2. Immediate aid to underdeveloped countries;
3. Gradual decrease in population to a level that could be maintained only by organic agriculture;
4. Avoidance, and strict regulation if necessary, of wasteful energy use;
5. Abandon our attachment to "extravagant gadgetry";
6. "Get rid of fashion";
7. Make goods more durable and repairable; and
8. Cure ourselves of workaholic habits by re-balancing the time spent on work and leisure, a shift that will become incumbent as the effects of the other changes make themselves felt.

Georgescu-Roegen did not believe that his idealistic recommendations would be adopted, and he feared that human society is headed for a crash.

8.7 Herman E. Daly and Kozo Mayumi

Limits to growth

Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen's influence continues to be felt today, not only through his own books and papers but also through those of his students, the distinguished economists Herman E. Daly and Kozo Mayumi, who for many years have been advocating a steady-state

Figure 8.5: **Today, Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen's work for a sustainable steady.state economic system is ably carried forward by his two distinguished students, Professors Herman E. Daly (above) and Kozo Mayumi (below).**

economy. As they point out in their books and papers, it is becoming increasingly apparent that unlimited economic growth on a finite planet is a logical impossibility. However, it is important to distinguish between knowledge, wisdom and culture, which can and should continue to grow, and growth in the sense of an increase in the volume of material goods produced. It is growth in the latter sense that is reaching its limits.

Daly describes our current situation as follows: "The most important change in recent times has been the growth of one subsystem of the Earth, namely the economy, relative to the total system, the ecosphere. This huge shift from an 'empty' to a 'full' world is truly 'something new under the sun'... The closer the economy approaches the scale of the whole Earth, the more it will have to conform to the physical behavior mode of the Earth... The remaining natural world is no longer able to provide the sources and sinks for the metabolic throughput necessary to sustain the existing oversized economy, much less a growing one. Economists have focused too much on the economy's circulatory system and have neglected to study its digestive tract."[8]

In the future, the only way that we can avoid economic collapse is to build a steady-state economy. There exists much literature on how this can be achieved, and these writings ought to become a part of the education of all economists and politicians.

8.8 The global food crisis

Optimum population in the long-term future

What is the optimum population of the world? It is certainly not the maximum number that can be squeezed onto the globe by eradicating every species of plant and animal that cannot be eaten. The optimum global population is one that can be supported in comfort, equality and dignity, and with respect for the environment.

In 1848 (when there were just over one billion people in the world), John Stuart Mill described the optimal global population in the following words: "The density of population necessary to enable mankind to obtain, in the greatest degree, all the advantages of cooperation and social intercourse, has, in the most populous countries, been attained. A population may be too crowded, although all be amply supplied with food and raiment."

"... Nor is there much satisfaction in contemplating the world with nothing left to the spontaneous activity of nature; with every rood of land brought into cultivation, which is capable of growing food for human beings; every flowery waste or natural pasture plowed up, all quadrupeds or birds which are not domesticated for man's use exterminated as his rivals for food, every hedgerow or superfluous tree rooted out, and scarcely a place left where a wild shrub or flower could grow without being eradicated as a weed in the name

[8]http://dalynews.org/learn/blog/
http://steadystate.org/category/herman-daly/
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=EN5esbvAt-w
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wlR-VsXtM4Y
http://www.imf.org/external/pubs/ft/survey/so/2015/car031315a.htm

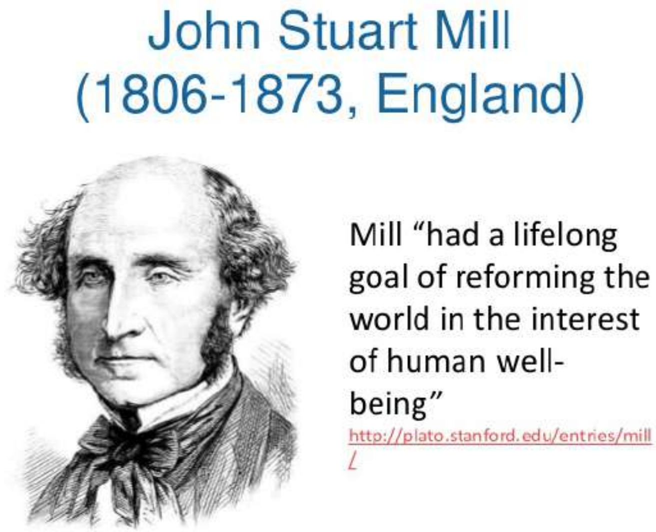


Figure 8.6: **Mill wrote: "I sincerely hope, for the sake of posterity, that they will be content to be stationary, long before necessity compels them to it." Source: www.slideshare.net**

of improved agriculture. If the earth must lose that great portion of its pleasantness which it owes to things that the unlimited increase of wealth and population would extirpate from it, for the mere purpose of enabling it to support a larger, but not better or happier population, I sincerely hope, for the sake of posterity, that they will be content to be stationary, long before necessity compels them to it." (From John Stuart Mill, "Principles of Political Economy, With Some of Their Applications to Social Philosophy", 1848.)

Has the number of humans in the world already exceeded the earth's sustainable limits? Will the global population of humans crash catastrophically after having exceeded the carrying capacity of the environment? There is certainly a danger that this will happen - a danger that the 21st century will bring very large scale famines to vulnerable parts of the world, because modern energy-intensive agriculture will be dealt a severe blow by the end of the fossil fuel era, and because climate change will reduce the world'-s agricultural output.

When the major glaciers in the Himalayas have melted, they will no longer be able to give India and China summer water supplies; rising oceans will drown much agricultural land; and aridity will reduce the output of many regions that now produce much of the world'-s grain. Falling water tables in overdrawn aquifers, and loss of topsoil will add to the problem. We should be aware of the threat of a serious global food crisis in the 21st century if we are to have a chance of avoiding it.

The term *ecological footprint* was introduced by William Rees and Mathis Wackernagel in the early 1990's to compare demands on the environment with the earth's capacity to regenerate. In 2015, humanity used environmental resources at such a rate that it would

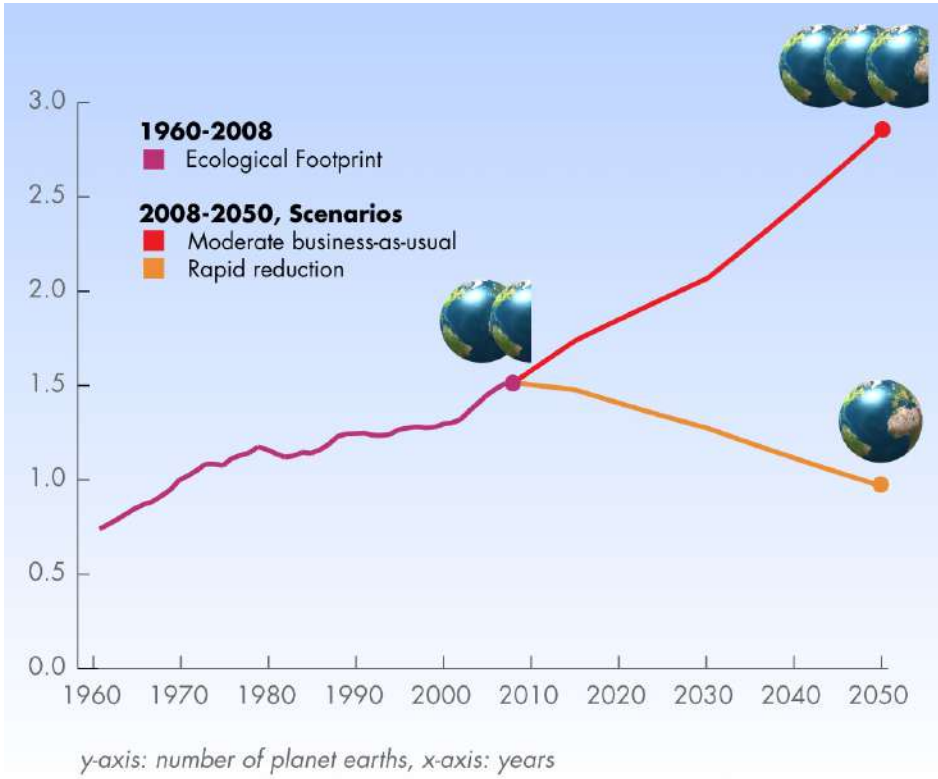


Figure 8.7: **Our present trajectory is completely unsustainable. If we follow it, then by 2050 it would take almost three earths to regenerate our demands on resources. Source: footprintnetwork.org**

take 1.6 earths to renew them. In other words, we have already exceeded the earth's carrying capacity. Since eliminating the poverty that characterizes much of the world today will require more resources per capita, rather than less. it seems likely that in the era beyond fossil fuels, the optimum global population will be considerably less than the present population of the world.

Limitations on cropland

In 1944 the Norwegian-American plant geneticist Norman Borlaug was sent to Mexico by the Rockefeller Foundation to try to produce new wheat varieties that might increase Mexico's agricultural output. Borlaug'-s dedicated work on this project was spectacularly successful. He remained with the project for 16 years, and his group made 6,000 individual crossings of wheat varieties to produce high-yield disease-resistant strains.

In 1963, Borlaug visited India, bringing with him 100 kg. of seeds from each of his most promising wheat strains. After testing these strains in Asia, he imported 450 tons of the Lerma Rojo and Sonora 64 varieties: 250 tons for Pakistan and 200 for India. By 1968, the success of these varieties was so great that school buildings had to be commandeered

Figure 8.8: **Norman Borlaug and agronomist George Harrer in 1943. Source: beforeitsnews.com**

to store the output. Borlaug'-s work began to be called a "Green Revolution". In India, the research on high-yield crops was continued and expanded by Prof. M.S. Swaminathan and his co-workers. The work of Green Revolution scientists, such Norman Borlaug and M.S. Swaminathan, has been credited with saving the lives of as many as a billion people.

Despite these successes, Borlaug believes that the problem of population growth is still a serious one. "Africa and the former Soviet republics", Borlaug states, "and the Cerrado, are the last frontiers. After they are in use, the world will have no additional sizable blocks of arable land left to put into production, unless you are willing to level whole forests, which you should not do. So, future food-production increases will have to come from higher yields. And though I have no doubt that yields will keep going up, whether they can go up enough to feed the population monster is another matter. Unless progress with agricultural yields remains very strong, the next century will experience human misery that, on a sheer numerical scale, will exceed the worst of everything that has come before."

With regard to the prospect of increasing the area of cropland, a report by the United Nations Food and Agricultural Organization (Provisional Indicative World Plan for Agricultural Development, FAO, Rome, 1970) states that "In Southern Asia,... in some countries of Eastern Asia, in the Near East and North Africa... there is almost no scope for expanding agricultural area... In the drier regions, it will even be necessary to return to permanent pasture the land that is marginal and submarginal for cultivation. In most of Latin America and Africa south of the Sahara, there are still considerable possibilities for expanding cultivated areas; but the costs of development are high, and it will often be more economical to intensify the utilization of areas already settled." Thus there is a possibility of increasing the area of cropland in Africa south of the Sahara and in Latin America, but only at the cost of heavy investment and at the additional cost of destruction of tropical rain forests.

Rather than an increase in the global area of cropland, we may encounter a future loss of cropland through soil erosion, salination, desertification, loss of topsoil, depletion of minerals in topsoil, urbanization and failure of water supplies. In China and in the Southwestern part of the United States, water tables are falling at an alarming rate. The Ogallala aquifer (which supplies water to many of the plains states in the central and southern parts of the United States) has a yearly overdraft of 160%.

In the 1950's, both the U.S.S.R and Turkey attempted to convert arid grasslands into wheat farms. In both cases, the attempts were defeated by drought and wind erosion, just as the wheat farms of Oklahoma were overcome by drought and dust in the 1930's. If irrigation of arid lands is not performed with care, salt may be deposited, so that the land is ruined for agriculture. This type of desertification can be seen, for example, in some parts of Pakistan. Another type of desertification can be seen in the Sahel region of Africa, south of the Sahara. Rapid population growth in the Sahel has led to overgrazing, destruction of trees, and wind erosion, so that the land has become unable to support even its original population.

Especially worrying is a prediction of the International Panel on Climate Change concerning the effect of global warming on the availability of water: According to Model A1 of the IPCC, global warming may, by the 2050's, have reduced by as much as 30% the water available in large areas of world that now a large producers of grain.

Added to the agricultural and environmental problems, are problems of finance and distribution. Famines can occur even when grain is available somewhere in the world, because those who are threatened with starvation may not be able to pay for the grain, or for its transportation. The economic laws of supply and demand are not able to solve this type of problem. One says that there is no "demand" for the food (meaning demand in the economic sense), even though people are in fact starving.[9]

Energy-dependence of modern agriculture

A very serious problem with Green Revolution plant varieties is that they require heavy inputs of pesticides, fertilizers and irrigation. Because of this, the use of high-yield varieties contributes to social inequality, since only rich farmers can afford the necessary inputs. Monocultures, such as the Green Revolution varieties may also prove to be vulnerable to future epidemics of plant diseases, such as the epidemic that caused the Irish Potato Famine in 1845. Even more importantly, pesticides, fertilizers and irrigation all depend

[9]http://www.independent.co.uk/environment/climate-change/society-will-collapse-by-2040-due-to-catastrophic-food-shortages-says-study-10336406.html
http://www.truth-out.org/news/item/32131-the-new-climate-normal-abrupt-sea-level-rise-and-predictions-of-civilization-collapse
http://www.commondreams.org/views/2015/08/13/dignity-democracy-and-food-interview-frances-moore-lappe

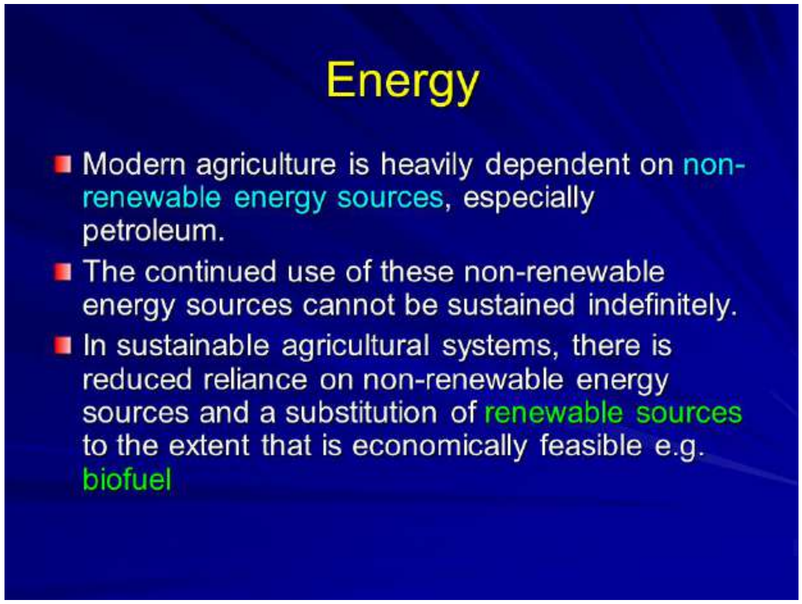


Figure 8.9: **Source: slideplayer.com**

on the use of fossil fuels. One must therefore ask whether high agricultural yields can be maintained in the future, when fossil fuels are expected to become prohibitively scarce and expensive.

Modern agriculture has become highly dependent on fossil fuels, especially on petroleum and natural gas. This is especially true of production of the high-yield grain varieties introduced in the Green Revolution, since these require especially large inputs of fertilizers, pesticides and irrigation. Today, fertilizers are produced using oil and natural gas, while pesticides are synthesized from petroleum feedstocks, and irrigation is driven by fossil fuel energy. Thus agriculture in the developed countries has become a process where inputs of fossil fuel energy are converted into food calories.

The ratio of the fossil fuel energy inputs to the food calorie outputs depends on how many energy-using elements of food production are included in the accounting. David Pimental and Mario Giampietro of Cornell University estimated in 1994 that U.S. agriculture required 0.7 kcal of fossil fuel energy inputs to produce 1.0 kcal of food energy. However, this figure was based on U.N. statistics that did not include fertilizer feedstocks, pesticide feed-stocks, energy and machinery for drying crops, or electricity, construction and maintenance of farm buildings. A more accurate calculation, including these inputs, gives an input/output ratio of approximately 1.0. Finally, if the energy expended on transportation, packaging and retailing of food is included, Pimental and Giampietro found that the input/output ratio for the U.S. food system was approximately 10, and this figure did not include energy used for cooking.

The Brundtland Report'-s estimate of the global potential for food production assumes "that the area under food production can be around 1.5 billion hectares (3.7 billion acres - close to the present level), and that the average yields could go up to 5 tons of grain equivalent per hectare (as against the present average of 2 tons of grain equivalent)." In other words, the Brundtland Report assumes an increase in yields by a factor of 2.5. This would perhaps be possible if traditional agriculture could everywhere be replaced by energy-intensive modern agriculture using Green Revolution plant varieties. However, Pimental and Giampietro'-s studies show that modern energy-intensive agricultural techniques cannot be maintained after fossil fuels have been exhausted or after their use has been discontinued to avoid catastrophic climate change.

At the time when the Brundtland Report was written (1987), the global average of 2 tons of grain equivalent per hectare included much higher yields from the sector using modern agricultural methods. Since energy-intensive petroleum-based agriculture cannot be continued in the post-fossil-fuel era, future average crop yields will probably be much less than 2 tons of grain equivalent per hectare.

The 1987 global population was approximately 5 billion. This population was supported by 3 billion tons of grain equivalent per year. After fossil fuels have been exhausted, the total world agricultural output is likely to be considerably less than that, and therefore the population that it will be possible to support sustainably will probably be considerably less than 5 billion, assuming that our average daily per capita use of food calories remains the same, and assuming that the amount of cropland and pasturage remains the same (1.5 billion hectares cropland, 3.0 billion hectares pasturage).

The Brundtland Report points out that "The present (1987) global average consumption of plant energy for food, seed and animal feed amounts to 6,000 calories daily, with a range among countries of 3,000-15,000 calories, depending on the level of meat consumption." Thus there is a certain flexibility in the global population that can survive on a given total agricultural output. If the rich countries were willing to eat less meat, more people could be supported.[10]

Effects of climate change on agriculture

a) The effect of temperature increase

There is a danger that when climate change causes both temperature increases and increased aridity in regions like the US grain belt, yields will be very much lowered. Of the three main grain types (corn, wheat and rice) corn is the most vulnerable to the direct effect of increases in temperature. One reason for this is the mechanism of pollination of corn: A pollen grain lands on one end of a corn-silk strand, and the germ cell must travel the length of the strand in order to fertilize the kernel. At high temperatures, the corn silk becomes dried out and withered, and is unable to fulfill its biological function. Furthermore, heat can cause the pores on the underside of the corn leaf to close, so that photosynthesis stops.

According to a study made by Mohan Wali and coworkers at Ohio State University,

[10] http://www.truth-out.org/news/item/32354-environmentalists-sue-epa-over-dead-zone-in-gulf-of-mexico

the photosynthetic activity of corn increases until the temperature reaches 20°C. It then remains constant until the temperature reaches 35°C, after which it declines. At 40°C and above, photosynthesis stops altogether.

Scientists in the Phillipines report that the pollination of rice fails entirely at 40°C, leading to crop failures. Wheat yields are also markedly reduced by temperatures in this range.[11]

b) The effect of decreased rainfall

According to the Stern Report, some of the major grain-producing areas of the world might loose up to 30% of their rainfall by 2050. These regions include much of the United States, Brazil, the Mediterranean region, Eastern Russia and Belarus, the Middle East, Southern Africa and Australia. Of course possibilities for agriculture may simultaneously increase in other regions, but the net effect of climate change on the world'-s food supply is predicted to be markedly negative.

c) Unsustainable use of groundwater

It may seem surprising that fresh water can be regarded as a non-renewable resource. However, groundwater in deep aquifers is often renewed very slowly. Sometimes renewal requires several thousand years. When the rate of withdrawal of groundwater exceeds the rate of renewal, the carrying capacity of the resource has been exceeded, and withdrawal of water becomes analogous to mining a mineral. However, it is more serious than ordinary mining because water is such a necessary support for life.

In many regions of the world today, groundwater is being withdrawn faster than it can be replenished, and important aquifers are being depleted. In China, for example, groundwater levels are falling at an alarming rate. Considerations of water supply in relation to population form the background for China'-s stringent population policy. At a recent lecture, Lester Brown of the Worldwatch Institute was asked by a member of the audience to name the resource for which shortages would most quickly become acute. Most of the audience expected him to name oil, but instead he replied “water”.

Lester Brown then cited China's falling water table. He predicted that within decades, China would be unable to feed itself. He said that this would not cause hunger in China itself: Because of the strength of China's economy, the country would be able to purchase grain on the world market. However Chinese purchases of grain would raise the price, and put world grain out of reach of poor countries in Africa. Thus water shortages in China will produce famine in parts of Africa, Brown predicted.

Under many desert areas of the world are deeply buried water tables formed during glacial periods when the climate of these regions was wetter. These regions include the Middle East and large parts of Africa. Water can be withdrawn from such ancient reservoirs by deep wells and pumping, but only for a limited amount of time.

[11] http://ecowatch.com/2015/08/03/heat-wave-iran/

Figure 8.10: **Lester R. Brown has been a pioneer in the study of the future global food crisis. Source: www.azquotes.com**

In oil-rich Saudi Arabia, petroenergy is used to drill wells for ancient water and to bring it to the surface. Much of this water is used to irrigate wheat fields, and this is done to such an extent that Saudi Arabia exports wheat. The country is, in effect, exporting its ancient heritage of water, a policy that it may, in time, regret. A similarly short-sighted project is Muammar Qaddafi's enormous pipeline, which will bring water from ancient sub-desert reservoirs to coastal cities.

In the United States, the great Ogallala aquifer is being overdrawn. This aquifer is an enormous stratum of water-saturated sand and gravel under-lying parts of northern Texas, Oklahoma, New Mexico, Kansas, Colorado, Nebraska, Wyoming and South Dakota. The average thickness of the aquifer is about 70 meters. The rate of water withdrawal from the aquifer exceeds the rate of recharge by a factor of eight.

Thus we can see that in many regions, the earth'-s present population is living on its inheritance of water, rather than its income. This fact, coupled with rapidly increasing populations and climate change, may contribute to a very serious food crisis partway through the 21st century.

d) Glacial melting and summer water supplies

The summer water supplies of both China and India are threatened by the melting of glaciers. The Gangotri glacier, which is the principle glacier feeding India'-s great Ganges River, is reported to be melting at an accelerating rate, and it could disappear within a few decades. If this happens,the Ganges could become seasonal, flowing only during the monsoon season. Chinese agriculture is also threatened by disappearing Himalayan glaciers, in this case those on the Tibet-Quinghai Plateau. The respected Chinese glaciol-

Figure 8.11: **Whitechuck Glacier in the North Cascades National Park in 1973. Source: www.nichols.ewdu**

ogist Yao Tandong estimates that the glaciers feeding the Yangtze and Yellow Rivers are disappearing at the rate of 7% per year.[12]

The Indus and Mekong Rivers will be similarly affected by the melting of glaciers. Lack of water during the summer season could have a serious impact on the irrigation.

Mature forests contain vast amounts of sequestered carbon, not only in their trees, but also in the carbon-rich soil of the forest floor. When a forest is logged or burned to make way for agriculture, this carbon is released into the atmosphere.

One fifth of the global carbon emissions are at present due to destruction of forests. This amount is greater than the CO_2 emissions for the world'-s transportation systems. An intact forest pumps water back into the atmosphere, increasing inland rainfall and benefiting agriculture. By contrast, deforestation, for example in the Amazonian rainforest, accelerates the flow of water back into the ocean, thus reducing inland rainfall. There is a danger that the Amazonian rainforest may be destroyed to such an extent that the region will become much more dry. If this happens, the forest may become vulnerable to fires produced by lightning strikes. This is one of the feedback loops against which the Stern Report warns: the drying and burning of the Amazonian rainforest may become irreversible, greatly accelerating climate change, if destruction of the forest proceeds beyond a certain point.

e) Erosion of topsoil.

[12]http://www.commondreams.org/news/2015/08/04/global-glaciers-melting-three-times-rate-20th-century

Figure 8.12: **The same glacier in 2006. Source: www.nichols.edu**

Besides depending on an adequate supply of water, food production also depends on the condition of the thin layer of topsoil that covers the world'-s croplands. This topsoil is being degraded and eroded at an alarming rate: According to the World Resources Institute and the United Nations Environment Programme, "It is estimated that since World War II, 1.2 billion hectares... has suffered at least moderate degradation as a result of human activity. This is a vast area, roughly the size of China and India combined." This area is 27% of the total area currently devoted to agriculture. The report goes on to say that the degradation is greatest in Africa. The risk of topsoil erosion is greatest when marginal land is brought into cultivation, since marginal land is usually on steep hillsides which are vulnerable to water erosion when wild vegetation is removed.

David Pimental and his associates at Cornell University pointed out in 1995 that "Because of erosion-associated loss of productivity and population growth, the per capita food supply has been reduced over the past 10 years and continues to fall. The Food and Agricultural Organization reports that the per capita production of grains which make up 80% of the world'-s food supply, has been declining since 1984...During the past 40 years nearly one-third of the world'-s cropland (1.5 billion hectares) has been abandoned because of soil erosion and degradation. Most of the replacement has come from marginal land made available by removing forests. Agriculture accounts for 80% of the annual deforestation."

Topsoil can also be degraded by the accumulation of salt when irrigation water evaporates. The worldwide area of irrigated land has increased from 8 million hectares in 1800 to more than 100 million hectares today. This land is especially important to the world food supply because it is carefully tended and yields are large in proportion to the area. To protect this land from salination, it should be irrigated in such a way that evaporation is minimized.

Finally cropland with valuable topsoil is being be lost to urban growth and highway development, a problem that is made more severe by growing populations and by economic growth.

Every year, more than 100,000 square kilometers of rain forest are cleared and burned, an area which corresponds to that of Switzerland and the Netherlands combined. Almost half of the world'-s tropical forests have already been destroyed. Ironically, the land thus cleared often becomes unsuitable for agriculture within a few years. Tropical soils may seem to be fertile when covered with luxuriant vegetation, but they are usually very poor in nutrients because of leeching by heavy rains. The nutrients which remain are contained in the vegetation itself; and when the forest cover is cut and burned, the nutrients are rapidly lost.

Often the remaining soil is rich in aluminum oxide and iron oxide. When such soils are exposed to oxygen and sun-baking, a rock-like substance called Laterite is formed.

Secret land purchases in Africa

According to a report released by the Oakland Institute, in 2009 alone, hedge funds bought or leased nearly 60 million hectares of land in Africa, an area the size of France.

As populations increase, and as water becomes scarce, China, and other countries, such as Saudi Arabia are also buying enormous tracts of agricultural land, not only in Africa, but also in other countries.

These land purchases are very often kept secret from the local populations by corrupt governments.[13]

Some conclusions

There is a danger that just as global population reaches the unprecedented level of 9 billion or more, the agricultural base for supporting it may suddenly collapse. Ecological catastrophe, possibly compounded by war and other disorders, could produce famine and death on a scale unprecedented in history, a disaster of unimaginable proportions, involving billions rather than millions of people.

The resources of the earth and the techniques of modern science can support a global population of moderate size in comfort and security; but the optimum size is undoubtedly smaller than the world's present population. Given a sufficiently small global population, renewable sources of energy can be found to replace disappearing fossil fuels. Technology may also be able to find renewable substitutes for many disappearing mineral resources for a global population of moderate size. What technology cannot do, however, is to give a global population of 9 billion people the standard of living which the industrialized countries enjoy today.

[13] http://www.latimes.com/world/asia/la-fg-china-foreign-farmland-20140329-story.html
http://www.bbc.com/news/world-africa-13688683

8.9 Aurelio Peccei

The Club of Rome

In 1968 Aurelio Peccei, Thorkil Kristensen and others founded the Club of Rome, an organization of economists and scientists devoted to studying the predicament of human society. One of the first acts of the organization was to commission an MIT study of future trends using computer models. The result was a book entitled "Limits to Growth", published in 1972. From the outset the book was controversial, but it became a best-seller. It was translated into many languages and sold 30 million copies. The book made use of an exponential index for resources, i.e. the number of years that a resource would last if used at an exponentially increasing rate.

Today the more accurate Hubbert Peak model is used instead to predict rate of use of a scarce resource as a function of time. Although the specific predictions of resource availability in "Limits to Growth" lacked accuracy, its basic thesis, that unlimited industrial growth on a finite planet is impossible, was indisputably correct. Nevertheless the book was greeted with anger and disbelief by the community of economists, and these emotions still surface when it is mentioned.

Economic activity is usually divided into two categories, 1) production of goods and 2) provision of services. It is the rate of production of goods that will be limited by the carrying capacity of the global environment. Services that have no environmental impact will not be constrained in this way. Thus a smooth transition to a sustainable economy will involve a shift of a large fraction the work force from the production of goods to the provision of services.

In his recent popular book "The Rise of the Creative Class" the economist Richard Florida points out that in a number of prosperous cities, for example Stockholm, a large fraction of the population is already engaged in what might be called creative work, a type of work that uses few resources, and produces few waste products, work which develops knowledge and culture rather than producing material goods. For example, producing computer software requires few resources and results in few waste products. Thus it is an activity with a very small ecological footprint.

Similarly, education, research, music, literature and art are all activities that do not weigh heavily on the carrying capacity of the global environment. Furthermore, cultural activities lead in a natural way to global cooperation and internationalism, since cultural achievements are shared by the people of the entire world. Indeed, the shared human inheritance of culture and knowledge is growing faster than ever before.

Florida sees this as a pattern for the future, and maintains that everyone is capable of creativity. He visualizes the transition to a sustainable future economy as one in which a large fraction of the work force moves from industrial jobs to information-related work. Meanwhile, as Florida acknowledges, industrial workers feel uneasy and threatened by such trends.[14]

[14]http://www.clubofrome.org/?p=326
http://www.donellameadows.org/wp-content/userfiles/Limits-to-Growth-digital-scan-version.pdf

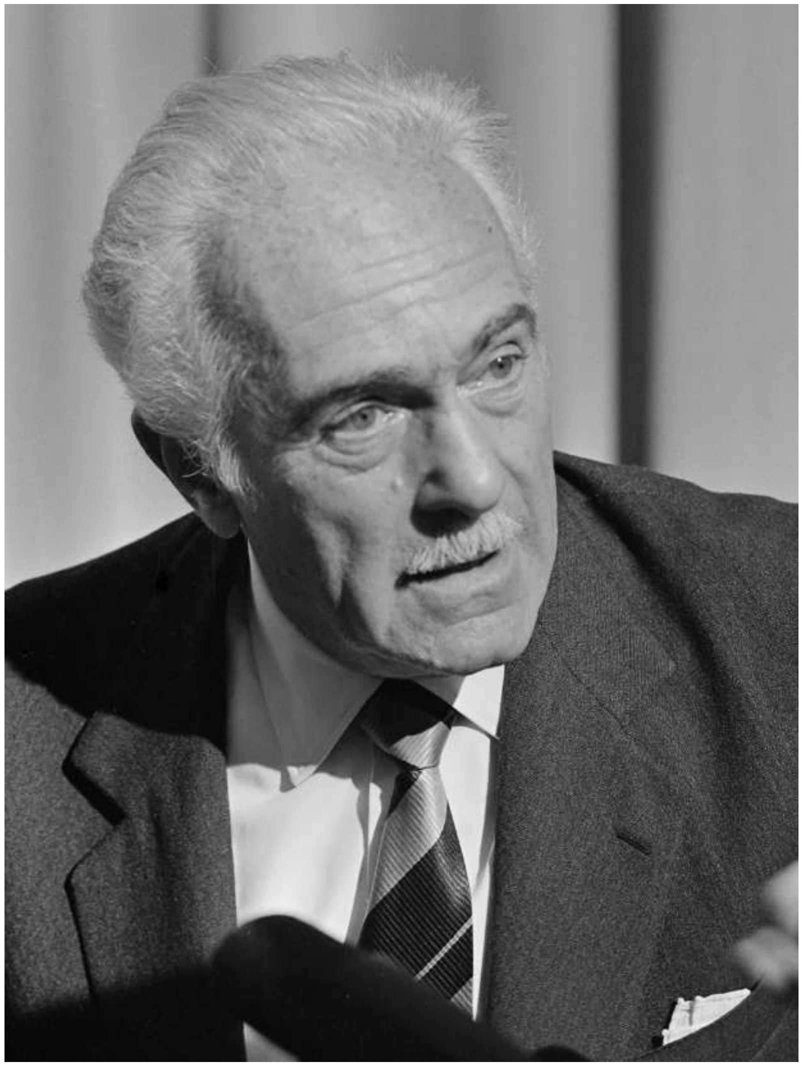


Figure 8.13: **Aurelio Peccei (1908-1984), main founder of the Club of Rome. Concerning our present economic system, he wrote: "The only way we have devised to meet the surging waves of our rampant militarism and consumerism is to draw increasingly on the natural environment and to exploit, indiscriminately, the most accessible mineral and fuel deposits and all living resources we can lay our hands on. Such actions irreversibly impoverish our unique, irreplaceable, world, whose bounty and generosity are not infinite. Even if all the other adverse situations we find ourselves in today were to be alleviated, in itself, our high-handed treatment of Nature can bring about our doom." Photograph by Koen Suyk/Anefo (Nationaal Archif), CC BY-SA 3.0, Wikimedia Commons**

Figure 8.14: **When a forest is destroyed, topsoil is often lost to erosion. Source: United Nations.**

Biological Carrying capacity and Economics

Classical economists pictured the world as largely empty of human activities. According to the empty-world picture of economics, the limiting factors in the production of food and goods are shortages of human capital and labor. The land, forests, fossil fuels, minerals, oceans filled with fish, and other natural resources upon which human labor and capital operate, are assumed to be present in such large quantities that they are not limiting factors. In this picture, there is no naturally-determined upper limit to the total size of the human economy. It can continue to grow as long as new capital is accumulated, as long as new labor is provided by population growth, and as long as new technology replaces labor by automation.

Biology, on the other hand, presents us with a very different picture. Biologists remind us that if any species, including our own, makes demands on its environment which exceed the environment's carrying capacity, the result is a catastrophic collapse both of the environment and of the population which it supports. Only demands which are within the carrying capacity are sustainable. For example, there is a limit to regenerative powers of a forest.

It is possible to continue to cut trees in excess of this limit, but only at the cost of a loss of forest size, and ultimately the collapse and degradation of the forest. Similarly, cattle populations may for some time exceed the carrying capacity of grasslands, but the

http://www.donellameadows.org/archives/a-synopsis-limits-to-growth-the-30-year-update/

ultimate penalty for overgrazing will be degradation or desertification of the land. Thus, in biology, the concept of the carrying capacity of an environment is extremely important; but in economic theory this concept has not yet been given the weight which it deserves.

Exponential growth of human population and economic activity have brought us, in a surprisingly short time, from the empty-world situation to a full-world situation. In today's world, we are pressing against the absolute limits of the earth's carrying capacity, and further growth carries with it the danger of future collapse.

Full-world economics, the economics of the future, will no longer be able to rely on industrial growth to give profits to stockbrokers or to solve problems of unemployment or to alleviate poverty. In the long run, neither the growth of industry nor that of population is sustainable; and we have now reached or exceeded the sustainable limits.

The limiting factors in economics are no longer the supply of capital or human labor or even technology. The limiting factors are the rapidly vanishing supplies of petroleum and metal ores, the forests damaged by acid rain, the diminishing catches from over-fished oceans, and the cropland degraded by erosion or salination, or lost to agriculture under a cover of asphalt.

Neoclassical economists have maintained that it is generally possible to substitute man-made capital for natural resources; but a closer examination shows that there are only very few cases where this is really practical. (See G.E. Tverberg, "Thoughts on why energy use and CO_2 emissions are rising as fast as GDP", www.ourfiniteworld.com, November 30, 2011.)

The size of the human economy is, of course, the product of two factors the total number of humans, and the consumption per capita. If we are to achieve a sustainable global society in the future, a society whose demands are within the carrying capacity of of the global environment, then both these factors must be reduced.

The responsibility for achieving sustainability is thus evenly divided between the North and the South: Where there is excessively high consumption per capita, it must be reduced; and this is primarily the responsibility of the industrialized countries. High birth rates must also be reduced; and this is primarily the responsibility of the developing countries. Both of these somewhat painful changes are necessary for sustainability; but both will be extremely difficult to achieve because of the inertia of institutions, customs and ways of thought which are deeply embedded in society, in both the North and the South.

Population and food supply

Let us look first at the problem of high birth rates: The recent spread of modern medical techniques throughout the world has caused death rates to drop sharply; but since social customs and attitudes are slow to change, birth rates have remained high. As a result, between 1930 and 2011, the population of the world increased with explosive speed from two billion to seven billion.

During the last few decades, the number of food-deficit countries has lengthened; and it now reads almost like a United Nations roster. The food-importing nations are dependent,

Figure 8.15: **Our global food system is broken. Source: Oxfam**

almost exclusively, on a single food-exporting region, the grain belt of North America. In the future, this region may be vulnerable to droughts produced by global warming.

An analysis of the global ratio of population to cropland shows that we probably already have exceeded the sustainable limit of population through our dependence on petroleum: Between 1950 and 1982, the use of cheap petroleum-derived fertilizers increased by a factor of 8, and much of our present agricultural output depends their use. Furthermore, petroleum-derived synthetic fibers have reduced the amount of cropland needed for growing natural fibers, and petroleum-driven tractors have replaced draft animals which required cropland for pasturage. Also, petroleum fuels have replaced fuelwood and other fuels derived for biomass. The reverse transition, from fossil fuels back to renewable energy sources, will require a considerable diversion of land from food production to energy production.

As population increases, the cropland per person will continue to fall, and we will be forced to make still heavier use of fertilizers to increase output per hectare. Also marginal land will be used in agriculture, with the probable result that much land will be degraded through erosion or salination.

Reserves of oil are likely to be exhausted by the middle of this century. Thus there is a danger that just as global population reaches the unprecedented level of 9 billion or more, the agricultural base for supporting it may suddenly collapse. The resulting catastrophe, possibly compounded by war and other disorders, could produce famine and death on a scale unprecedented in history, a disaster of unimaginable proportions, involving billions rather than millions of people. The present tragic famine in Africa is to this possible future disaster what Hiroshima is to the threat of thermonuclear war a tragedy of smaller scale, whose horrors should be sufficient, if we are wise, to make us take steps to avoid the larger catastrophe.

At present a child dies from starvation every six seconds. Five million children die from hunger every year. Over a billion people in today's world are chronically undernourished.

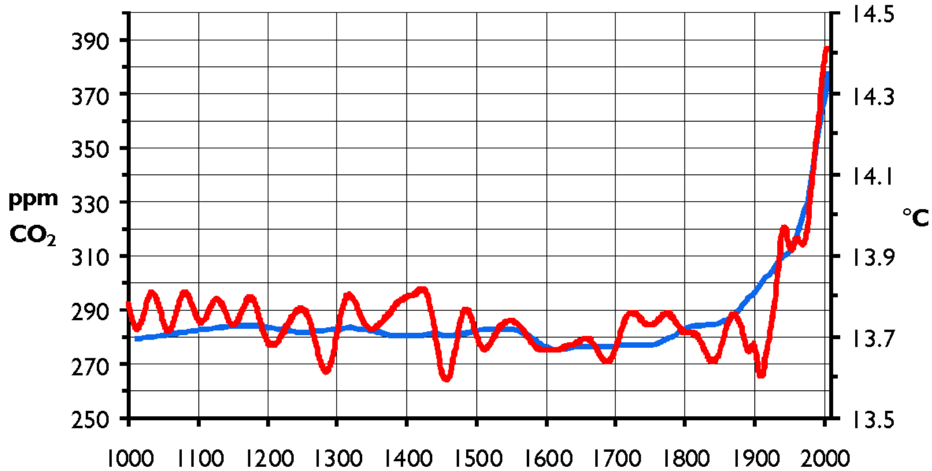


Figure 8.16: **The Hanno graph used by the United Nations Climate Change Compendium 2009. Source: wattsupwiththat.com**

There is a threat that unless prompt and well-informed action is taken by the international community, the tragic loss of life that is already being experienced will increase to unimaginable proportions.

As glaciers melt in the Himalayas, threatening the summer water supplies of India and China; as ocean levels rise, drowning the fertile rice-growing river deltas of Asia; as aridity begins to decrease the harvests of Africa, North America and Europe; as populations grow; as aquifers are overdrawn; as cropland is lost to desertification and urban growth; and as energy prices increase, the billion people who now are undernourished but still survive, might not survive. They might become the victims of a famine whose proportions could exceed anything that the world has previously experienced.

8.10 E.F. Schumacher: *Small is Beautiful*

Some quotations from *Small is Beautiful*

Wisdom demands a new orientation of science and technology toward the organic, the gentle, the elegant and beautiful.

An attitude to life which seeks fulfilment in the single-minded pursuit of wealth - in short, materialism - does not fit into this world, because it contains within itself no limiting principle, while the environment in which it is placed is strictly limited.

If greed were not the master of modern man–ably assisted by envy–how could it be that the frenzy of economism does not abate as higher "standards of living"

are attained, and that it is precisely the richest societies which pursue their economic advantage with the greatest ruthlessness? How could we explain the almost universal refusal on the part of the rulers of the rich societies–where organized along private enterprise or collective enterprise lines–to work towards the humanisation of work? It is only necessary to assert that something would reduce the "standard of living" and every debate is instantly closed. That soul-destroying, meaningless, mechanical, monotonous, moronic work is an insult to human nature which must necessarily and inevitably produce either escapism or aggression, and that no amount of of "bread and circuses" can compensate for the damage done–these are facts which are neither denied nor acknowledged but are met with an unbreakable conspiracy of silence–because to deny them would be too obviously absurd and to acknowledge them would condemn the central preoccupation of modern society as a crime against humanity.

Any intelligent fool can make things bigger, more complex, and more violent. It takes a touch of genius - and a lot of courage - to move in the opposite direction.

Modern man does not experience himself as a part of nature but as an outside force destined to dominate and conquer it. He even talks of a battle with nature, forgetting that, if he won the battle, he would find himself on the losing side.

Much of the economic decay of southeast Asia (as of many other parts of the world) is undoubtedly due to a heedless and shameful neglect of trees.

How could we even begin to disarm greed and envy? Perhaps by being much less greedy and envious ourselves; perhaps by resisting the temptation of letting our luxuries become needs; and perhaps by even scrutinising our needs to see if they cannot be simplified and reduced.

The all-pervading disease of the modern world is the total imbalance between city and countryside, an imbalance in terms of wealth, power, culture, attraction and hope. The former has become over-extended and the latter has atrophied. The city has become the universal magnet, while rural life has lost its savour. Yet it remains an unalterable truth that, just as a sound mind depends on a sound body, so the health of the cities depends on the health of the rural areas. The cities, with all their wealth, are merely secondary producers, while primary production, the precondition of all economic life, takes place in the countryside. The prevailing lack of balance, based on the age-old exploitation of countryman and raw material producer, today threatens all countries throughout the world, the rich even more than the poor. To restore a proper balance between city and rural life is perhaps the greatest task in front of modern man.

The Buddhist point of view takes the function of work to be at least threefold: to give a man a chance to utilise and develop his faculties; to enable him to overcome his egocentredness by joining with other people in a common task; and to bring forth the goods and services needed for a becoming existence. Again.

The economics of permanence implies a profound reorientation of science and technology, which have to open their doors to wisdom and, in fact, have to incorporate wisdom into their very structure... Wisdom demands a new orientation of science and technology towards the organic, the gentle, the non-violent, the elegant and beautiful.

Where is the rich society that says: "Halt! We have enough"?

Already, there is overwhelming evidence that the great self-balancing system of nature is becoming increasingly unbalanced in particular respects and at specific points.

The greatest danger invariably arises from the ruthless application, on a vast scale, of partial knowledge such as we are currently witnessing in the application of nuclear energy, of the new chemistry in agriculture, of transportation technology, and countless other things.

It is moreover obvious that men organised in small units will take better care of their bit of land or other natural resources than anonymous companies or megalomanic governments which pretend to themselves that the whole universe is their legitimate quarry.

I suggest that the foundations of peace cannot be laid by universal prosperity, in the modem sense. because such prosperity, if attainable at all. is attainable only by cultivating such drives of human nature as greed and envy, which destroy intelligence, happiness, serenity, and thereby the peacefulness of man.

Nothing makes economic sense unless its continuance for a long time can be projected without running into absurdities.

Figure 8.17: **E.F. Schumacher (1911-1977), author of *Small is Beautiful: Economics as if People Mattered*. He was the protegé of John Maynard Keynes and also the teacher of Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen.**

8.11 Helena Norberg-Hodge: *Ancient Futures*

Our ancestors were hunter-gatherers, living in close contact with nature, and respecting the laws and limitations of nature. There are many hunter-gatherer cultures existing today, from whose values and outlook we could learn much. Unfortunately, instead of learning from them, we often move in with our bulldozers and make it impossible for their way of life to continue. During the past several decades, for example, approximately one tribe of South American forest Indians has died out every year. Of the 6000 human languages now spoken, it is estimated that half will vanish during the next 50 years.

In some parts of Africa, before cutting down a tree, a man will offer a prayer of apology to the spirit of the tree, explaining why necessity has driven him to such an act. The attitude involved in this ritual is something which industrialized society needs to learn, or relearn. Older cultures have much to teach industrial society because they already have experience with full-world situation which we are fast approaching.

In a traditional culture, where change is extremely slow, population has an opportunity to expand to the limits which the traditional way of life allows, so that it reaches an equilibrium with the environment. For example, in a hunter-gatherer culture, population has expanded to the limits which can be supported without the introduction of agriculture. The density of population is, of course, extremely low, but nevertheless it is pressing against the limits of sustainability. Overhunting or overfishing would endanger the future. Respect for the environment is thus necessary for the survival of such a culture.

Similarly, in a stable, traditional agricultural society which has reached an equilibrium with its environment, population is pressing against the limits of sustainability. In such a culture, one can usually find expressed as a strong ethical principle the rule that the land must not be degraded, but must be left fertile for the use of future generations.

Today, the whole world seems to be adopting values, fashions, and standards of behavior presented in the mass media of western society. The unsustainable, power-worshiping, consumption-oriented values of western society are so strongly propagandized by television, films and advertising, that they overpower and sweep aside the wisdom of older societies. This is unfortunate, since besides showing us unsustainable levels of affluence and economic waste, the western mass media depict values and behavior patterns which are hardly worthy of imitation. We need to reverse this trend. The industrialized countries must learn from the values of older traditional cultures. The wisdom of our ancestors, their respect for nature and their hospitable traditions of sharing, can help us to create a new economic system founded on social and environmental ethics.[15]

Some quotations for Helena Norberg-Hodge

If our starting point is a respect for nature and people, diversity is an inevitable consequence. If technology and the needs of the economy are our

[15] http://www.learndev.org/dl/harmony8.pdf
http://dissidentvoice.org/2015/05/gandhi-as-an-economist/
http://www.encyclopedia.com/doc/1G2-3401804813.html

Figure 8.18: **Helena Norberg-Hodge (born in 1946) is the founder and director of Local Futures, which was previously named International Society for Ecology and Culture. She states that the organization is "dedicated to the revitalization of cultural and biological diversity, and the strengthening of local communities and economies worldwide". In her important book, *Ancient Futures*, Norberg-Hodge says that modern industrial societies ought to learn from more sustainable traditional cultures, rather than the reverse.**

starting point, then we have what we are faced with today - a model of development that is dangerously distanced from the needs of particular peoples and places and rigidly imposed from the top down.

The old culture reflected fundamental human needs while respecting natural limits. And it worked. It worked for nature, and it worked for people. The various connecting relationships in the traditional system were mutually reinforcing, encouraging harmony and stability.

As signs of climate instability increase, radical and rapid action is becoming ever more urgent.

One of the best ways of reducing both CO_2 emissions and poverty in the South would be to strengthen the existing demographic pattern by keeping villages and small towns alive. This would allow communities to maintain social cohesion and closer contact with the land.

It may seem absurd to believe that a primitive culture in the Himalayas has anything to teach our industrialized society. But our search for a future that works keeps spiraling back to an ancient connection between ourselves and the earth, an interconnectedness that ancient cultures have never abandoned.

8.12 Sir Partha Dasgupta; Population stabilization

It is vital for the world to stabilize its population, not only because of the threat of a catastrophic future famine, but also because rapid population growth is closely linked with poverty. Today, a large fraction of the world's people live in near-poverty or absolute poverty, lacking safe water, sanitation, elementary education, primary health care and proper nutrition. Governments struggling to solve these problems, and to provide roads, schools, jobs and medical help for all their citizens, find themselves defeated by the rapid doubling times of populations. For example, in Liberia, the rate of population growth is 4% per year, which means that the population of Liberia doubles in size every eighteen years.

Under such circumstances, despite the most ambitious development programs, the infrastructure per capita decreases. Also, since new jobs must be found for the new millions added to the population, the introduction of efficient modern methods in industry and agriculture aggravates the already-serious problem of unemployment.

Education of women and higher status for women are vitally important measures, not only for their own sake, but also because in many countries these social reforms have proved to be strongly correlated with lower birth rates. Religious leaders who oppose programs for the education of women and for family planning on "ethical" grounds should think carefully about the scope and consequences of the catastrophic global famine which will

Figure 8.19: **Sir Partha Dasgupta, of Cambridge University. He has pointed out that all of the measures needed to break the cycle of overpopulation and poverty are desirable in themselves. Besides education and higher status for women, they include state-provided social security for old people, provision of water supplies near to dwellings, provision of health services to all, abolition of child labor, and general economic development. Sir Partha's father was also a famous economist; in fact he was the teacher of Nobel Laureate Amartya Sen.**

undoubtedly occur within the next 50 years if population is allowed to increase unchecked.

One of the most important keys to controlling the global population explosion is giving women better education and equal rights. These goals are desirable for the sake of increased human happiness, and for the sake of the uniquely life-oriented point of view which women can give us; but in addition, education and improved status for women have shown themselves to be closely connected with lowered birth rates.

When women lack education and independent careers outside the home, they can be forced into the role of baby-producing machines by men who do not share in the drudgery of cooking, washing and cleaning; but when women have educational, legal, economic, social and political equality with men, experience has shown that they choose to limit their families to a moderate size.

Sir Partha Dasgupta of Cambridge University has pointed out that the changes needed to break the cycle of overpopulation and poverty are all desirable in themselves. Besides education and higher status for women, they include state-provided social security for old people, provision of water supplies near to dwellings, provision of health services to all, abolition of child labor and general economic development.[16]

Social Values and Levels of Consumption

Let us next turn to the problem of reducing the per-capita consumption in the industrialized countries. The whole structure of western society seems designed to push its citizens in the opposite direction, towards ever-increasing levels of consumption. The mass media hold before us continually the ideal of a personal utopia filled with material goods. Every young man in a modern industrial society feels that he is a failure unless he fights his way to the "top"; and in recent years, women too have been drawn into this competition.

Of course not everyone can reach the top; there would not be room for everyone; but society urges all us to try, and we feel a sense of failure if we do not reach the goal. Thus, modern life has become a struggle of all against all for power and possessions.

One of the central problems in reducing consumption is that in our present economic and social theory, consumption has no upper bound; there is no definition of what is enough; there is no concept of a state where all of the real needs of a person have been satisfied. In our growth-oriented present-day economics, it is assumed that, no matter how much a person earns, he or she is always driven by a desire for more.

The phrase "conspicuous consumption" was invented by the Norwegian-American economist Thorstein Veblen (1857-1929) in order to describe the way in which our society uses economic waste as a symbol of social status. In "The Theory of the Leisure Class", first published in 1899, Veblen pointed out that it wrong to believe that human economic behavior is rational, or that it can be understood in terms of classical economic theory. To understand it, Veblen maintained, one might better make use of insights gained from anthropology, psychology, sociology, and history.

The sensation caused by the publication of Veblen's book, and the fact that his phrase,

[16] http://www.poverties.org/famine-in-africa.html

"conspicuous consumption", has become part of our language, indicate that his theory did not completely miss its mark. In fact, modern advertisers seem to be following Veblen's advice: Realizing that much of the output of our economy will be used for the purpose of establishing the social status of consumers, advertising agencies hire psychologists to appeal to the consumer's longing for a higher social position.

When possessions are used for the purpose of social competition, demand has no natural upper limit; it is then limited only by the size of the human ego, which, as we know, is boundless. This would be all to the good if unlimited economic growth were desirable. But today, when further industrial growth implies future collapse, western society urgently needs to find new values to replace our worship of power, our restless chase after excitement, and our admiration of excessive consumption.

The values which we need, both to protect nature from civilization and to protect civilization from itself, are perhaps not new: Perhaps it would be more correct to say that we need to rediscover ethical values which once were part of human culture, but which were lost during the process of industrialization, when technology allowed us to break traditional environmental constraints.

Our ancestors were hunter-gatherers, living in close contact with nature, and respecting the laws and limitations of nature. There are many hunter-gatherer cultures existing today, from whose values and outlook we could learn much. Unfortunately, instead of learning from them, we often move in with our bulldozers and make it impossible for their way of life to continue. During the past several decades, for example, approximately one tribe of South American forest Indians has died out every year. Of the 6000 human languages now spoken, it is estimated that half will vanish during the next 50 years.

In some parts of Africa, before cutting down a tree, a man will offer a prayer of apology to the spirit of the tree, explaining why necessity has driven him to such an act. The attitude involved in this ritual is something which industrialized society needs to learn, or relearn. Older cultures have much to teach industrial society because they already have experience with full-world situation which we are fast approaching.

In a traditional culture, where change is extremely slow, population has an opportunity to expand to the limits which the traditional way of life allows, so that it reaches an equilibrium with the environment. For example, in a hunter-gatherer culture, population has expanded to the limits which can be supported without the introduction of agriculture. The density of population is, of course, extremely low, but nevertheless it is pressing against the limits of sustainability. Overhunting or overfishing would endanger the future. Respect for the environment is thus necessary for the survival of such a culture.

Similarly, in a stable, traditional agricultural society which has reached an equilibrium with its environment, population is pressing against the limits of sustainability. In such a culture, one can usually find expressed as a strong ethical principle the rule that the land must not be degraded, but must be left fertile for the use of future generations.

Today, the whole world seems to be adopting values, fashions, and standards of behavior presented in the mass media of western society. The unsustainable, power-worshiping, consumption-oriented values of western society are so strongly propagandized by television, films and advertising, that they overpower and sweep aside the wisdom of older societies.

Figure 8.20: **Amartya Sen was born in 1933 into an academic family living in Decca, Bengladesh. He was awarded a Nobel Prize in Economics in 1998. His studies of Amartyafamines and of developmental economics are particularly notable.**

This is unfortunate, since besides showing us unsustainable levels of affluence and economic waste, the western mass media depict values and behavior patterns which are hardly worthy of imitation. We need to reverse this trend. The industrialized countries must learn from the values of older traditional cultures. The wisdom of our ancestors, their respect for nature and their hospitable traditions of sharing, can help us to create a new economic system founded on social and environmental ethics.[17]

8.13 Amartya Sen: Inequality and famine

In his autobiographical notes, written for the Swedish Academy, Professor Sen wrote: "I was at Presidency College during 1951 to 1953. The memory of the Bengal famine of 1943, in which between two and three million people had died, and which I had watched from Santiniketan, was still quite fresh in my mind. I had been struck by its thoroughly class-dependent character. (I knew of no one in my school or among my friends and relations whose family had experienced the slightest problem during the entire famine; it was not a famine that afflicted even the lower middle classes - only people much further down the economic ladder, such as landless rural labourers.) Calcutta itself, despite its immensely

[17]http://www.learndev.org/dl/harmony8.pdf
http://dissidentvoice.org/2015/05/gandhi-as-an-economist/
http://www.encyclopedia.com/doc/1G2-3401804813.html

rich intellectual and cultural life, provided many constant reminders of the proximity of unbearable economic misery, and not even an elite college could ignore its continuous and close presence."

Benefits of equality

As was mentioned in Chapter 5, the English economist and Fabian, John Atkinson Hobson (1858-1940), offered a famous explanation of the colonial era in his book "Imperialism: A Study" (1902). According to Hobson, the basic problem that led to colonial expansion was an excessively unequal distribution of incomes in the industrialized countries. The result of this unequal distribution was that neither the rich nor the poor could buy back the total output of their society. The incomes of the poor were insufficient, and rich were too few in number. The rich had finite needs, and tended to reinvest their money. As Hobson pointed out, reinvestment in new factories only made the situation worse by increasing output.

Hobson had been sent as a reporter by the Manchester Guardian to cover the Second Boer War. His experiences had convinced him that colonial wars have an economic motive. Such wars are fought, he believed, to facilitate investment of the excess money of the rich in African or Asian plantations and mines, and to make possible the overseas sale of excess manufactured goods. Hobson believed imperialism to be immoral, since it entails suffering both among colonial peoples and among the poor of the industrial nations. The cure that he recommended was a more equal distribution of incomes in the manufacturing countries.

Interestingly, TED Talks (ideas worth spreading) was recently under fire from many progressive groups for censoring a short talk by the adventure capitalist, Nick Hanauer, entitled "Income Inequality". In this talk, Hanauer said exactly the same thing as John Hobson, but he applies the ideas, not to colonialism, but to current unemployment in the United States. Hanauer said that the rich are unable to consume the products of society because they are too few in number. To make an economy work, demand must be increased, and for this to happen, the distribution of incomes must become much more equal than it is today in the United States.

TED has now posted Hanauer's talk, and the interested reader can find another wonderful TED talk dealing with the same issues from the standpoint of health and social problems. In a splendid lecture entitled "How economic inequality harms societies", Richard Wilkinson demonstrates that there is almost no correlation between gross national product and a number of indicators of the quality of life, such as physical health, mental health, drug abuse, education, imprisonment, obesity, social mobility, trust, violence, teenage pregnancies and child well-being. On the other hand he offers comprehensive statistical evidence that these indicators are strongly correlated with the degree of inequality within countries, the outcomes being uniformly much better in nations where income is more equally distributed.

Warren Buffet famously remarked, "There's class warfare, all right. But it's my class, the rich class, that's making war, and we're winning." However, the evidence presented by Hobson, Hanauer and Wilkinson shows conclusively that no one wins in a society where inequality is too great, and everyone wins when incomes are more evenly distributed.

Figure 8.21: **World wealth levels in 2004. Countries with per capita wealth greater than 100,000 USD are shown in red, while those with per capita wealth less than 5,000 USD are shown in blue.**

Figure 8.22: **In many countries, children live by scavaging from garbage dumps.**

Figure 8.23: **Even in rich countries, many millions of people live in poverty,**

Extreme inequality today

Here are some quotations from a report by the Global Inequality organization: [18]

Inequality has been on the rise across the globe for several decades. Some countries have reduced the numbers of people living in extreme poverty. But economic gaps have continued to grow as the very richest amass unprecedented levels of wealth. Among industrial nations, the United States is by far the most top-heavy, with much greater shares of national wealth and income going to the richest 1 percent than any other country.

The world's richest 1 percent, those with more than $1 million, own 45 percent of the world's wealth. Adults with less than $10,000 in wealth make up 64 percent of the world's population but hold less than 2 percent of global wealth. The world's wealthiest individuals, those owning over $100,000 in assets, total less than 10 percent of the global population but own 84 percent of global wealth. Credit Suisse defines "wealth" as the value of a household's financial assets plus real assets (principally housing), minus their debts.

"Ultra high net worth individuals" - the wealth management industry's term for people worth more than $30 million - hold an astoundingly disproportionate share of glo bal wealth. These wealth owners hold 11.3 percent of total global wealth, yet represent only a tiny fraction (0.003%) of the world population.

The world's 10 richest billionaires, according to Forbes, own $745 billion in combined wealth, a sum greater than the total goods and services most nations produce on an annual basis. The globe is home to 2,208 billionaires, according to the 2018 Forbes ranking.

[18] https://inequality.org/facts/global-inequality/

Those with extreme wealth have often accumulated their fortunes on the backs of people around the world who work for poor wages and under dangerous conditions. According to Oxfam, the wealth divide between the global billionaires and the bottom half of humanity is steadily growing. Between 2009 and 2017, the number of billionaires it took to equal the wealth of the world's poorest 50 percent fell from 380 to 42...

The United States has more wealth than any other nation. But America's top-heavy distribution of wealth leaves typical American adults with far less wealth than their counterparts in other industrial nations.

Suggestions for further reading

1. Naomi Klein, *This Changes Everything: Capitalism and the Climate*, Simon and Schuster, New York, (2014).
2. Naomi Klein, *The Shock Doctrine: The Rise of Disaster Capitalism*, Knopf Canada, (2007).
3. Noam Chomsky, *Because We Say So*, City Lights Open Media, (2015).
4. Noam Chomsky, *Democracy and Power: The Delhi Lectures*, Open Book Publishers, (2014).
5. Noam Chomsky, *Masters of Mankind: Essays and Lectures, 1969-2013*, Haymarket Books, (2014).
6. Noam Chomsky, *Nuclear War and Environmental Catastrophe*, Seven Stories Press, New York, (2013).
7. A. Gore, *An Inconvenient Truth: The Planetary Emergency of Global Warming and What We Can Do About It*, Rodale Books, New York, (2006).
8. A. Gore, *Earth in the Balance: Forging a New Common Purpose*, Earthscan, (1992).
9. A.H. Ehrlich and P.R. Ehrlich, *Earth*, Thames and Methuen, (1987).pro Simon and Schuster, (1990).
10. P.R. Ehrlich and A.H. Ehrlich, *Healing the Planet: Strategies for Resolving the Environmental Crisis*, Addison-Wesley, (1991).
11. P.R. Ehrlich and A.H. Ehrlich, *Betrayal of Science and Reason: How Anti-Environmental Rhetoric Threatens our Future*, Island Press, (1998).
12. P.R. Ehrlich and A.H. Ehrlich, *One With Nineveh: Politics, Consumption and the Human Future*, Island Press, (2004).
13. A.H. Ehrlich and U. Lele, *Humankind at the Crossroads: Building a Sustainable Food System*, in *Draft Report of the Pugwash Study Group: The World at the Crossroads*, Berlin, (1992).
14. P.R. Ehrlich, *The Population Bomb*, Sierra/Ballentine, New York, (1972).
15. P.R. Ehrlich, A.H. Ehrlich and J. Holdren, *Human Ecology*, W.H. Freeman, San Francisco, (1972).
16. P.R. Ehrlich, A.H. Ehrlich and J. Holdren, *Ecoscience: Population, Resources, Environment*, W.H. Freeman, San Francisco, (1977)
17. P.R. Ehrlich and A.H. Ehrlich, *Extinction*, Victor Gollancz, London, (1982).

18. D.H. Meadows, D.L. Meadows, J. Randers, and W.W. Behrens III, *The Limits to Growth: A Report for the Club of Rome's Project on the Predicament of Mankind*, Universe Books, New York, (1972).
19. D.H. Meadows et al., *Beyond the Limits. Confronting Global Collapse and Envisioning a Sustainable Future*, Chelsea Green Publishing, Post Mills, Vermont, (1992).
20. D.H. Meadows, J. Randers and D.L. Meadows, *Limits to Growth: the 30-Year Update*, Chelsea Green Publishing, White River Jct., VT 05001, (2004).
21. A. Peccei and D. Ikeda, *Before it is Too Late*, Kodansha International, Tokyo, (1984).
22. A. Peccei, *The Human Quality*, Pergamon Press, Oxford, (1977).
23. A. Peccei, *One Hundred Pages for the Future*, Pergamon Press, New York, (1977).
24. V.K. Smith, ed., *Scarcity and Growth Reconsidered*, Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, (1979).
25. R. Costannza, ed., *Ecological Economics: The Science and Management of Sustainability*, Colombia University Press, New York, (1991).
26. M. McCarthy, *China Crisis: Threat to the Global Environment*, The Independent, (19 October, 2005).
27. L.R. Brown, *The Twenty-Ninth Day*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1978).
28. N. Myers, *The Sinking Ark*, Pergamon, New York, (1972).
29. N. Myers, *Conservation of Tropical Moist Forests*, National Academy of Sciences, Washington D.C., (1980).
30. National Academy of Sciences, *Energy and Climate*, NAS, Washington D.C., (1977).
31. W. Ophuls, *Ecology and the Politics of Scarcity*, W.H. Freeman, San Francisco, (1977).
32. E. Eckholm, *Losing Ground: Environmental Stress and World Food Prospects*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1975).
33. E. Eckholm, *The Picture of Health: Environmental Sources of Disease*, New York, (1976).
34. Economic Commission for Europe, *Air Pollution Across Boundaries*, United Nations, New York, (1985).
35. G. Hagman and others, *Prevention is Better Than Cure*, Report on Human Environmental Disasters in the Third World, Swedish Red Cross, Stockholm, Stockholm, (1986).
36. G. Hardin, "The Tragedy of the Commons", *Science*, December 13, (1968).
37. K. Newland, *Infant Mortality and the Health of Societies*, Worldwatch Paper 47, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1981).
38. D.W. Orr, *Ecological Literacy*, State University of New York Press, Albany, (1992).
39. E. Pestel, *Beyond the Limits to Growth*, Universe Books, New York, (1989).
40. D.C. Pirages and P.R. Ehrlich, *Ark II: Social Responses to Environmental Imperatives*, W.H. Freeman, San Francisco, (1974).
41. Population Reference Bureau, *World Population Data Sheet*, PRM, 777 Fourteenth Street NW, Washington D.C. 20007, (published annually).
42. R. Pressat, *Population*, Penguin Books Ltd., (1970).
43. M. Rechcigl (ed.), *Man/Food Equation*, Academic Press, New York, (1975).

44. J.C. Ryan, *Life Support: Conserving Biological Diversity*, Worldwatch Paper 108, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1992).
45. J. Shepard, *The Politics of Starvation*, Carnegie Endowment for International Peace, Washington D.C., (1975).
46. B. Stokes, *Local Responses to Global Problems: A Key to Meeting Basic Human Needs*, Worldwatch Paper 17, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1978).
47. L. Timberlake, *Only One Earth: Living for the Future*, BBC/ Earthscan, London, (1987).
48. UNEP, *Environmental Data Report*, Blackwell, Oxford, (published annually).
49. UNESCO, *International Coordinating Council of Man and the Biosphere*, MAB Report Series No. 58, Paris, (1985).
50. United Nations Fund for Population Activities, *A Bibliography of United Nations Publications on Population*, United Nations, New York, (1977).
51. United Nations Fund for Population Activities, *The State of World Population*, UNPF, 220 East 42nd Street, New York, 10017, (published annually).
52. United Nations Secretariat, *World Population Prospects Beyond the Year 2000*, U.N., New York, (1973).
53. J. van Klinken, *Het Dierde Punte*, Uitgiversmaatschappij J.H. Kok-Kampen, Netherlands (1989).
54. B. Ward and R. Dubos, *Only One Earth*, Penguin Books Ltd., (1973).
55. WHO/UNFPA/UNICEF, *The Reproductive Health of Adolescents: A Strategy for Action*, World Health Organization, Geneva, (1989).
56. E.O. Wilson, *Sociobiology*, Harvard University Press, (1975).
57. E.O. Wilson (ed.), *Biodiversity*, National Academy Press, Washington D.C., (1988).
58. E.O. Wilson, *The Diversity of Life*, Allen Lane, The Penguin Press, London, (1992).
59. G. Woodwell (ed.), *The Earth in Transition: Patterns and Processes of Biotic Impoverishment*, Cambridge University Press, (1990).
60. World Resources Institute (WRI), *Global Biodiversity Strategy*, The World Conservation Union (IUCN), United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP), (1992).
61. World Resources Institute, *World Resources 200-2001: People and Ecosystems: The Fraying Web of Life*, WRI, Washington D.C., (2000).
62. D.W. Pearce and R.K. Turner, *Economics of Natural Resources and the Environment*, Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, (1990).
63. T. Jackson, *Material Concerns: Pollution, Profit and the Quality of Life*, Routledge, (2004).
64. T. Jackson, *Motivating Sustainable Consumption*, Report to the Sustainable Development Research Network, January (2005).
65. T. Jackson, *The Earthscan Reader in Sustainable Consumption*, Earthscan, (2006).
66. J.S. Avery, *Information Theory and Evolution, 2nd Edition*, World Scientific, (2012).
67. A.J. Lotka, *Elements of Mathematical Biology*, Dover, (1956).
68. E.O. Wilson *Sociobiology: The New Synthesis*, Harvard University Press, (1975).
69. E.O. Wilson, *The Superorganism: The Beauty, Elegance, and Strangeness of Insect Societies*, W.W. Norton, (2009).

70. F. Soddy, *Wealth, Virtual Wealth and Debt. The solution of the economic paradox*, George Allen and Unwin, (1926).
71. F. Soddy, *The Role of Money*, George Routledge and Sons, London, (1934)
72. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Energy and Economic Myths : Institutional and Analytical Economic Essays*, Pergamon Press, (1976).
73. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *The Entropy Law and the Economic Process*, Harvard University Press, (1971).
74. J. Rifkin and T. Howard, *Entropy: A New World View* The Viking Press, New York (1980).
75. P. Bartelmus, *Environment, Growth and Development: The Concepts and Strategies of Sustainability*, Routledge, New York, (1994).
76. H.E. Daly and K.N. Townsend, (editors), *Valuing the Earth. Economics, Ecology, Ethics*, MIT Press, Cambridge, Massachusetts, (1993)
77. C. Flavin, *Slowing Global Warming: A Worldwide Strategy*, Worldwatch Paper 91, Worldwatch Institute, Washington D.C., (1989).
78. S.H. Schneider, *The Genesis Strategy: Climate and Global Survival*, Plenum Press, (1976).
79. WHO/UNFPA/UNICEF, *The Reproductive Health of Adolescents: A Strategy for Action*, World Health Organization, Geneva, (1989).
80. World Commission on Environment and Development, *Our Common Future*, Oxford University Press, (1987).
81. W. Jackson, *Man and the Environment*, W.C. Brown, Dubuque, Iowa, (1971).
82. T. Berry, *The Dream of the Earth*, Sierra Club Books, San Francisco, (1988).
83. T.M. Swanson, ed., *The Economics and Ecology of Biodiversity Decline: The Forces Driving Global Change*, Cambridge University Press, (1995).
84. F.H. Bormann, *Unlimited Growth: Growing, Growing, and Gone?*, BioScience 22: 706-9, (1972).
85. L.G. Brookes, *A Low-Energy Strategy for the United Kingdom*, Atom 269: 73-8, (1979).
86. J. Cherfas, *Skeptics and Visionaries Examine Energy Saving*, Science 251: 154-6, (1991).
87. C.J. Cleveland, *Energy Quality and Energy Surplus in the Extraction of Fossil Fuels in the US*, Ecological Economics 6: 139-62, (1992).
88. C.J. Cleveland, Robert Costanza, Charlie A.S. Hall and Robert Kaufmann, *Energy and the US Economy: A Biophysical Perspective*, Science 225 (4665): 890-7, (1984).
89. P. Cloud, *Entropy, Materials, and Prosperity*, Geologische Rundschau 66: 678-96, (1978).
90. H.E. Daly, *From Empty-World Economics to Full-World Economics: Recognizing a Historical Turning Point in Economic Development*, in R. Goodland, H. E. Daly and S. Serafy (eds) Population, Technology, and Lifestyle, pp. 23-37. Washington, DC: Island Press, (1992).
91. H.E. Daly, *On Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen'-s Contributions to Economics: An Obituary Essay*, Ecological Economics 13: 149-54, (1995).

92. H.E. Daly, *Georgescu-Roegen versus Solow/Stiglitz*, Ecological Economics 22: 267-8, (1997).
93. M. Eigen, *Selforganization of Matter and the Evolution of Biological Macro- molecules*, Naturwissenschaften 58(10): 465-523, (1971).
94. S.O. Funtowicz and Jerry R. Ravetz, *Post Normal Science: A New Science for New Times*, Scientific European 266: 20-2, (1990).
95. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Fixed Coefficients of Production and the Marginal Productivity Theory*, Review of Economic Studies 3: 40-9, (1935a).
96. N. Georgescu-Roegen, (1935b) *Note on a Proposition of Pareto*, Quarterly Journal of Economics 49: 706-14.
97. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Marginal Utility of Money and Elasticities of Demand*, Quarterly Journal of Economics 50: 533-9, (1936a).
98. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *The Pure Theory of Consumer'-s Behavior*, Quarterly Journal of Economics 50: 545-93, (1936b).
99. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Process in Farming versus Process in Manufacturing: A Problem of Balanced Development*, in U. Papi and C. Nunn (eds) Economic Problems of Agriculture in Industrial Societies, pp. 497-528. London: Macmillan, (1969).
100. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *The Entropy Law and the Economic Process*, Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, (1971).
101. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Energy and Economic Myths*, Southern Economic Journal 41: 347-81, (1975).
102. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Energy and Economic Myths*. New York: Pergamon Press, (1976).
103. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Inequality, Limits and Growth from a Bioeconomic Viewpoint*, Review of Social Economy 35: 361-75, (1977a).
104. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *The Steady State and Ecological Salvation: A Thermodynamic Analysis*, BioScience 27: 266-70, (1977b).
105. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Energy Analysis and Economic Valuation*, Southern Economic Journal 45: 1023-58, (1979a).
106. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Methods in Economic Science*, Journal of Economic Issues 13 (2): 317-28, (1979b).
107. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Methods in Economic Science: A Rejoinder*, Economic Issues 15: 188-93, (1981).
108. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *The Promethean Condition of Viable Technologies*, Materials and Society 7: 425-35, (1983).
109. Georgescu-Roegen, Nicholas, *Man and Production*, in M. Baranzini and R. Scazzieri (eds) Foundations of Economics: Structures of Inquiry and Economic Theory, pp. 247-80. Oxford: Basil Blackwell, (1986).
110. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *An Emigrant from a Developing Country: Autobiographical Notes-I*, Banca Nationale del Lavoro Quarterly Review 164: 3-31, (1988a).
111. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *The Interplay between Institutional and Material Factors: The Problem and Its Status*, in J.A. Kregel, E. Matzner and A. Roncaglia (eds) Barriers to Employment, pp. 297-326. London: Macmillan, (1988b).

112. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Production Process and Dynamic Economics*, in M. Baranzini and R. Scazzieri (eds) The Economic Theory of Structure and Change, pp. 198-226. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, (1990).
113. N. Georgescu-Roegen, *Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen about Himself* , in M. Szenberg (ed.) Eminent Economists: Their Life Philosophies, pp. 128-59. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, (1992).
114. J. Gever, Robert Kaufmann, David Skole and Charles Vörösmarty, *Beyond Oil: The Threat to Food and Fuel in the Coming Decades*, Niwot, CO: University Press of Colorado, (1991).
115. M. Giampietro, *Sustainability and Technological Development in Agriculture: A Critical Appraisal of Genetic Engineering*, BioScience 44(10): 677-89, (1994).
116. M. Giampietro and Kozo Mayumi, *Another View of Development, Ecological Degradation and North-South Trade*, Review of Social Economy 56: 21-37, (1998).
117. M. Giampietro and Kozo Mayumi, *The Biofuel Delusion: The Fallacy of Large Scale Agro-biofuel Production*, London: Earthscan, (2009).
118. R. Goldschmidt, *Some Aspects of Evolution*, Science 78: 539-47, (1933).
119. S.J. Gould, *The Return to Hopeful Monsters*, Natural History 86: 22-30, (1977).
120. S.J. Gould and Niles Eldredge, *Punctuated Equilibria: The Tempo and Mode of Evolution Reconsidered*, Paleobiology 3: 115-51, (1977).
121. J. Gowdy, *The Value of Biodiversity: Markets, Society and Ecosystems*, Land Economics 73(1): 25-41, (1997).
122. J. Gribbin, *The Death of the Sun* New York: Delacorte Press, (1980).
123. C.A.S. Hall, Cutler J. Cleveland and Robert Kaufman, *Energy and Resource Quality* New York: John Wiley and Sons, (1986).
124. S.R. Ichtiaque and Stephen H. Schneider, *Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide and Aerosols: Effects of Large Increases on Global Climate*, Science 173: 138-41, (1971).
125. K. Ito, *Setting Goals and Action Plan for Energy Efficiency Improvement.* Paper presented at the EAS Energy Efficiency and Conservation Conference, Tokyo (19 June), (2007).
126. F. Jevons, *Greenhouse: A Paradox*, Search 21: 171-2, (1990).
127. W.S. Jevons, *The Coal Question* (reprint of 3rd edn, 1906). New York: Augustus M. Kelley, (1965).
128. N. Kawamiya, *Entropii to Kougyoushakai no Sentaku (Entropy and Future Choices for the Industrial Society)*, Tokyo: Kaimei, (1983).
129. J.D. Khazzoom, *Economic Implications of Mandated Efficiency Standards for Household Appliances*, Energy Journal 1: 21-39, (1980).
130. J.D. Khazzoom, *Energy Saving Resulting from the Adoption of More Efficient Appliances*, Energy Journal 8: 85-9, (1987).
131. T.C. Koopmans, *Three Essays on the State of Economic Science*, New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, (1957).
132. T.S. Kuhn, *The Structure of Scientific Revolutions*, Chicago, IL: The University of Chicago Press, (1962).

133. J. von Liebig, *Letters on Modern Agriculture* (J. Blyth ed.). New York: John Wiley, (1959).
134. A.J. Lotka, *Elements of Mathematical Biology*, New York: Dover Publications, (1956).
135. G. Luft, *Fueling the Dragon: China'-s Race Into the Oil Market*. http://www.iags.org/china.htm, (2007).
136. K. Mayumi, *The Origins of Ecological Economics: The Bioeconomics of Georgescu-Roegen*,London: Routledge, (2001).
137. K. Mayumi, *An Epistemological Critique of the Open Leontief Dynamic Model: Balanced and Sustained Growth, Delays, and Anticipatory Systems Theory*, Structural Change and Economic Dynamics 16: 540-56m (2005).
138. K. Mayumi, Mario Giampietro and John Gowdy, *Georgescu-Roegen/Daly versus Solow/Stiglitz Revisited*, Ecological Economics 27: 115-17. Legacies: Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen 1253, (1998).
139. W.H. Miernyk, *Economic Growth Theory and the Georgescu-Roegen Paradigm*, in K. Mayumi and J. Gowdy (eds) Bioeconomics and Sustainability: Essays in Honour of Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen, pp. 69-81. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, (1999).
140. Newman, Peter, *Greenhouse, Oil and Cities*, Futures May: 335-48, (1991).
141. D. Pearce, *Substitution and Sustainability: Some Reflections on Georgescu-Roegen*, Ecological Economics 22: 295-7, (1997).
142. D. Pearce, Edward Barbier and Anil Markandya, *Sustainable Development*, Hampshire: Edward Elgar, (1990).
143. J. Polimeni, Kozo Mayumi, Mario Giampietro and Blake Alcott, *The Jevons Paradox and the Myth of Resource Efficiency Improvements*, London: Earthscan, (2008).
144. J.F. Randolph, *Basic Real and Abstract Analysis*, New York: Academic Press, (1968).
145. D. Ricardo, *On the Principles of Political Economy and Taxation*, in P. Sraffa (ed.) The Works and Correspondence of David Ricardo, Vol. 1. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, (1951).
146. E. Schrödinger, *What is Life? With Mind and Matter and Autobiographical Sketches*, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, (1967).
147. J.A. Schumpeter, *The Theory of Economic Development*, Cambridge, MA: Harvard Economic Press, (1951).
148. G.T. Seaborg, *The Erehwon Machine: Possibilities for Reconciling Goals by Way of New Technology*, in S.H. Schurr (ed.) Energy, Economic Growth, and the Environment, pp. 125-38. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, (1972).
149. M.R. Simmons, *Twilight in the Desert: The Coming Saudi Oil Shock and the World Economy* New Jersey: John Wiley and Sons, Inc., (2005).
150. B.J. Skinner, *Earth Resource (3rd edn)*, New Jersey: Prentice Hall, (1986).
151. V. Smil, *Global Catastrophes and Trends: The Next Fifty Years* Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, (2008).
152. R. Solow, *Technical Change and the Aggregate Production Function*, Review of Economics and Statistics 39: 312-20, (1957).

153. R. Solow, *The Economics of Resources or the Resources of Economics*, American Economic Review 64: 1-14, (1974).
154. R.E. Ulanowicz, *Growth and Development: Ecosystem Phenomenology* New York: Springer-Verlag, (1986).
155. US Geological Survey, *Commodity Statistics and Information*, (2005).
156. G.K. Zipf, *National Unity and Disunity: The Nation as a Bio-social Organism.* Bloomington, IN: Principia Press, (1941).

Chapter 9

WHAT THEN MUST WE DO?

9.1 A new social contract

Our present situation is this:

The future looks extremely dark because of human folly, especially the long-term future. The greatest threats are catastrophic climate change and thermonuclear war, but a large-scale global famine also has to be considered.

We give our children loving care, but it makes no sense do so and at the same time to neglect to do all that is within our power to ensure that they and their descendants will inherit an earth in which they can survive. We also have a responsibility to all the other living organisms with which we share the gift of life.

Inaction is not an option. We have to act with courage and dedication, even if the odds are against success, because the stakes are so high. The mass media could mobilize us to action, but they have failed in their duty. Our educational system could also wake us up and make us act, but it too has failed us. The battle to save the earth from human greed and folly has to be fought in the alternative media. Hence this book, printed by a small peace-oriented Swedish publisher, and hence urgent the tone of this final chapter.

We need a new economic system, a new society, a new social contract, a new way of life. Here are the great tasks that history has given to our generation: We must achieve a steady-state economic system. We must restore democracy. We must decrease economic inequality. We must break the power of corporate greed. We must leave fossil fuels in the ground. We must stabilize and ultimately reduce the global population. We must eliminate the institution of war. And finally, we must develop a more mature ethical system to match our new technology.

9.2 We must achieve a steady-state economic system

A steady-state economic system is necessary because neither population growth nor economic growth can continue indefinitely on a finite earth. No one can maintain that exponential industrial growth is sustainable in the long run except by refusing to look more than a short distance into the future.

Of course, it is necessary to distinguish between industrial growth, and growth of culture and knowledge, which can and should continue to grow. Qualitative improvements in human society are possible and desirable, but resource-using and pollution-producing industrial growth is reaching its limits, both because of ecological constraints and because of the exhaustion of petroleum, natural gas and other non-renewable resources, such as metals. The threat of catastrophic climate change makes it imperative for us to stop using fossil fuels within very few decades.

We discussed Nicholas Georgescu-Roegen's reasons for viewing our present economic system as unidirectional and entropic: Low-entropy resources are converted into high-entropy waste, a unidirectional process. By contrast, to be sustainable in the long run, a process must be cyclic, like the growth and regeneration of a forest.

Georgescu-Roegen's list of desiderata remains valid today: We need drastic cuts in weapons production, thereby releasing productive forces for more constructive purposes. We need immediate aid to underdeveloped countries and gradual decrease in population to a level that can be maintained by organic agriculture. We also need avoidance, and strict regulation if necessary, of wasteful energy use. Finally, we need to abandon our attachment to extravagant gadgetry and fashion, and we must cure ourselves of workaholic habits by re-balancing the time spent on work and leisure.

Today, the distinguished economist Herman Daly (a student of Georgescu-Roegen) continues to write perceptive articles and books documenting the need for a steady-state economy. Among his books, the following are noteworthy: "Steady-State Economics" (1977); "For the Common Good" (1989, with John B. Cobb, Jr.); "Valuing the Earth" (1993, with Kenneth Townsend); "Beyond Growth" (1996); "Ecological Economics and the Ecology of Economics" (1999); "Local Politics of Global Sustainability" (2000, with Thomas Prugh and Robert Costanza), and "Ecological Economics: Principles and Applications" (2003, with Joshua Farley. Prof. Daly is a recipient of the Right Livelihood Award, which is sometimes called the Alternative Nobel Prize.[1]

9.3 We must restore democracy

It is obvious, almost by definition, that excessive governmental secrecy and true democracy are incompatible. If the people of a country have no idea what their government is doing, they cannot possibly have the influence on decisions that the word "democracy" implies.

Governmental secrecy is not something new. Secret diplomacy contributed to the outbreak of World War I, and the secret Sykes-Picot Agreement later contributed to the bitterness of conflicts in the Middle East. However, in recent years, governmental secrecy

[1] http://steadystate.org/category/herman-daly/
https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Herman_Daly
http://grist.org/article/bank/
http://www.donellameadows.org/wp-content/userfiles/Limits-to-Growth-digital-scan-version.pdf
http://www.clubofrome.org/?p=326

has grown enormously.

The revelations of Edward Snowden have shown that the number of people involved in secret operations of the United States government is now as large as the entire population of Norway: roughly 5 million. The influence of this dark side of government has become so great that no president is able to resist it.

Many modern governments have become very expert in manipulating public opinion through mass media. They only allow the public to hear a version of the "news" that has been handed down by powerholders. Of course, people can turn to the alternative media that are available on the Internet. But on the whole, the vision of the world presented on television screens and in major newspapers is the "truth" that is accepted by the majority of the public, and it is this picture of events that influences political decisions. Censorship of the news by the power elite is a form of secrecy, since it withholds information that is needed for a democracy to function properly.

Snowden has already said most of what he has to say. Nevertheless, Washington was willing to break international law and the rules of diplomatic immunity by forcing its European allies to ground the plane of Bolivian President Evo Morales following a rumor that Snowden was on board. This was not done to prevent Snowden from saying more, but with the intention of making a gruesome example of him, as a warning to other whistleblowers.

In a democracy, the power of judging and controlling governmental policy is supposed to be in the hands of the people. It is completely clear that if the people do not know what their government is doing, then they cannot judge or control governmental policy, and democracy has been abolished. There has always been a glaring contradiction between democracy and secret branches of the government, such as the CIA, which conducts its assassinations and its dirty wars in South America and elsewhere without any public knowledge or control.

The gross, wholesale electronic spying on citizens revealed by Snowden seems to be specifically aimed at eliminating democracy. It is aimed at instilling universal fear and conformity, fear of blackmail and fear of being out of step, so that the public will not dare to oppose whatever the government does, no matter how criminal or unconstitutional.

We must restore democracy wherever it has been replaced by oligarchy. When we do so, we will free ourselves from many evils, including excessive economic inequality, violation of civil rights, and the suffering produced by perpetual wars.

9.4 We must decrease economic inequality

In his Apostolic Exhortation, "Evangelii Gaudium", Pope Francis said:

"In our time humanity is experiencing a turning-point in its history, as we can see from the advances being made in so many fields. We can only praise the steps being taken to improve people's welfare in areas such as health care, education and communications. At the same time we have to remember that the majority of our contemporaries are barely living from day to day, with dire consequences. A number of diseases are spreading. The hearts of many people are gripped by fear and desperation, even in the so-called rich countries. The joy of living frequently fades, lack of respect for others and violence are on the rise, and inequality is increasingly evident. It is a struggle to live and, often, to live with precious little dignity."

"This epochal change has been set in motion by the enormous qualitative, quantitative, rapid and cumulative advances occurring in the sciences and in technology, and by their instant application in different areas of nature and of life. We are in an age of knowledge and information, which has led to new and often anonymous kinds of power."

"Just as the commandment 'Thou shalt not kill' sets a clear limit in order to safeguard the value of human life, today we also have to say 'thou shalt not' to an economy of exclusion and inequality. Such an economy kills. How can it be that it is not a news item when an elderly homeless person dies of exposure, but it is news when the stock market loses two points? This is a case of exclusion. Can we continue to stand by when food is thrown away while people are starving? This is a case of inequality. Today everything comes under the laws of competition and the survival of the fittest, where the powerful feed upon the powerless. As a consequence, masses of people find themselves excluded and marginalized: without work, without possibilities, without any means of escape."

"In this context, some people continue to defend trickle-down theories which assume that economic growth, encouraged by a free market, will inevitably succeed in bringing about greater justice and inclusiveness in the world. This opinion, which has never been confirmed by the facts, expresses a crude and naive trust in the goodness of those wielding economic power and in the sacralized workings of the prevailing economic system. Meanwhile, the excluded are still waiting."

In a recent speech, Senator Bernie Sanders quoted Pope Francis extensively and added: "We have a situation today, Mr. President, incredible as it may sound, where the wealthiest 85 people in the world own more wealth than the bottom half of the world's population."

The social epidemiologist Prof. Richard Wilkinson, has documented the ways in which societies with less economic inequality do better than more unequal societies in a number of areas, including increased rates of life expectancy, mathematical performance, literacy, trust, social mobility, together with decreased rates of infant mortality, homicides, imprisonment, teenage births, obesity and mental illness, including drug and alcohol addiction.[2] We must also remember that according to the economist John A. Hobson, the basic problem that led to imperialism was an excessively unequal distribution of incomes in the industrialized countries. The result of this unequal distribution was that neither the rich nor the poor could buy back the total output of their society. The incomes of the poor were insufficient, and rich were too few in number.

[2]https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cZ7LzE3u7Bw
https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_G._Wilkinson

Figure 9.1: **Greed: one of the seven deadly sins. Pecados Capitales. Avaricia. Author: Jesus Solana from Madrid, Spain.**

9.5 We must break the power of corporate greed

When the United Nations was established in 1945, the purpose of the organization was to abolish the institution of war. This goal was built into many of the articles of the UN Charter. Accordingly, throughout the world, many War Departments were renamed and became Departments of Defense. But the very name is a lie. In an age of nuclear threats and counter-threats, populations are by no means protected. Ordinary citizens are just hostages in a game for power and money. It is all about greed.

Why is war continually threatened? Why is Russia threatened? Why is war with Iran threatened? Why fan the flames of conflict with China? Is it to "protect" civilians? Absolutely not! In a thermonuclear war, hundreds of millions of civilians would die horribly everywhere in the world, also in neutral countries. What is really being protected are the profits of arms manufacturers. As long as there are tensions; as long as there is a threat of war, military budgets are safe; and the profits of arms makers are safe. The people in several "democracies", for example the United States, do not rule at the moment. Greed rules.

As Institute Professor Noam Chomsky of MIT has pointed out, greed and lack of ethics are built into the structure of corporations. By law, the Chief Executive Officer of a corporation must be entirely motivated by the collective greed of the stockholders. He must maximize profits. If the CEO abandons this single-minded chase after corporate profits for ethical reasons, or for the sake of humanity or the biosphere or the future, he (or she) must, by law, be fired and replaced.

Occasionally, for the sake of their public image, corporations seem to do something for other motives than their own bottom line, but it is usually window dressing. For example, Shell claims to be supporting research on renewable energy. Perhaps there is indeed a small renewable energy laboratory somewhere in that vast corporation; but the real interest of the organization is somewhere else. Shell is sending equipment on a large scale to drill for more and more environment-destroying oil in the Arctic.[3]

9.6 We must leave fossil fuels in the ground

The threat of catastrophic climate change requires prompt and dedicated action by the global community. Unless we very quickly make the transition from fossil fuels to 100% renewable energy, we will reach a tipping point after which uncontrollable feedback loops could take over, leading to a human-caused 6th geological extinction event. This might even be comparable to the Permian-Triassic event, during which 96% of all marine species and 70% of terrestrial vertebrates became extinct.

New hope that such a catastrophe for human civilization and the biosphere can be avoided comes from two recently-released documents: The Encyclical "Laudato Si' " by

[3] http://www.countercurrents.org/avery170715.htm
http://human-wrongs-watch.net/2015/06/25/militarisms-hostages/
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FJUA4cm0Rck

Pope Francis, and the statistics on the rate of growth of renewable energy newly released by the Earth Policy Institute.

Arctic sea-ice is melting at an increasingly rapid rate, because of several feedback loops. One of these feedback loops, called the albedo effect, is due to the fact that white snow-covered sea-ice in the Arctic reflects sunlight, while dark water absorbs it, raising the temperature and leading to more melting.

Another feedback loop is due to the fact that rising temperatures mean that more water is evaporated. The water vapor in the atmosphere acts like a greenhouse gas, and raises the temperature still further.

If we consider long-term effects, by far the most dangerous of the feedback loops is the melting of methane hydrate crystals and the release of methane into the atmosphere, where its effects as a greenhouse gas are roughly twenty times great as those of CO_2.

When organic matter is carried into the oceans by rivers, it decays to form methane. The methane then combines with water to form hydrate crystals, which are stable at the temperatures which currently exist on ocean floors. However, if the temperature rises, the crystals become unstable, and methane gas bubbles up to the surface.

The worrying thing about methane hydrate deposits on ocean floors is the enormous amount of carbon involved: roughly 10,000 gagatons. To put this huge amount into perspective, we can remember that the total amount in world CO_2 emissions since 1751 has been only 337 gigatons.

Despite the worrying nature of the threats that we are facing, there are reasons for hope. One of the greatest of these is the beautiful, profound and powerful encyclical that has just been released by Pope Francis.[4]

Pope Francis tells us that the dictates of today's economists are not sacred: In the future, if we are to survive, economics must be given both a social conscience and an ecological conscience. Nor are private property and profits sacred. They must be subordinated to the common good, and the preservation of our global commons. Less focus on material goods need not make us less happy. The quality of our lives can be increased, not decreased, if we give up our restless chase after power and wealth, and derive more of our pleasures from art, music and literature, and from conversations with our families and friends.

Another reason for hope can be found in the extremely high present rate of growth of renewable energy, and in the remarkable properties of exponential growth. According to figures recently released by the Earth Policy Institute,[5] the global installed photovoltaic capacity is currently able to deliver 242,000 megawatts, and it is increasing at the rate of 27.8% per year. Wind energy can now deliver 370,000 megawatts, and it is increasing at the rate of roughly 20% per year.

Because of the astonishing properties of exponential growth, we can calculate that if these growth rates are maintained, renewable energy can give us 24.8 terawatts within

[4]http://w2.vatican.va/content/francesco/en/encyclicals/documents /papa -francesco_20150524_enciclica-laudato-si.html

[5]http://www.earth-policy.org/books/tgt

only 15 years! This is far more than the world's present use of all forms of energy.

All of us must still work with dedication to provide the political will needed to avoid catastrophic climate change. However, the strong and friendly voice of Pope Francis, and the remarkable rate of growth of renewable energy can guide our work, and can give us hope and courage.

The award-winning author and activist Naomi Klein has emphasized that the climate crisis changes everything. Environmentalists and antiwar activists must unite! We need a new economic system! The people of the world don't want climate change; they want system change!

9.7 We must stabilize and ultimately reduce the global population

According to the World Resources Institute and the United Nations Environment Programme, "It is estimated that since World War II, 1.2 billion hectares...[of agricultural land] has suffered at least moderate degradation as a result of human activity. This is a vast area, roughly the size of China and India combined." This area is 27% of the total area currently devoted to agriculture 5 . The report goes on to say that the degradation is greatest in Africa.

David Pimental and his associates at Cornell University pointed out in 1995 that "Because of erosion-associated loss of productivity and population growth, the per capita food supply has been reduced over the past 10 years and continues to fall. The Food and Agricultural Organization reports that the per capita production of grains which make up 80% of the world's food supply, has been declining since 1984."

Pimental et al. add that "Not only is the availability of cropland per capita decreasing as the world population grows, but arable land is being lost due to excessive pressure on the environment. For instance, during the past 40 years nearly one-third of the world's cropland (1.5 billion hectares) has been abandoned because of soil erosion and degradation. Most of the replacement has come from marginal land made available by removing forests. Agriculture accounts for 80% of the annual deforestation."

The phrase "developing countries" is more than a euphemism; it expresses the hope that with the help of a transfer of technology from the industrialized nations, all parts of the world can achieve prosperity. An important factor that prevents the achievement of worldwide prosperity is population growth.

In the words of Dr. Halfdan Mahler, former Director General of the World Health Organization, "Country after country has seen painfully achieved increases in total output, food production, health and educational facilities and employment opportunities reduced or nullified by excessive population growth."

The growth of population is linked to excessive urbanization, infrastructure failures and unemployment. In rural districts in the developing countries, family farms are often divided among a growing number of heirs until they can no longer be subdivided. Those family members who are no longer needed on the land have no alternative except migration to overcrowded cities, where the infrastructure is unable to cope so many new arrivals. Often the new migrants are forced to live in excrement-filled makeshift slums, where dysentery, hepatitis and typhoid are endemic, and where the conditions for human life sink to the lowest imaginable level. In Brazil, such shanty towns are called "favelas".

If modern farming methods are introduced in rural areas while population growth continues, the exodus to cities is aggravated, since modern techniques are less labor-intensive and favor large farms. In cities, the development of adequate infrastructure requires time, and it becomes a hopeless task if populations are growing rapidly. Thus, population stabilization is a necessary first step for development.

It can be observed that birth rates fall as countries develop. However, development is sometimes blocked by the same high birth rates that economic progress might have prevented. In this situation (known as the "demographic trap"), economic gains disappear immediately because of the demands of an exploding population.

For countries caught in the demographic trap, government birth control programs are especially important, because one cannot rely on improved social conditions to slow birth rates. Since health and lowered birth rates should be linked, it is appropriate that family-planning should be an important part of programs for public health and economic development.

A recent study conducted by Robert F. Lapham of Demographic Health Surveys and W. Parker Maudlin of the Rockefeller Foundation has shown that the use of birth control is correlated both with socio-economic setting and with the existence of strong family-planning programs. The implication of this study is that even in the absence of increased living standards, family planning programs can be successful, provided they have strong government support.

Education of women and higher status for women are vitally important measures, not only for their own sake, but also because in many countries these social reforms have proved to be the key to lower birth rates. As Sir Partha Dasgupta of Cambridge University has pointed out, the changes needed to break the cycle of overpopulation and poverty are all desirable in themselves. Besides education and higher status for women, they include state-provided social security for old people, provision of water supplies near to dwellings, provision of health services to all, abolition of child labor and general economic development. The money required to make these desirable changes is a tiny fraction of the amount that is currently wasted on war.

In order to avoid a catastrophic future famine, it is vitally important that all of the countries of the world should quickly pass through a demographic transition from a situation characterized by high birth rates and high death rates to a new equilibrium, where low death rates are balanced by low birth rates.

Figure 9.2: **Building peace in the minds of men and women. Source: UNESCO**

9.8 We must eliminate the institution of war

The problem of achieving internal peace over a large geographical area is not insoluble. It has already been solved. There exist today many nations or regions within each of which there is internal peace, and some of these are so large that they are almost worlds in themselves. One thinks of China, India, Brazil, Australia, the Russian Federation, the United States, and the European Union. Many of these enormous societies contain a variety of ethnic groups, a variety of religions and a variety of languages, as well as striking contrasts between wealth and poverty. If these great land areas have been forged into peaceful and cooperative societies, cannot the same methods of government be applied globally?

But what are the methods that nations use to achieve internal peace? Firstly, every true government needs to have the power to make and enforce laws that are binding on individual citizens. Secondly the power of taxation is a necessity. Thirdly, within their own territories, almost all nations have more military power than any of their subunits. For example, the US Army is more powerful than the State Militia of Illinois.

This unbalance of power contributes to the stability of the Federal Government of the United States. When the FBI wanted to arrest Al Capone, it did not have to bomb Chicago. Agents just went into the city and arrested the gangster. Even if Capone had been enormously popular in Illinois, the the government of the state would have realized in advance that it had no chance of resisting the US Federal Government, and it still would have allowed the “Feds” to make their arrest. Similar considerations hold for almost all nations within which there is internal peace. It is true that there are some nations within which subnational groups have more power than the national government, but these are frequently characterized by civil wars.

Of the large land areas within which internal peace has been achieved, the European

Union differs from the others because its member states still maintain powerful armies. The EU forms a realistic model for what can be achieved globally in the near future by reforming and strengthening the United Nations. In the distant future, however, we can imagine a time when a world federal authority will have much more power than any of its member states, and when national armies will have only the size needed to maintain local order.

Today there is a pressing need to enlarge the size of the political unit from the nation-state to the entire world. The need to do so results from the terrible dangers of modern weapons and from global economic interdependence. The progress of science has created this need, but science has also given us the means to enlarge the political unit: Our almost miraculous modern communications media, if properly used, have the power to weld all of humankind into a single supportive and cooperative society.

It is useful to consider the analogy between the institution of war and the institution of slavery. We might be tempted to say, "There has always been war, throughout human history; and war will always continue to exist." As an antidote to this kind of pessimism, we can think of slavery, which, like war, has existed throughout most of recorded history. The cultures of ancient Egypt, Greece and Rome were all based on slavery, and, in more recent times, millions of Africans were captured and forced into a life of slavery in the New World and the Middle East. Slavery was as much an accepted and established institution as war is today. Many people made large profits from slavery, just as arms manufacturers today make enormous profits. Nevertheless, despite the weight of vested interests, legal slavery has now been abolished throughout most of the world.

Today we look with horror at drawings of slave ships, where human beings were packed together like cord-wood, and we are amazed that such cruelty could have been possible. Can we not hope for a time when our descendants, reading descriptions of the wars of our own time, will be equally amazed that such cruelty and stupidity could have been possible? If we use them constructively, the vast resources now wasted on war can initiate a new era of happiness and prosperity for the family of man. It is within our power to let this happen. The example of the men and women who worked to rid the world of slavery can give us courage as we strive for a time when war will exist only as a dark memory fading into the past.

9.9 New ethics to match new technology

Modern science has, for the first time in history, offered humankind the possibility of a life of comfort, free from hunger and cold, and free from the constant threat of death through infectious disease. At the same time, science has given humans the power to obliterate their civilization with nuclear weapons, or to make the earth uninhabitable through overpopulation and pollution.

The question of which of these paths we choose is literally a matter of life or death for ourselves and our children. Will we use the discoveries of modern science constructively, and thus choose the path leading towards life? Or will we use science to produce more and more lethal weapons, which sooner or later, through a technical or human failure, may result in a catastrophic nuclear war? Will we thoughtlessly destroy our beautiful planet through unlimited growth of population and industry? The choice among these alternatives is ours to make. We live at a critical moment of history, a moment of crisis for civilization.

No one living today asked to be born at such a moment, but by an accident of birth, history has given us an enormous responsibility, and two daunting tasks: If civilization is to survive, we must not only stabilize the global population but also, even more importantly, we must eliminate the institution of war. We face these difficult tasks with an inherited emotional nature that has not changed much during the last 40,000 years. Furthermore, we face the challenges of the 21st century with an international political system based on the anachronistic concept of the absolutely sovereign nation-state. However, the human brain has shown itself to be capable of solving even the most profound and complex problems. The mind that has seen into the heart of the atom must not fail when confronted with paradoxes of the human heart.

We must replace the old world of international anarchy, chronic war and institutionalized injustice, by a new world of law. The United Nations Charter, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights and the International Criminal Court are steps in the right direction, but these institutions need to be greatly strengthened and reformed.[6]

We also need a new global ethic, where loyalty to one's family and nation is supplemented by a higher loyalty to humanity as a whole. The Nobel laureate biochemist Albert Szent-Györgyi once wrote:

"The story of man consists of two parts, divided by the appearance of modern science.... In the first period, man lived in the world in which his species was born and to which his

[6]http://www.countercurrents.org/zuesse050815.htm
https://www.youtube.com/watch?t=16&v=hDsPWmioSHg
http://www.commondreams.org/views/2014/04/14/us-oligarchy-not-democracy-says-scientific-study
http://www.treehugger.com/renewable-energy/striking-chart-showing-solar-power-will-take-over-world.html
http://www.countercurrents.org/richard120815.htm
http://priceofoil.org/content/uploads/2015/08/OCI-Untouchable_Arctic_FINAL.pdf
http://priceofoil.org/2015/08/13/untouchable-the-climate-case-against-arctic-drilling/
http://www.commondreams.org/views/2015/08/14/untouchable-climate-case-against-arctic-drilling
https://www.youtube.com/watch?t=124&v=9_LJpN893Vg
http://americamagazine.org/content/all-things/which-candidate-quotes-pope-most
http://www.truth-out.org/news/item/32336-our-united-states-of-indebtedness
http://www.commondreams.org/news/2015/08/17/ahead-australia-visit-naomi-klein-brands-pm-abbott-climate-villain
http://www.footprintnetwork.org/ecological_footprint_nations/
http://ecowatch.com/2015/08/16/earth-overshoot-day/2/
http://www.commondreams.org/news/2015/08/18/islamic-declaration-blasts-short-sighted-capitalism-demands-action-climate
http://islamicclimatedeclaration.org/islamic-declaration-on-global-climate-change/
http://ecowatch.com/2015/06/29/dalai-lama-pope-encyclical/
http://www.theguardian.com/music/2015/jun/28/dalai-lama-glastonbury-verdict-isis-unthinkable
http://ecowatch.com/2015/07/02/naomi-klein-people-planet-first/

senses were adapted. In the second, man stepped into a new, cosmic world to which he was a complete stranger.... The forces at man's disposal were no longer terrestrial forces, of human dimension, but were cosmic forces, the forces which shaped the universe. The few hundred Fahrenheit degrees of our flimsy terrestrial fires were exchanged for the ten million degrees of the atomic reactions which heat the sun."

"This is but a beginning, with endless possibilities in both directions; a building of a human life of undreamt of wealth and dignity, or a sudden end in utmost misery. Man lives in a new cosmic world for which he was not made. His survival depends on how well and how fast he can adapt himself to it, rebuilding all his ideas, all his social and political institutions."

"...Modern science has abolished time and distance as factors separating nations. On our shrunken globe today, there is room for one group only: the family of man."

Suggestions for further reading

1. Herman Daly, *Steady-State Economics: Second Edition with New Essays*, Island Press, (1991).
2. Herman Daly, *Economics in a Full World*, Scientific American, Vol. 293, Issue 3, September, (2005).
3. Herman Daly and John Cobb, *For the Common Good*, Beacon Press, Boston, (1989).
4. E.O. Wilson, *The Diversity of Life*, Allen Lane, The Penguin Press, (1992).
5. Lester R. Brown et. al.,*Saving the Planet. How to Shape an Environmentally Sustainable Global Economy*, W.W. Norton, New York, (1991).
6. Muhammad Yunus, *Banker to the Poor; Microcredit and the Battle Against World Poverty*, (2003).
7. UN Global Compact, http://www.unglobalcompact.org (2007).
8. UN Millennium Development Goals http://www.un.org/ millenniumgoals/ (2007).
9. Amartya Sen, *Poverty and Famine; An Essay on Entitlement and Deprivation*, Oxford Univeersity Press, (1981).
10. Amartya Sen, *Development as Freedon*, Oxford University Press, (1999).
11. Amartya Sen, *Inequality Reexamined*, Harvard University Press, (1992).
12. Paul F. Knitter and Chandra Muzaffar, editors, *Subverting Greed; Religious Perspectives on the Global Economy*, Orbis Books, Maryknoll, New York, (2002).
13. Edy Korthals Altes, *The Contribution of Religions to a Just and Sustainable Economic Development*, in F. David Peat, editor, *The Pari Dialogues, Volume 1*, Pari Publishing, (2007).
14. Hendrik Opdebeeck, *Globalization Between Market and Democracy*, in F. David Peat, editor, *The Pari Dialogues, Volume 1*, Pari Publishing, (2007).
15. Paul Hawken *The Ecology of Commerce; A Declaration of Sustainability*, Collins Business, (2005).
16. Luther Standing Bear, *Land of the Spotted Eagle*, Houghton Mifflin, (1933).

17. T. Gyatso, HH the Dalai Lama, *Ancient Wisdom, Modern World: Ethics for the New Millennium*, Abacus, London, (1999).
18. T. Gyatso, HH the Dalai Lama, *How to Expand Love: Widening the Circle of Loving Relationships*, Atria Books, (2005).
19. J. Rotblat and D. Ikeda, *A Quest for Global Peace*, I.B. Tauris, London, (2007).
20. M. Gorbachev and D. Ikeda, *Moral Lessons of the Twentieth Century*, I.B. Tauris, London, (2005).
21. D. Krieger and D. Ikeda, *Choose Hope*, Middleway Press, Santa Monica CA 90401, (2002).
22. P.F. Knitter and C. Muzaffar, eds., *Subverting Greed: Religious Perspectives on the Global Economy*, Orbis Books, Maryknoll, New York, (2002).
23. S. du Boulay, *Tutu: Voice of the Voiceless*, Eerdmans, (1988).
24. Earth Charter Initiative, www.earthcharter.org, *The Earth Charter*
25. P.B. Corcoran, ed., *The Earth Charter in Action*, KIT Publishers, Amsterdam, (2005).
26. R. Costannza, ed., *Ecological Economics: The Science and Management of Sustainability*, Colombia University Press, New York, (1991).
27. A. Peccei, *The Human Quality*, Pergamon Press, Oxford, (1977).
28. A. Peccei, *One Hundred Pages for the Future*, Pergamon Press, New York, (1977).
29. E. Pestel, *Beyond the Limits to Growth*, Universe Books, New York, (1989).
30. B. Broms, *United Nations*, Suomalainen Tiedeakatemia, Helsinki, (1990).
31. S. Rosenne, *The Law and Practice at the International Court*, Dordrecht, (1985).
32. S. Rosenne, *The World Court - What It Is and How It Works*, Dordrecht, (1995).
33. J. D'Arcy and D. Harris, *The Procedural Aspects of International Law (Book Series), Volume 25*, Transnational Publishers, Ardsley, New York, (2001).
34. H. Cullen, *The Collective Complaints Mechanism Under the European Social Charter*, European Law Review, Human Rights Survey, p. 18-30, (2000).
35. S.D. Bailey, *The Procedure of the Security Council*, Oxford, (1988).
36. R.A. Akindale, *The Organization and Promotion of World Peace: A Study of Universal-Regional Relationships*, Univ. Toronto Press, Toronto, Ont., (1976).
37. J.S. Applegate, *The UN Peace Imperative*, Vantage Press, New York, (1992).
38. S.E. Atkins, *Arms Control, Disarmament, International Security and Peace: An Annotated Guide to Sources, 1980-1987*, Clio Press, Santa Barbara, CA, (1988).
39. N. Ball and T. Halevy, *Making Peace Work: The Role of the International Development Community*, Overseas Development Council, Washington DC, (1996).
40. F. Barnaby, Ed., *The Gaia Peace Atlas: Survival into the Third Millennium*, Doubleday, New York, (1988)
41. J.H. Barton, *The Politics of Peace: An Evaluation of Arms Control*, Stanford Univ. Press, Stanford, CA, (1981).
42. W. Bello, *Visions of a Warless World*, Friends Committee on National Education Fund, Washington DC, (1986).

43. A. Boserup and A. Mack, *Abolishing War: Cultures and Institutions; Dialogue with Peace Scholars Elise Boulding and Randall Forsberg*, Boston Research Center for the Twenty-first Century, Cambridge, MA, (1998).
44. E. Boulding et al., *Bibliography on World Conflict and Peace*, Westview Press, Boulder, CO, (1979).
45. E. Boulding et al., Eds., *Peace, Culture and Society: Transnational Research Dialogue*, Westview Press, Boulder, CO, (1991).
46. A.T. Bryan et al., Eds., *Peace, Development and Security in the Caribean*, St. Martins Press, New York, (1988).
47. A.L. Burns and N. Heathcote, *Peace-Keeping by UN Forces from Suez to Congo*, Praeger, New York, (1963).
48. F. Capra and C. Spretnak, *Green Politics: The Global Promise*, E.P. Dutton, New York, (1986).
49. N. Carstarphen, *Annotated Bibliography of Conflict Analysis and Resolution*, Inst. for Conflict Analysis and Resolution, George Mason Univ., Fairfax, VA, (1997).
50. N. Chomsky, *Peace in the Middle East? Reflections on Justice and Nationhood*, Vintage Books, New York, (1974).
51. G. Clark and L. Sohn, *World Peace Through World Law*, World Without War Pubs., Chicago, IL, (1984).
52. K. Coates, *Think Globally, Act Locally: The United Nations and the Peace Movements*, Spokesman Books, Philadelphia, PA, (1988).
53. G. De Marco and M. Bartolo, *A Second Generation United Nations: For Peace and Freedom in the 20th Century*, Colombia Univ. Press, New York, (1997).
54. F.M. Deng and I.W. Zartman, Eds., *Conflict Resolution in Africa*, Brookings Institution, Washington, DC, (1991).
55. W. Desan, *Let the Future Come: Perspectives for a Planetary Peace*, Georgetown Univ. Press, Washington, DC, (1987).
56. D. Deudney, *Whole Earth Security. A Geopolitics of Peace*, Worldwatch paper 55. Worldwatch Institute, Washington, DC, (1983).
57. A.J. Donovan, *World Peace? A Work Based on Interviews with Foreign Diplomats*, A.J. Donovan, New York, (1986).
58. R. Duffey, *International Law of Peace*, Oceania Pubs., Dobbs Ferry, NY, (1990).
59. L.J. Dumas, *The Socio-Economics of Conversion From War to Peace*, M.E. Sharpe, Armonk, NY, (1995).
60. W. Durland, *The Illegality of War*, National Center on Law and Pacifism, Colorado Springs, CO, (1982).
61. F. Esack, *Qur'an, Liberation and Pluralism: An Islamic Perspective on Interreligious Solidarity Against Oppression*, Oxford Univ. Press, London, (1997).
62. I. Hauchler and P.M. Kennedy, Eds., *Global Trends: The World Almanac of Development and Peace*, Continuum Pubs., New York, (1995).
63. H.B. Hollins et al., *The Conquest of War: Alternative Strategies for Global Security*, Westview Press, Boulder, CO, (1989).

64. H.J. Morgenthau, *Peace, Security and the United Nations*, Ayer Pubs., Salem, NH, (1973).
65. C.C. Moskos, *Peace Soldiers: The Sociology of a United Nations Military Force*, Univ. of Chicago Press, Chicago, IL, (1976).
66. L. Pauling, *Science and World Peace*, India Council for Cultural Relations, New Delhi, India, (1967).
67. C. Peck, *The United Nations as a Dispute Resolution System: Improving Mechanisms for the Prevention and Resolution of Conflict*, Kluwer, Law and Tax, Cambridge, MA, (1996).
68. D. Pepper and A. Jenkins, *The Geography of Peace and War*, Basil Blackwell, New York, (1985).
69. J. Perez de Cuellar, *Pilgrimage for Peace: A Secretary General's Memoir*, St. Martin's Press, New York, (1997).
70. R. Pickus and R. Woito, *To End War: An Introduction to the Ideas, Books, Organizations and Work That Can Help*, World Without War Council, Berkeley, CA, (1970).
71. S.R. Ratner, *The New UN Peacekeeping: Building Peace in Lands of Conflict after the Cold War*, St. Martins Press, New York, (1995).
72. I.J. Rikhye and K. Skjelsbaek, Eds., *The United Nations and Peacekeeping: Results, Limitations and Prospects: The Lessons of 40 Years of Experience*, St. Martins Press, New York, (1991).
73. J. Rotblat, Ed., *Scientists in Quest for Peace: A History of the Pugwash Conferences*, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, (1972).
74. J. Rotblat, Ed., *Scientists, The Arms Race, and Disarmament*, Taylor and Francis, Bristol, PA, (1982).
75. J. Rotblat, Ed., *Striving for Peace, Security and Development in the World*, World Scientific, River Edge, NJ, (1991).
76. J. Rotblat, Ed., *Towards a War-Free World*, World Scientific, River Edge, NJ, (1995).
77. J. Rotblat, Ed., *Nuclear Weapons: The Road to Zero*, Westview, Boulder, CO, (1998).
78. J. Rotblat and L. Valki, Eds., *Coexistance, Cooperation and Common Security*, St. Martins Press, New York, (1988).
79. United Nations, *Peaceful Settlement of Disputes between States: A Select Bibliography*, United Nations, New York, (1991).
80. United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, *Arms Control and Disarmament Agreements: Texts and Histories of Negotiations*, USACDA, Washington, DC, (updated annually)
81. D. Fahrni, *An Outline History of Switzerland - From the Origins to the Present Day*, Pro Helvetia Arts Council of Switzerland, Zurich, (1994).

Chapter 10

THE WORLD AS IT IS AND THE WORLD AS IT COULD BE

10.1 A better world is possible!

The word, "Utopia" was coined by Sir Thomas Moore (1478-1535), It was the title of a book which he published in 1516, describing an imaginary island with what Moore thought to be an ideal system of government. The roots of the word are Greek, with "topos" meaning "place". Adding the prefix "u", makes the word mean "no place", the is to say, a place that exists in ideas, but not in reality.

Is a better world possible? Of course it is! Our present world is filled with an almost unimaginable amount of injustice, greed and folly.

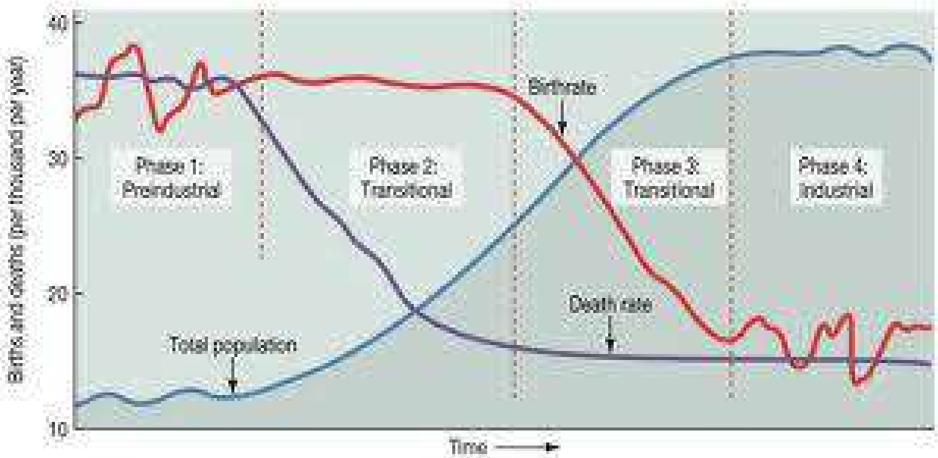
10.2 Some ideas for a better world

Below are some thoughts about how the world might be changer for the better. The COVID-19 pandemic has brought sharply into focus some of the glaring faults of our present world. When we finally recover from both the health and economic shocks that the pandemic has brought, most people in the world will not wish to return to the same normalcy, because it was part of the problem. A better world is possible if we choose it, and work for it.

In the world as it is, 1.7 trillion US dollars are spent each year on armaments.

In the world as it could be, the enormous sums now wasted on war would be used to combat famine, poverty, illiteracy, and preventable disease.

.



In the world as it is, population is increasing so fast that it doubles every thirty-nine years. Most of this increase is in the developing countries, and in many of these, the doubling time is less than twenty-five years. Famine is already present, and it threatens to become more severe and widespread in the future.

In the world as it could be, population would be stabilized at a level that could be sustained comfortably by the world's food and energy resources. Each country would be responsible for stabilizing its own population.

In the world as it is, the nuclear weapons now stockpiled are sufficient to kill everyone on earth several times over. Nuclear technology is spreading, and many politically unstable countries have recently acquired nuclear weapons or may acquire them soon. Even terrorist groups or organized criminals may acquire such weapons, and there is an increasing danger that they will be used.

In the world as it could be, both the manufacture and the possession of nuclear weapons would be prohibited. The same would hold for other weapons of mass destruction.

In the world as it is, 40% of all research funds are used for projects related to armaments.

In the world as it could be, research in science and engineering would be redirected towards solving the urgent problems now facing humanity, such as the development of better methods for treating tropical diseases, new energy sources, and new agricultural methods. An expanded UNESCO would replace national military establishments as the patron of science and engineering.

In the world as it is, gross violations of human rights are common. These include genocide, torture, summary execution, and imprisonment without trial.

In the world as it could be, the International Human Rights Commission would have far greater power to protect individuals against violations of human rights.

In the world as it is, armaments exported from the industrial countries to the Third World amount to a value of roughly 17 billion dollars per year. This trade in arms increases the seriousness and danger of conflicts in the less developed countries, and diverts scarce funds from their urgent needs.

In the world as it could be, international trade in arms would be strictly limited by enforcible laws.

In the world as it is, an estimated 10 million children die each year from starvation or from diseases related to malnutrition.

In the world as it could be, the international community would support programs for agricultural development and famine relief on a much larger scale than at present.

In the world as it is, diarrhoea spread by unsafe drinking water kills an estimated 6 million children every year.

In the world as it could be, the installation of safe and adequate water systems and proper sanitation in all parts of the world would have a high priority and would be supported by ample international funds.

In the world as it is, malaria, tuberculosis, AIDS, cholera, schistosomiasis, typhoid fever, typhus, trachoma, sleeping sickness and river blindness cause the illness and death of millions of people each year. For example, it is estimated that 200 million people now suffer from schistosomiasis and that 500 million suffer from trachoma, which often causes blindness. In Africa alone, malaria kills more than a million children every year.

In the world as it could be, these preventable diseases would be controlled by a concerted international effort. The World Health Organization would be given sufficient funds to carry out this project.

In the world as it is, the rate of illiteracy in the 25 least developed countries is 80%. The total number of illiterates in the world is estimated to be 800 million.

In the world as it could be, the international community would aim at giving all children at least an elementary education. Laws against child labour would prevent parents from regarding very young children as a source of income, thus removing one of the driving forces behind the population explosion. The money invested in education would pay economic dividends after a few years.

In the world as it is, there is no generally enforcible system of international law, although the International Criminal Court is a step in the right direction.

In the world as it could be, the General Assembly of the United Nations would have the power to make international laws. These laws would be binding for all citizens of the world community, and the United Nations would enforce its laws by arresting or fining individual violators, even if they were heads of states. However, the laws of the United Nations would be restricted to international matters, and each nation would run its own internal affairs according to its own laws.

In the world as it is, each nation considers itself to be "sovereign". In other words, every country considers that it can do whatever it likes, without regard for the welfare of the world community. This means that at the international level we have anarchy.

In the world as it could be, the concept of national sovereignty would be limited by the needs of the world community. Each nation would decide most issues within its own boundaries, but would yield some of its sovereignty in international matters.

In the world as it is, the system of giving "one nation one vote" in the United Nations General Assembly means that Monaco, Liechtenstein, Malta and Andorra have as much voting power as China, India, the United States and Russia combined. For this reason, UN resolutions are often ignored.

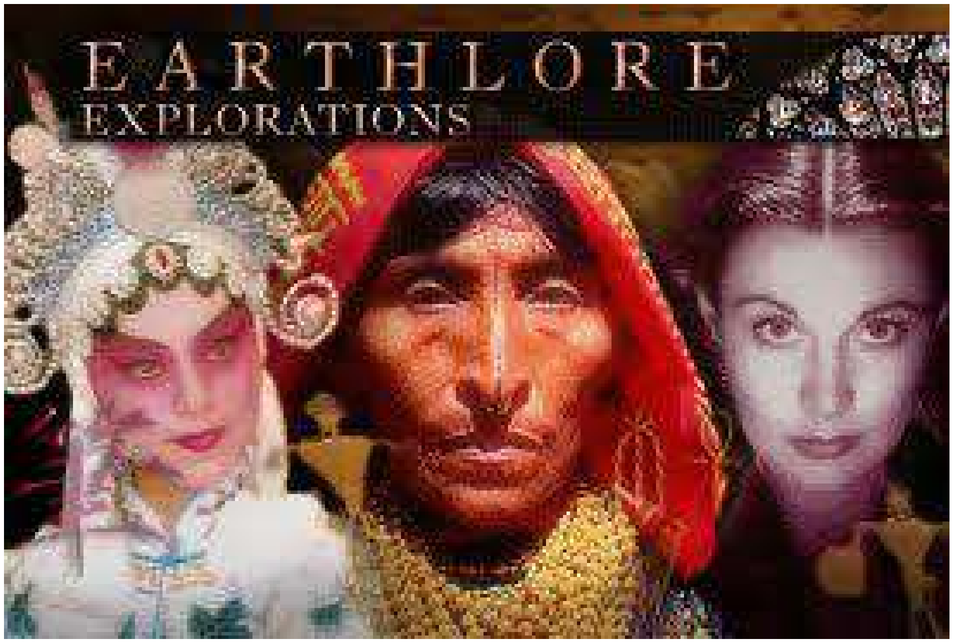
In the world as it could be, the voting system of the General Assembly would be reformed. One possible plan would be for final votes to be cast by regional blocks, each block having one vote. The blocks might be. 1) Latin America 2) Africa 3) Europe 4) North America 5) Russia and Central Asia 6) China 7) India and Southeast Asia 8) The Middle East and 9) Japan, Korea and Oceania.

In the world as it is, the United Nations has no reliable means of raising revenues.

In the world as it could be, the United Nations would have the power to tax international business transactions, such as exchange of currencies. Each member state would also pay a yearly contribution, and failure to pay would mean loss of voting rights.

In the world as it is, young men are forced to join national armies, where they are trained to kill their fellow humans. Often, if they refuse for reasons of conscience, they are thrown into prison.

In the world as it could be, national armies would be very much reduced in size. A larger force of volunteers would be maintained by the United Nations to enforce international laws. The United Nations would have a monopoly on heavy armaments, and the manufacture or possession of nuclear weapons would be prohibited.



In the world as it is, young people are indoctrinated with nationalism. History is taught in such a way that one's own nation is seen as heroic and in the right, while other nations are seen as inferior or as enemies.

In the world as it could be, young people would be taught to feel loyalty to humanity as a whole. History would be taught in such a way as to emphasize the contributions that all nations and all races have made to the common cultural heritage of humanity.

In the world as it is, young people are often faced with the prospect of unemployment. This is true both in the developed countries, where automation and recession produce unemployment, and in the developing countries, where unemployment is produced by overpopulation and by lack of capital.

In the world as it could be, the idealism and energy of youth would be fully utilized by the world community to combat illiteracy and disease, and to develop agriculture and industry in the Third World. These projects would be financed by the UN using revenues derived from taxing international currency transactions.

In the world as it is, women form more than half of the population, but they are not proportionately represented in positions of political and economic power or in the arts and sciences. In many societies, women are confined to the traditional roles of childbearing and housekeeping.

In the world as it could be, women in all cultures would take their place beside men in positions of importance in government and industry, and in the arts and sciences. The reduced emphasis on childbearing would help to slow the population explosion.

In the world as it is, pollutants are dumped into our rivers, oceans and atmosphere. Some progress has been made in controlling pollution, but far from enough.

In the world as it could be, a stabilized and perhaps reduced population would put less pressure on the environment. Strict international laws would prohibit the dumping of pollutants into our common rivers, oceans and atmosphere. The production of greenhouse gasses would also be limited by international laws.

In the world as it is, there are no enforcible laws to prevent threatened species from being hunted to extinction. Many indigenous human cultures are also threatened.

In the world as it could be, an enforcible system of international laws would protect threatened species. Indigenous human cultures would also be protected.

In the world as it is, large areas of tropical rain forest are being destroyed by excessive timber cutting. The cleared land is generally unsuitable for farming.

In the world as it could be, it would be recognized that the conversion of carbon dioxide into oxygen by tropical forests is necessary for the earth's climatic stability. Tropical forests would also be highly valued because of their enormous diversity of plant and animal life, and large remaining areas of forest would be protected.

In the world as it is, opium poppies and other drug-producing plants are grown with little official hindrance in certain parts of Asia, the Middle East, and Latin America. Hard drugs refined from these plants are imported illegally into the developed countries, where they become a major source of high crime rates and human tragedy.

In the world as it could be, all nations would work together in a coordinated world-wide program to prevent the growing, refinement and distribution of harmful drugs,

In the world as it is, modern communications media, such as television, films and newspapers, have an enormous influence on public pinion. However, this influence is only rarely used to build up international understanding and mutual respect.

In the world as it could be, mass communications media would be more fully used to bridge human differences. Emphasis would be shifted from the sensational portrayal of conflicts to programs that widen our range of sympathy and understanding.

In the world as it is, international understanding is blocked by language barriers.

In the world as it could be, an international language would be selected, and every child would be taught it as a second language.

In the world as it is, power and material goods are valued more highly than they deserve to be. "Civilized" life often degenerates into a struggle of all against all for power and possessions. However, the industrial complex on which the production of goods depends cannot be made to run faster and faster, because we will soon encounter shortages of energy and raw materials.

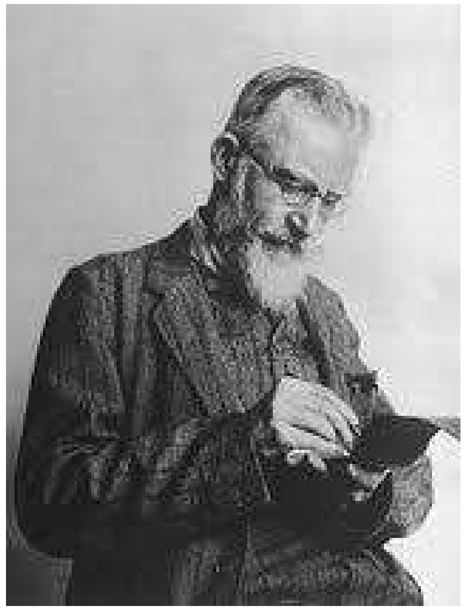
In the world as it could be, nonmaterial human qualities, such as kindness, politeness, and knowledge, and musical, artistic or literary ability would be valued more highly, and people would derive a larger part of their pleasure from conversation, and from the appreciation of unspoiled nature.

In the world as it is, the institution of slavery existed for so many millennia that it seemed to be a permanent part of human society. Slavery has now been abolished in almost every part of the world. However war, an even greater evil than slavery, still exists as an established human institution.

In the world as it could be, we would take courage from the abolition of slavery, and we would turn with energy and resolution to the great task of abolishing war.

In the world as it is, people feel anxious about the future, but unable to influence it. They feel that as individuals they have no influence on the large-scale course of events.

In the world as it could be, ordinary citizens would realize that collectively they can shape the future. They would join hands and work together for a better world. They would give as much of themselves to peace as peace is worth.



As George Bernard Shaw once said, "Most people look at the world as it is and ask 'Why?'. We should look at the world as it could be and ask, 'Why not?'"

Index